## Adding a Signature to Mail

When saved beforehand, your signature can be attached at the end of the main body of mail.

### Saving a Signature

The signature attached to mail can be created and saved.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Edit signature] and press ■.**

The Edit signature display appears.

- If you have saved a signature before, it is displayed.

**2 Press ■ (Edit) and enter a signature.**

Enter a signature within 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters.
You can enter a Deco mail pict. to compose Deco-mail.

**3 Press i (Complete).**

The signature is saved.

● You can also decorate a signature (P.208).

### Adding a Signature Automatically

The saved signature can be automatically attached to the main body when you compose mail.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Signature] and press ■.**

**2 Select [Auto]/[No] and press ■.**

The Signature is set.

- Even if the Signature is set to [No], you can attach the signature manually. From the Function menu in the Input text display, select [Add signature].
- Even if the Signature is set to [Auto], you cannot attach a signature to a reply mail using the Quote function or a forwarded mail.

## Setting the Type of Mail/Message to be Checked

You can set whether to receive mail, Message R, and Message F when making inquiries to the i-mode center.

Example: Setting the i-mode inquiry set for mail

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Common setting] → [i-mode inquiry set] and press ■.**




**2 Select [Mail] → [Valid]/[Invalid] of the i-mode inquiry set.**

The i-mode inquiry set is set.

## Setting to Select and Receive Mail

You can set whether to selectively receive i-mode mail.

- Even if the Recv option setting is [ON], all mail is received if you use the Check new message. If you do not want to receive mail, set [Mail] to [Invalid] in the i-mode inquiry set (P.227).

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Recv option setting] and press ■.**

The Recv option setting display appears.

[ON]:
Sent mail is held at the i-mode center and not received by the FOMA terminal. To receive, use the Receive option (P.215).

[OFF]:
Sent mail is received automatically by the FOMA terminal.

**2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press ■.**

The Recv option setting is set.

## Setting a Mail List

By saving mail addresses in a mail list, you can send mail to all members in the list at the same time.
Up to 10 mail lists can be saved. Up to five mail addresses can be saved in each mail list.

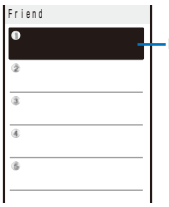
**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Mail list] → a mail list and press ■.**




**2 Enter a list name at [List].**

Enter a list name within eight full-width or 16 half-width characters.

**3 Select [Member list] and press ■.**



Member field

To delete a member

Move the cursor to the member field and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all members, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**4 Enter the mail address or the phone number in the member field.**

Enter a mail address or phone number within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

**5 Press i (Complete).**

The member list is set.

**6 Press i (Complete).**

The mail list is set.

To delete a mail list

Move the cursor to a mail list in the Mail list display and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several mail lists, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete], select mail lists, press i (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all mail lists, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- Even if you change the contents of the Phonebook after saving a member to the mail list, the saved contents on the mail list do not change.

## Playing a Melody Automatically from Mail

The melody can be set to be played back automatically when displaying mail or message.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Common setting] → [Melody auto play] and press ■.**

**2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press ■.**

The Melody auto play is set.

- When mail has several melody attachments, the melodies are played back in the order they were attached to the mail. Melodies in the MFi format has lower priority than those in the SMF format.
- When the Manner mode is set or when the message is displayed automatically, the Melody auto play is disabled.

## Setting the Receiving Operation during Multitasking

You can set whether the incoming mail or received mail display should appear when you receive mail, SMS, or Message R/F while you are using the FOMA terminal for other tasks.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Common setting] → [Dur multi task disp] and press ■.**

[Prefer alarm]:
Display the incoming mail or received mail display.

[Prefer operat.]:
Do not display the incoming mail or received mail display. "✉", "R", or "F" flashes while you are receiving mail/message and "✉", "S", "R", or "F" appears after reception.

**2 Select [Prefer alarm]/[Prefer operat.] and press ■.**

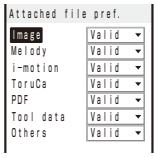
The receiving operation during multitasking is set.

● Regardless of the setting, SMS is received with [Prefer operat.] while placing (originating)/receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, during a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication, while recording a still image/movie, running i-αppli, or receiving mail.

## Enabling the Receiving of a File Attachment

You can set whether to automatically receive the file attached to i-mode mail.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Attached file pref.] and press ■.**




**2 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] for each item.**

[Valid]:
Automatically receive a file attachment.

[Invalid]:
Do not automatically receive a file attachment. To obtain a file attachment, from the Inbox display, select "📎" (P.219).

The Attached file pref. is set.

● Even if you set the Attached file pref. to [Valid], a file attachment exceeding 100K bytes is not received automatically.

## Deleting the Send/Receive Ranking List

Up to 20 each of most frequent senders and recipients are automatically saved in the Send and Receive ranking lists. You can select a recipient from this list when you compose mail. The Send and Receive ranking lists can be cleared at once.

Example: Deleting the Receive ranking list

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Clear Recv ranking] and press ■.**

To delete the Send ranking list
From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Clear Send ranking].

**2 Select [Clear all] and press ■.**

All Receive ranking list data is deleted.

# Receiving a Message

<Receive message>

When a message is received while in the stand-by display, the contents of the message are automatically displayed. Up to 20 Message R and Message F each can be saved in the FOMA terminal.




When receiving a message, "R"/"F"/"R" flashes.

When receiving is completed, "R"/"F"/"R" is displayed, the indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received messages is displayed.
The contents of the message appear automatically after about 15 seconds. The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds when no operations are made.

- Messages that are automatically displayed are saved as unread.

- When the number of saved received messages has reached 20 and a new message is received, the unprotected message is overwritten from the oldest.
- You can also disable Auto-display of messages (P.230).
- Messages are held at the i-mode center when "R", "F", "R", "R", "R", "R", "R", or "R" appears (sometimes "R", "F", "R", "R", "R", "R", "R", "R", or "R" do not appear even if messages are held at the i-mode center).
  If the maximum number of messages is held at the i-mode center, "R", "R", "R", "R", "R", "R", "R", "R" appears. In this case, perform the Check new message after checking contents of the unread messages, delete unnecessary messages, and cancel protection of the messages.
- Message R/F that has been sent to you in the following situations is held at the i-mode center.
  - During a videophone call
  - When the FOMA terminal is powered off
  - When the FOMA terminal is outside of the i-mode service area
  - During PushTalk communication
  - While receiving SMS
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - During the infrared communication
  - During the iC communication
  - While updating the software
  - While connected to the FirstPass Center
  - While connected to the Data Security Service Center

## Setting Auto-display

You can set to display the contents of the message automatically when it is received while in the stand-by display. You can also select which message should be displayed first when receiving both Message R and Message F at the same time.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Common setting] → [Auto-display] and press ■.**

[Prefer msgR]:
Display automatically Message R first when receiving Message R and Message F at the same time.

[MessageR only]:
Display automatically Message R only.

[Prefer msgF]:
Display automatically Message F first when receiving Message R and Message F at the same time.

[MessageF only]:
Display automatically Message F only.

[Display off]:
Do not display automatically.

To set from the i-mode menu
From the i-mode menu, select [i-mode setting] → [Common setting] → [Auto-display].

**2 Select a display method and press ■.**

The Auto-display is set.

# Checking a New Message

<Check new message>

New messages held at the i-mode center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the i-mode service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new messages.

**1 Press (Mail) for over a second in the stand-by display.**

The FOMA terminal is connected to the i-mode center, and an inquiry result is displayed.

To check messages

Select [MessageR] or [MessageF].

You can select an inquiry item (P.227).

# Displaying a Message

<Message R/Message F>

The list of received messages can be displayed.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] → the [MessageR]/[MessageF] folder and press .**



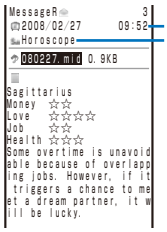

- The following icons show the status and type of the message.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Unread message |
| | Read message |
| | Protected read message |
| | With melody attachment |
| | With still image attachment |
| | With ToruCa card attachment |

To display from the i-mode menu

From the i-mode menu, select [Message] → the [MessageR]/[MessageF] folder.

**2 Select a message and press .**




The message appears and "" changes to "".

- The following icons show the details of a message. Other icons are the same as in step 1.

File attachment type

| | |
|---|---|
| | Failed to obtain the image |
| | With invalid image attachment With image attachment (When the UIM is not inserted or other than that used when the message was received) |
| (Green)※ | With SMF-format melody attachment |
| (Orange)※ | With MFi-format melody attachment |
| (Orange) | With invalid MFi-format melody attachment |
| | With image attachment |
| ※ | With ToruCa card attachment |

※ "" appears when the UIM is not inserted.

- For details about the operation of the file attachment, see P.218.

To display the previous or next message

Use to display the previous message or to display the next message.

## Protecting a Message

Message R or Message F can be protected from being overwritten.

- An unread message cannot be protected.

Example: Protecting Message R

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] → the [MessageR] folder and press ■.**

To protect Message F
From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] → the [MessageF] folder.

To set from the i-mode menu
From the i-mode menu, select [Message] → the [MessageR]/[MessageF] folder.

**2 Select a message and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To cancel the protection
Move the cursor to the protected message and press ✉ (Func).

**3 Select [Protect ON/OFF] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The message is protected and "✉" changes to "🔒".

## Deleting a Message

You can delete messages using four methods.

Example: Deleting Message R

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] → the [MessageR] folder and press ■.**

To delete Message F
From the Mail menu, select [Inbox] → the [MessageF] folder.

To delete from the i-mode menu
From the i-mode menu, select [Message] → the [MessageR]/[MessageF] folder.

To delete all messages
From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- In the received mail list, from the Function menu, select [Delete] to delete a message.

To delete all read messages
From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete read msg], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

- In the received mail list, from the Function menu, select [Delete] to delete a message.

To delete several messages
From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select messages, press 🗑 (Complete), and select [Yes].

**2 Select a message and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected message is deleted.

● You can delete all messages or read messages by selecting [Delete] from the Function menu at the folder list display of received mail.

# What is Early Warning “Area Mail”?

Area Mail is a service that allows you to receive mail such as the urgent earthquake news flash delivered by the Japan Meteorological Agency.

- You can receive Area Mail without subscribing to the i-mode service.

<Usage precautions>

- To receive Area Mail, you need to set the Receive setting.
  ※To set the Receive setting of Area Mail, see P.233.
- You may not be able to receive Area Mail in the following cases.
  - During a call (voice/videophone call)
  - During the packet communication (i-mode, data, or PushTalk communication)
  - While updating the software

  In the following cases, you cannot receive Area Mail at all.
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - While the international roaming service is used
  - While the Self mode is set

  ※The message which cannot be received because of the reasons such as above ones, you cannot receive it again.

# Receiving Early Warning “Area Mail” <Receive Area Mail>

The FOMA terminal automatically receives Area Mail when it is sent. You can save up to 30 received Area Mail in [Inbox] separated from up to 1,000 mails of the normal received mail. When there are already 30 received Area Mail, the unprotected read mail from the oldest one is deleted.




When Area Mail is received, “” appears, the incoming indicator flashes, the beep or ring tone of Area Mail sounds, and then the screen informing the Area Mail reception appears.
After about 15 seconds, the display prior to the Area Mail reception reappears.

- Some Area Mail may activate the vibrator after the reception is completed.
- Some Area Mail may show the Area Mail main body after the reception is completed. Confirm the contents and press ■ (OK), CLR, or ☎.

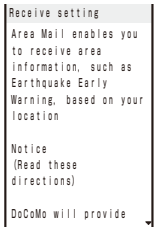
- You cannot adjust the volume of the beep of Area Mail of the urgent earthquake news flash. [Pattern1] is used for the vibrator (P.110). The vibration pattern cannot be changed. But the Beep and Beep time can be set (P.234). While the Manner mode is set, the setting follows that set in the Manner mode (P.115).
- When you receive Area Mail except Area Mail of the urgent earthquake news flash, the ring tone volume of the incoming Area Mail follows the setting of the Mail volume.

# Setting Early Warning “Area Mail” <Area Mail setting>

## Setting Whether to Receive Area Mail

The default setting of the Receive setting is [OFF].

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Area Mail setting] → [Receive setting] and press ■.**




**2 Confirm the contents, select [Yes]/[No], and press ■.**

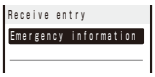
The Receive setting is set.

- You may receive messages from different areas other than your current area.

## Setting to Save Receiving Entry of Area Mail

You need to save a name and Message ID of Area Mail including information you want to receive rather than Area Mail of the emergency information. To receive emergency information, you do not need to save receiving entry.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Area Mail setting] → [Receive entry] and press ■.**




To edit the settings of the set entry

Move the cursor to the set entry, press ■ (Edit), and enter the Security code. Edit each item.

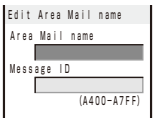
To delete the set entry

Move the cursor to the set entry, press ✉ (Delete), enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Press i (Create).**

The Security code screen appears.

**3 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**




[Area Mail name]:

Enter the Area Mail name within 15 full-width or 30 half-width characters.

[Message ID]:

Enter the Message ID from A400 to A7FF (in hexadecimal).

**4 Enter each item.**

**5 Press i (Complete).**

The entered entry is saved.

● You cannot edit/delete the pre-saved [Emergency information].

## Setting the Operation While Receiving Area Mail

You can set whether to sound the beep and activate the vibrator when you receive Area Mail of the urgent earthquake news flash, and the ring time of the beep. The Beep setting is set to [Permission] and the Beep time is set to [10sec] at the time of purchase.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [Area Mail setting] and press ■.**




**2 Select [Permission]/[Non-permission] at [Beep setting].**

[Permission]:

The beep sounds and the vibrator is active.

[Non-permission]:

Neither the beep nor the vibrator activates.

**3 Enter the ring time of the beep at [Beep time].**

Enter the ring time within 01 to 30 seconds.

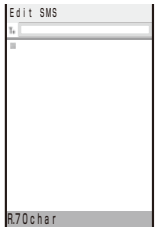
# Composing and Sending SMS

<Compose and send SMS>

Regardless of whether you subscribe to i-mode, you can send/receive text messages between FOMA terminals.

- You can exchange SMS with recipients/senders who subscribe to an overseas telecommunication company other than DoCoMo. See the NTT DoCoMo website for information about countries and overseas telecommunication companies you can use for sending/receiving SMS.
- Even if the Notify caller ID is set to [Not notify], an SMS recipient is notified of the sender's phone number.
- The text of sent message may not be displayed correctly on the recipient's terminal depending on the radio wave condition or the type of characters to be sent.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Compose SMS] and press [■].**




**2 Enter a phone number at [To ].**

Enter a phone number within 21 digits.

When a recipient subscribes to an overseas telecommunication company other than DoCoMo

Enter "+" (press [0] for over a second), "Country code", and "recipient's mobile phone number", in this order. When the mobile phone number starts with "0", enter the number without "0". You can also send SMS by entering "010", "Country code", and "recipient's mobile phone number", in this order. (To reply to SMS received from overseas, use the latter method using "010".)

**3 Enter a main body at [ ].**

When you set [Language] to [JPN] for the SMS setting, enter the SMS main body within 70 characters regardless of full-width or half-width.
When you set it to [ENG], enter the main body within 160 half-width characters (excluding `, ゜, 「, 」, 、, ・, ", and ゛). Use of the symbols (|^{}[]~¥) reduces the number of characters that can be sent.

**4 Press [ ] (Send).**

The SMS is sent.

To save SMS without sending it

From the Function menu, select [Save]. The SMS is saved in [Draft].

- When you change the font size, from the Function menu, from [Input method] → [Font size], in the Edit SMS display, the setting is only applied for the font size in the matching word list. The setting for the font size of an address and main body text is changed from the next time when you edit mail/SMS (P.127).
- When you subscribe to the Multi Number Service, set [Basic Number] for the Set Multi Number.
- When 2in1 is set to the B mode, you cannot compose SMS.
- You cannot send SMS from Number B.

## Receiving SMS <Receive SMS>

The FOMA terminal automatically receives SMS. You can save up to 1,000 received SMS including i-mode mail in [Inbox].




While receiving SMS, "✉" flashes.




When SMS reception is completed, "✉" is displayed, the incoming indicator flashes, the ring tone sounds, and the number of received SMS appears.
After about 15 seconds, the display prior to the SMS reception reappears.

- When returning to the stand-by display, the notification icon "✉" (New mail) appears. Press [■] (Link) and select "✉" to display the Inbox display.

- You can compose and send a reply to the received SMS and forward it (P.216).
- Some characters in a received SMS message are replaced with as many spaces (blanks).
- You cannot reply to SMS sent to Number B of 2in1.

## Checking New SMS

<Check new SMS>

New SMS held at the SMS center while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the service area can be checked.

- Depending on the radio wave condition, you may not be able to check new SMS.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Check new SMS] and press ■.**

The FOMA terminal is connected to the SMS center and receives SMS if some are held at the center.

- Even if you check new SMS, it may take time to receive SMS.

## Setting SMS

<SMS setting>

※ Normally, you do not need to change the SMSC, Type of Number, and address settings.

**1 From the Mail menu, select [Mail setting] → [SMS setting] and press ■.**




[Language]:
Select whether a message to be sent is going to be displayed in Japanese or English. The number of characters that can be sent varies depending on the type of characters.

[SMS report]:
Set whether you require a delivery report when SMS is sent.

[Validity]:
Select the period for holding your SMS at the SMS center when a recipient is unable to receive the SMS you sent.

[SMSC]:
Set when you receive SMS services provided by companies other than DoCoMo.

[Type of Number]:
When you select [Others] at [SMSC], select [International]/[Unknown].
- When "✳" or "#" is included in the address entered at [Address], select [Unknown].

[Address]:
When you select [Others] at [SMSC], enter an address. You can enter up to 20 half-width digits.

**2 Set each item.**

**3 Press i (Complete).**

The SMS setting is set.

# i-αppli

What is i-αppli? ..... 238
Downloading i-αppli from a Site ..... 238
Running i-αppli ..... <Run i-αppli> 239
Running i-αppli Automatically ..... <Auto-start> 246
Setting i-αppli for the Stand-by Display ..... <i-αppli stand-by> 247
Managing i-αppli ..... 247
Displaying i-αppli Data in microSD memory card ..... <i-αppli(microSD)> 250
Using Various i-αppli Functions ..... 251

# What is i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli from its site, the i-mode terminal can be made much more useful in many ways. For example, you can enjoy many kinds of games by downloading them to it. There are also i-αppli from which you can directly save data to the Phonebook and Schedule, as well as i-αppli that can be linked with Data Box for saving/loading images.

- For details on i-αppli, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".
- Some i-αppli cannot be used when 2in1 is set to either the B or Dual mode.

# Downloading i-αppli from a Site

You can download i-αppli software from sites and save it.

- You can save up to 100 i-αppli software, each software maximum 1M bytes. The number of i-αppli software that can be saved may decrease depending on the data to be saved.
- When downloading ends in failure due to the radio wave condition, the software is not saved.
- When downloading i-αppli with mail, software cannot be downloaded if there are already five mail folders for i-αppli with mail or if software using the same mail folder already exists.

### 1 While displaying the site, select the software and press ■.

The software is downloaded.

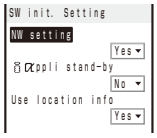
When the screen for confirming whether to download the software appears

Select [Yes] or [Download].

### 2 Select a folder and press ■.

The downloaded software is saved in the selected folder.

### 3 Perform the Software setting.




- There are items that cannot be changed depending on the software.

To connect to the network automatically when the software is started

Select [NW setting] → [Yes].

- Settings you made are applied to the NW setting and Stand-by NW setting of the Individual set (P.241).

To set the software for the i-αppli stand-by display

Select [i αppli stand-by] → [Yes].

To use the location information

Select [Use location info] → [Yes].

### 4 Press i (Complete).

The screen for confirming whether to run the software appears.

### 5 Select [Yes] and press ■.

The downloaded software is started.

- If you have deleted preinstalled software, you can download it from "PlayNow by SO".
  [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [PlayNow by SO] (Japanese only)
- The message "Terminal and UIM ID will be sent" may appear when downloading. Select [Download] to download. Since the "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)" is sent to IP (information service providers) via the Internet, it might be accessed by a third party.
- The message "This software uses saved data" may appear when downloading. Information on the saved data to be used can be confirmed by pressing [Description]. Select [Download] to download the software. The i-αppli uses the saved data in this case.

- If you lock the IC card function while downloading an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli, the downloading is stopped.
- After downloading i-αppli with mail, i-αppli with mail folder is automatically created in Inbox, Outbox, and Draft. The folder is named based on the downloaded i-αppli with mail and cannot be changed.
- If only the mail folder to be used remains when downloading i-αppli with mail, that folder can be used. If a folder name is different from the name of a downloaded i-αppli, this folder name is changed to the downloaded i-αppli name. If the i-αppli with mail does not use that folder, it can be deleted and a new folder can be created. Note that the i-αppli with mail cannot be downloaded without creating a new folder.
- Even if there is enough memory, you may not be able to download an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli depending on the volume of data saved on your IC card. If you cannot perform a download, delete unnecessary software data in accordance with the confirmation screen and download the i-αppli again. (You may not be able to delete some software data.) In some cases, you may need to start up the software before deleting related data on the IC card.

## Checking i-αppli Information When Downloading

The software information can be displayed when i-αppli software is downloaded from a site.

**1 From the Menu, select [i appli] → [i αppli setting] → [SW description] and press ■.**

**2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press ■.**

The SW description is set.

## Running i-αppli <Run i-αppli>

i-αppli software can be set to run manually.

**1 Press i (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display.**

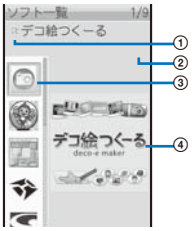
The i-αppli folder list appears.

- The following icons show the type of folder.

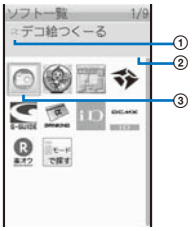
| | |
|---|---|
| (Yellow) | Preset folder |
| (Blue) | User-created folder |

## 2 Select a folder and press ■.

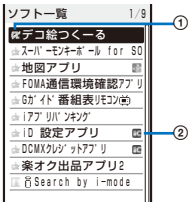
Icon(L)




Icon(S)




List




① : Software supporting i-αppli stand-by display (While setting)※

: Software supporting i-αppli DX stand-by display (While setting)※

: Software supporting i-αppli with mail stand-by display (While setting)※

: Software not supporting i-αppli stand-by display※

: Software not supporting i-αppli DX stand-by display※

: Software not supporting i-αppli with mail stand-by display※

: Search by i-mode

※ "▬" appears to the lower right of the icon for the software while downloading in progress.

② : Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software (While the service is unavailable)

: Software downloaded from an SSL site

: GPS-compatible i-αppli software

: Software set for automatic startup

③ Software icon

- An icon assigned to each software appears. If there is no icon assigned to software, the following icons appear.

: i-αppli software

: i-αppli DX software

: Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software

④ Title image of selected software

- A title image assigned to each software appears. If there is no title image assigned to software, the following icons appear.

: i-αppli software

: i-αppli DX software

: Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software

## 3 Select the software and press ■.



The software is started up and "" or "" appears.

### To quit i-αppli software

Press [ ] and select [Yes].

### To check the detailed information

Move the cursor to the software and from the Function menu, select [Soft description].

- Displayed items may vary depending on the software.
- The name of the software listed in the Soft description display cannot be changed.

### To display the certificate

Move the cursor to the software and from the Function menu, select [Certificates].

- Some software applications start up immediately from the site. This means that the software has been downloaded, but not saved. Also note that you cannot save some downloaded software.
- Some software applications that start up immediately from the site may require NW setting while it is running.
- The software is interrupted when the Alarm or Schedule alarm time comes while running the software. Press [☎] or [CLR] to return to the previous display.
- The software can be interrupted and the phone can be answered when you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call while running the software. The previous display returns when a call is finished. When receiving a videophone or PushTalk call while i-αppli communication is in progress, the setting for the V.ph while packet or the i-mode arrival act is applied, respectively.
- When you receive mail/message/Area Mail while running the software, "✉", "R", "F", or "✉" appears.
  When the Receive option setting is [ON], "F" appears if you receive mail while running the software. "F" (Mail at center) appears when you display the stand-by display. To check mail, use the Receive option (P.215).
- Images used by i-αppli software※ and some of the data you entered may be automatically sent to a server via the Internet.
  ※Images used by i-αppli software include those recorded by the camera activated from within i-αppli software with camera interface, obtained using the infrared communication function of i-αppli software, obtained from sites or Internet home pages using i-αppli software, and obtained from the Data Box by i-αppli software.
- You can save data of some software applications in a microSD memory card. The data saved in a microSD memory card may not be used by other terminal models.
- There is i-αppli software that starts the specified software so that you can enjoy the software without returning to the software list. If software to start is not specified, you need to select it. Even if software to start is specified, however, you need to download it if it is not included in the software list.
- Some software cannot start with the MUSIC Player or Music&Video Channel simultaneously.
- Some software may be displayed in the full-screen display. While displaying in the full-screen, the icons other than the communication icon are not displayed.

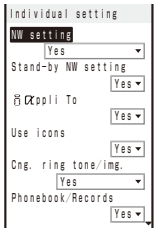
## Setting i-αppli Operating Conditions

- It may not be possible to change some items of the saved software.

**1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Individual set] and press [■].**




[NW setting]:
Set whether to permit the software that uses network communication to connect to the network or alternatively set it to ask confirmation every time you start it.

[Stand-by NW setting]:
Set whether the FOMA terminal should connect to the network when you set an i-αppli software that uses network communication as the stand-by display.

[i αppli To]:
Set whether to start the software from the currently displayed i-αppli link.

[Use icons]:
Set whether to use icon information (mail, message, radio wave condition, battery level, and Manner mode).

[Cng. ring tone/img.]:
Set whether to permit the software to change the ring tone or image. Otherwise, set the software to ask for your permission every time before changing it.

[Phonebook/Records]:
Set whether to permit the software to look up the Phonebook, Redial/Received record, unread mail, or ToruCa cards.

[Use location info]:
Set whether to use location information.

### 3 Set each item.

- If you set the NW setting or Stand-by NW setting to [No], the software may not be started and information may not be provided in a timely manner.
- If you set the NW setting or Stand-by NW setting to [Yes], i-αppli automatically connects to the network. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the network, the packet communication charge is required.
- When you set [Yes] for the Use icons, icon information might be accessed by a third party since it is sent to IP (information service providers) via the Internet just as it is the case with the "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM (FOMA card)".
- Depending on the settings of the Individual set, the network connection and use of icon information (such as unread mail and battery level) from i-αppli software may not be available.

## Preinstalled Software

### ● デコ絵つくーる™ (deco-e maker)




You can create materials for decorating mail by converting/editing a part of a still image recorded by the camera, drawing a picture by yourself, or other means. The created image is saved in the Data Box and you can use it when you compose mail.

Creating from the camera shoot

You can create a Deco mail image or Deco mail pictograph by converting/editing a part of a still image recorded by the camera. To edit an image nicely, it is recommended to record an image in a mono-(even) color background where pictures or characters are separated clearly in brightness from the background.

Creating by drawing a picture by yourself

Using various lines, colors, and functions such as daubing and background transmission functions, you can create a Deco mail pictograph. You can also create an animation pictograph.

Creating from saved data

You can create a Deco mail image or Deco mail pictograph by converting/editing data saved in the Data Box.

- For information on the operations, see "ヘルプ" (Help).
  To display it, select [ヘルプ] (Help) and press ■.

### ● スーパーモンキーボールモバイル for SO (Super Monkey Ball Mobile for SO)



©SEGA

This is the mobile phone appli that is the very famous home action game called "スーパーモンキーボール" (Super Monkey Ball).
This is the action game to roll a ball where a monkey character stays for the goal.
Clear various worlds (scenes) and daedal stages for the goal.

To operate by moving SO906i

Moving the FOMA terminal up, down, and to the left and right allows you to operate it as using the 4-way keys of the FOMA terminal.
The ball where the monkey stays is rolled to the direction where the FOMA terminal is moved.

To operate by a player's movement

Check the player location by the In-camera and the ball is rolled to the direction where the player moves.

- For more details about operations, see the "スーパーモンキーボールの遊び方" (How to play Super Monkey Ball).
  From the Menu, select [Data Box] → [My document] → [Preinstall] → [スーパーモンキーボールの遊び方] and press ■. The appli appears.

■ Warning

This appli is the game played by titling or shaking the FOMA terminal. It may injure or damage by hitting a person or object due to some reasons such as shaking too hard.
When you play it, hold the FOMA terminal tightly and do not shake or move the FOMA terminal too much or too hard. Make sure to secure the surroundings to be safe as to play.

### ● 地図アプリ (Map appli)

You can check your current location, search a map by addresses or phone numbers, or use the FOMA terminal to navigate you to the destination. The i-αppli allows you to use GPS functions (P.264).

- When you use a GPS-compatible i-αppli, the location information is sent to IP (information service providers) of the i-αppli being used.
- When you use the GPS function with a GPS-compatible i-αppli, set the Use location info of the i-αppli being used to [Yes].

### ● FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check i-appli)




※The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check i-appli) is an appli to check whether the FOMA terminal can be used the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.

- To use FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check i-appli), you need to accept "ご利用上の注意" (Usage Precautions).
- When the communication environment is checked, different confirmation results or the result informing that it is outside of the service area may appear depending on the communication environment (such as weather, radio wave condition, or network congested) even if you use it in the same place and same time.
- When you use another function while using this appli, it may not be checked correctly.

### ● Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control)



※The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display. The TV program list is displayed according to your location.

This convenient i-αppli is a TV program list integrated with an audiovisual remote control function and it is free.
It enables you to get terrestrial digital/analog or BS digital TV program information for your preferred hour from anywhere, any time. The information includes a TV program title, details of the program, start/end time, etc.
If you find any program interesting, you can let the DVD hard disk recorder to schedule recording of it remotely via the Internet. (A DVD hard disk recorder that features a remote scheduling function is required. Before using this function, the initial setting for this appli is also required.)
You can also search for program information by entering a keyword such as a TV program category or your favorite TV personality. Furthermore, you can also perform remote control operation of a TV/video player/DVD player. (Some models are not compatible with this function.)

- When you use the "G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control" for the first time, you need to perform initial registration and accept the Terms of Use.
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.
- When you use this appli overseas, you need to set the time of the FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- For details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control), see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".
- You cannot use this appli when 2in1 is set to the B mode because it uses mail.

About the remote timer recording function

If you have a DVD hard disk recorder that supports a remote timer recording function, you can book recording of a program from the program list provided by this appli.
To use this function, the initial setting for this appli is required.

- Making initial setting
  1. Set the DVD hard disk recorder to connect to the Internet.
     (For more information, see the user's manual supplied with your DVD hard disk recorder.)
  2. Start this appli, select "リモート録画予約" (Remote timer recording) from the menu, and continue the initial setting as instructed by the displayed guidance.
- Booking recording of a program
  Once you complete the initial setting, by selecting a desired program and selecting "リモート録画予約" from the menu, you can connect to the DVD hard disk recorder that has an entry in this appli via the Internet and let it to schedule recording of the program.
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.

## ● i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking)




※The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

This i-αppli is for using the mobile banking service conveniently. Mobile banking is a service that allows you to check the balance and usage details of deposit or withdrawal, transfer between accounts, and make a transfer, from anywhere and at anytime. By entering the password which you set when you start this i-αppli, you can use up to two mobile banking services provided by financial institutions.

- To use a mobile banking service by i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking), you need to open an account at a financial institution which provides the mobile banking service and subscribe to a mobile banking service of each financial institution.
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.
- For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".
- For information on i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking), see the i-mode site.
  i-mode site :
  [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search)→[モバイルバンキング] (Mobile banking) → [i アプリバンキング](i-appli Banking)

## ● iD 設定アプリ (iD Setting appli)




※The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

The chargeless e-cash "iD" is a service that enables you to make payments for shopping by simply holding up the Osaifu-Keitai or a credit card that is employed "iD" to a reader. It provides you with a convenient way of shopping because you do not need to give your signature as you did before. Some credit card issuing companies support cash withdrawals as well.

- To use "iD", a subscription to each credit card issuing company that adopts the iD brand and the Osaifu-Keitai whose settings are completed by the iD appli and Card appli of a credit card issuing company or a credit card that is employed "iD" are needed.
- For using "iD" by the Osaifu-Keitai, you start the iD appli, agree with "ご利用上の注意" (Usage precautions), complete the settings for the iD appli, download or start a Card appli, and then perform the settings for the Card appli.
- A fee for using a service that adopts the iD brand (annual membership fee, etc.) varies depending on each credit card issuing company.
- The packet communication charge is required for downloading the iD appli and a Card appli.
- For information on "iD", see the i-mode site for "iD".
  i-mode site :
  [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [iD]

## ● DCMXクレジットアプリ(DCMX credit appli)



※ The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

“DCMX” is an “iD” compatible credit service provided by NTT DoCoMo group. Two types of services are available in DCMX: DCMX mini in which the total amount of credit is limited to ¥10,000 per month and DCMX which allows you to use more amount than DCMX mini as well as get DoCoMo points.

DCMX mini provides immediate use of a mobile credit service with an easy subscription that can be made from within this software.

What you can do on this software

Subscription and Examination ※1

↓

Setting card information

↓

Using
No need for troublesome charging!
You can enjoy shopping simply by holding the mobile phone that has been configured for the service close to a reading device without signature ※3.

Checking ※2
You can check the available balance of the credit and the usage details for this month from within the software!

Changing
You can also make necessary settings from within the software when you get the card updated or the FOMA terminal changed!

※1 We make an online examination for your qualification when we receive your subscription to DCMX mini. If your subscription is to other than DCMX mini, the connection is redirected to the i-mode site for subscription information.

※2 A function, such as for checking the usage status is available only when you are a member of DCMX mini.

※3 You may be asked to enter a security code at a given condition.

- For information on the contents of the service and on how to subscribe to the service, see the i-mode site for DCMX.
  i-mode site : [i Menu] → [DCMX iD]

● When you start this software for the first time, you are asked to agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Note on using the program). Agree with it to continue.

● Packet communication charge is required for settings and operations on this software.

### Precaution on the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software

● Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any information set in the IC card.

## ● 楽オク出品アプリ2 (Appli for selling items at Rakuten)



※ The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

“楽オク出品アプリ2” (Appli for selling items at Rakuten) is a convenient appli for selling items at 楽オク (Rakuten Auction) from anywhere and at anytime easily.

The appli helps you sell an item with the guide display, making it easy even for first-time users. Also, there are functions such as shooting a photo, editing a photo, and saving a history to sell an item faster than doing it from the site.

- When you use the “Appli for selling items at Rakuten” for the first time, you need to accept “利用規約” (Terms of use).
- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function.
- For details on 楽オク (Rakuten Auction), see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide【i-mode】FOMA version”.
- To sell items at 楽オク (Rakuten Auction), you need to sign up for the Rakuten Membership and register as an auctioneer.
- For information on 楽オク (Rakuten Auction), see the i-mode site.
  i-mode site : [i Menu] → [楽オク-オークション-]

# Running i-αppli Automatically <Auto-start>

## Enabling/Disabling Auto-Start

You can set whether to start i-αppli software automatically on the FOMA terminal.

**1 From the Menu, select [i appli] → [i αppli setting] → [Auto-start] and press ■.**

**2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press ■.**

Whether to enable the Auto-start is set.

## Setting the Start Date and Time

The i-αppli software can be started automatically. You can set the starting date/time and day of the week and whether to use the software's automatic start for each i-αppli software.

**1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Auto-start] and press ■.**




[User set]:
Set the staring date/time and day of the week for each software.

[SW set]:
Set whether to start the software using the software's auto-start function.

**3 Select [User set] and press ■.**




**4 Select a style of the Auto-start time at [Style].**

[OFF]:
Do not set the start time.

[D/T]:
Start the software automatically at the specified date and time.

[Eyd]:
Start the software automatically at the specified time everyday.

[Week]:
Start the software automatically at the specified time on every specified day of the week.

**5 Enter the date/time/day of the week.**

- Enter the date/time/day of the week according to the style of the auto-start time selected in step 4.

**6 Press i (Complete).**

**7 Select [SW set] and press ■.**

The SW set display appears.

**8 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] of the Auto-start function of the software at [Set].**

The Auto-start is set.

● The Auto-start does not operate in the following cases.
- When the FOMA terminal is powered off
- During a call/communication
- When the date/time is not set
- When another function is executed
- When the Alarm/Schedule alarm is set to start at the same time as the Auto-start
- When the Lock all/Personal data lock is set
- When the Lock key is set
- When the Omakase Lock is set
- When 2in1 is set to the B mode (when i-αppli with mail software is used or i-αppli uses mail)

## Setting i-αppli for the Stand-by Display <i-αppli stand-by>

Only one supporting software can be set for the i-αppli stand-by display. The software that supports the i-αppli stand-by display is identified by "".

- When the software using network transmission is set for the i-αppli stand-by display, it may not operate properly depending on the radio wave condition.
- When you set the i-αppli stand-by display from the i-αppli software list display, the image set for the stand-by display in the Stand-by display is also changed.

**1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Stand-by display] → [Yes] and press .**

The i-αppli stand-by display is set and the icon (P.240) changes to indicate that the software is set for the stand-by display.

To operate the software set for the i-αppli stand-by display

Press CLR ( ) in the i-αppli stand-by display.

- The message confirming whether to start the i-αppli stand-by display appears when the FOMA terminal is powered on if the i-αppli stand-by display is set. Select [No] not to start it. Select [Yes] or leave it for a while to start the i-αppli stand-by display.
- If the Lock all or Personal data lock is set or 2in1 is set to the Dual or B mode while you set the i-αppli stand-by display, the i-αppli stand-by display is temporarily terminated. When you cancel the Lock all or Personal data lock, the i-αppli stand-by display reappears.
- The Web To cannot be used from the i-αppli stand-by display.
- If an error which could terminate the i-αppli stand-by display occurs, the time of error occurrence can be checked in the stand-by error history.
- If a security error occurs in the i-αppli stand-by display, "" (Stand-by SW error) appears in the stand-by display.

## Terminating the i-αppli Stand-by Display

The i-αppli stand-by display is terminated and the normal stand-by display is set.

**1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Stand-by display] → [Cancel] and press .**

[End]:
End the i-αppli stand-by display once and redisplay without terminating it.

[Cancel]:
Terminate the i-αppli stand-by display.

The i-αppli stand-by display is terminated.

## Managing i-αppli

- For some software, IP (information service providers) may access the software saved in the mobile phone and directly stop the use of it. In this case, most operations including starting the software, setting the software for the stand-by display, and upgrading the software are disabled and only deleting the software and displaying the software information are available. To use the software again, you need to request IP to resume the use of the software. For more details, contact IP.
- For some software, IP (information service providers) may send data to the software saved in the mobile phone.
- When IP (information service providers) sends a stop/resume request or data to the software, the mobile phone starts to communicate with IP and "" flashes. No packet communication charge is required.



Continued

## Upgrading i-αppli

The software saved in the FOMA terminal can be upgraded if a newer version of the downloaded software is available on a site.

**1 From the list of i-αppli software, select the software and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Upgrade] → [Yes] and press .**

Download of the new version of the software starts.

- Some software can be upgraded automatically when it is started.
- When the FOMA terminal is connected to the network for software upgrade, the packet communication charge is required.

## Adding/Deleting Folders

Folders in which software are saved can be added or deleted. Up to 10 folders can be used to manage software and folder names can also be changed.

- You cannot delete the preset folders.

Example: Adding a folder

**1 Press (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder], press , and enter a folder name.**

Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

The folder is added.

To change a folder name

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

To delete a folder

Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

## Moving i-αppli to a Different Folder

You can move software to a different folder using three methods.

Example: Moving a software

**1 Press (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display, select a folder, and press .**

To move all software in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → [Yes] → a folder.

To move several software

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move]. Select software and press (Complete). Select [Yes] → a folder.

**2 Select the software and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Move] → [Move one] → [Yes] and press .**

The Select move to display appears.

**4 Select a folder and press .**

The selected software is moved to the different folder.

## Deleting i-αppli

You can delete software using four methods.

Example: Deleting a software

**1 Press [i] (i-mode) for over a second in the stand-by display.**

To delete all software

From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a folder and press [●].**

To delete all software in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several software

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select software. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes].

**3 Select the software and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**4 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press [●].**

The selected software is deleted.

- When deleting i-αppli with mail or deleting all software including i-αppli with mail, you can select whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. However, if the i-αppli with mail folder contains protected mail at the time you select to delete both of them, neither the software nor the folder can be deleted. When you select to delete only the software and keep the folder intact, you can display only the mail main body from the Function menu (P.224).
- Some Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software may not be deleted. Some software requires to run i-αppli software and delete data stored in the IC card before you can delete the software.
- When the IC card lock is set, you cannot delete an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli.

## Setting How to Display a List of Software

You can select the display style of a software list using the following three methods. The set display style is applied to all folders.

Icon(L)




Icon(S)




List




**1 Press [✉] (Func) in the i-αppli software list display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Change display] → the display style and press [●].**

The display style of an i-αppli software list is set.

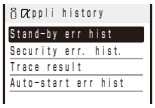
## Checking Error History and Trace Result

The error histories for the i-αppli stand-by display and the results output by the i-αppli trace feature can be displayed.

| | |
|---|---|
| Stand-by err hist | When an i-αppli stand-by display is terminated by an error, such as being unable to continue operation, up to 10 records including the time of error occurrence, etc. are displayed. |
| Security err. hist. | When i-αppli software is terminated by an error, such as being unable to use the saved data, up to 10 records including the time of error occurrence, etc. are displayed. |
| Trace result | When i-αppli software supporting the trace feature is terminated, up to 16 trace results are displayed. |
| Auto-start err hist | When i-αppli software fails to operate the Auto-start, up to 10 records including the time of error occurrence, etc. are displayed. |

Example: Displaying the stand-by error history

**1 From the Menu, select [i appli] → [i αppli history] and press ■.**




**2 Select [Stand-by err hist] and press ■.**




To display the security error history
Select [Security err. hist.].

To display the trace result
Select [Trace result].

To display the auto-start error history
Select [Auto-start err hist].

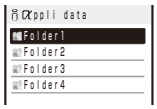
To delete the error history or trace result
Press (Delete) and select [Yes].

● To i-αppli authors
If the software does not operate properly during its programming, the trace result may be useful as a reference.

## Displaying i-αppli Data in microSD memory card <i-αppli(microSD)>

You can display i-αppli data saved in the microSD memory card, using a folder name.

**1 From the Menu, select [i appli] → [i αppli(microSD)] and press ■.**




The i-αppli(microSD) folder list display appears.

To delete a folder
Move the cursor to a folder and from the Function menu, select [Delete folder]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

**2 Select a folder and press ■.**

The SW description display appears.

# Using Various i-αppli Functions

## Using the Camera Function from i-αppli

You can use the camera function (P.155) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- When you use the camera, open the lens cover.
- Images are used and saved in the software.
- Items that can be set and the startup procedure of the camera vary depending on the software.
- When you activate the camera from the software that is specified the setting of the Closeup mode, the Auto focus becomes [Macro].

**1 While running the software, start the camera function.**

The Camera mode display appears.

**2 Point the camera at the object and press [📷].**

The image is recorded.

## Using the Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

You can use the bar code reader (P.183) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- The startup procedure of the bar code reader varies depending on the software.
- The scanned data may be used in the software.

**1 While running the software, start the bar code reader.**

The Bar code reader display appears.

**2 Locate at the JAN/QR code at the center of the display and press [■].**

The JAN/QR code is scanned.

## Using Infrared Communication from i-αppli

You can use the infrared communication (P.327) from the software running on the FOMA terminal.

- There are some data that cannot be exchanged even if the other device is equipped with the infrared communication function.
- The startup procedure of the infrared communication varies depending on the software.

**1 While running the software, start the infrared communication.**

**2 Select [Yes] and press [■].**

The infrared communication is started.

## Obtaining a ToruCa Card from i-αppli

You can obtain ToruCa cards from the software running on the FOMA terminal (P.256) and save them.

- You can obtain up to 100 ToruCa or ToruCa(detail) cards each up to 1K bytes for a ToruCa card or 100K bytes for a ToruCa(detail) card. The number of cards that can be obtained may decrease depending on the data to be obtained.
- The obtaining method of ToruCa cards varies depending on the software.

**1 While running the software, select a ToruCa card and press [■].**

The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

**2 Select [Yes] and press [■].**

The ToruCa card is obtained.

## Saving the Alarm from i-αppli

You can save the Alarm from the software running on the FOMA terminal (P.360).

**1 While running the software, perform the settings of the Alarm.**

**2 Select [OK] and press [■].**

The Alarm is saved.

# Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? ..... 254
What is the iC transfer service? ..... 254
Starting an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli ..... 255
What is ToruCa? ..... 256
Obtaining a ToruCa Card ..... <Obtain a ToruCa card> 256
Displaying a ToruCa Card ..... <Display ToruCa> 257
Managing ToruCa Cards ..... 258
Setting the ToruCa Details ..... <ToruCa setting> 259
Setting Whether to Notify That within the Communication Range ..... <IC act. notice> 261
Locking the IC Card Function ..... <IC card lock> 262

## What is Osaifu-Keitai?

"Osaifu-Keitai" provides convenient i-mode functions (i-mode FeliCa) that can be performed using the IC card inserted in an i-mode terminal.
FeliCa adopts a contactless IC card technology that enables data to be read/written just by scanning.
You can simply hold up your Osaifu-Keitai to a reading device in stores that provide the FeliCa service to pay using e-money, or use it as an airplane ticket or point card. With features like Osaifu-Keitai, your mobile phone becomes an increasingly handy tool.
This latest FeliCa is even more convenient to use compared with previous versions of the FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card. For example, you can deposit e-money in Osaifu-Keitai on the IC card, and check the balance and purchase history using communications.

※To use Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services, you need to make the necessary settings using i-αppli software (IC appli) supporting IC card function (check with IP (information service providers) for more details).

※For precautions on the use of each Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".

- The data on the IC card could be lost/changed due to an Osaifu-Keitai trouble (Note that, as a rule, when your Osaifu-Keitai is left with us such as for repairs, we can take it only when all data is deleted. Therefore, you are requested to delete the data yourself). You are requested to use the backup services provided by IP (information service providers) to support for reissuing, restoring, holding temporarily, or transferring data except transferring data by the iC transfer service. Check with IP (information service providers) whether the backup service is provided, for the usage conditions (such as necessary prior procedures or fees), or whether the iC transfer service is supported beforehand because those vary from one service to another. Please make sure to use the services supporting the backup services for important data.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any data loss/change of the information saved on the IC card or any damage occurred relating to using Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services regardless of any reasons such as trouble or changing to another FOMA terminal.
- If you should lose the Osaifu-Keitai or have it stolen, immediately contact the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service provider you use for operations which have to be done in this situation. For this FOMA terminal, both the Omakase Lock (P.136) and IC card lock (P.262) can be used.

## What is the iC transfer service?

The iC transfer service※1 is a service provided for transferring all data stored on the IC card at once※2 to a new Osaifu-Keitai ※3 when the Osaifu-Keitai is replaced such as for changing to another FOMA terminal or trouble repair. Once the data stored in the IC card is transferred to the new Osaifu-Keitai, you can use Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services by simply downloading the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli.
You can use the iC transfer service at our service counter of your local DoCoMo shop, etc.
For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".

※1 There is a processing charge for the use of the iC transfer service. (There are some cases where no charges apply.) Packet communication charges apply for IC appli downloads and various settings.

※2 There are some Osaifu-Keitai-compatible services that do not support the all data transfer function. Unsupported services are deleted when you use the iC transfer service. Therefore, utilize the backup service of each Osaifu-Keitai-compatible service or delete them before you use the iC transfer service.

※3 The iC transfer service can be used only the Osaifu-Keitai where the data is transferred to has to be the compatible model with the iC transfer service.

## Starting an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli

You have access to useful functions, for example, reading/writing data on the IC card using an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli in order to deposit e-money (such as train ticket deposit) or look up the balance or purchase history from the mobile phone.

- When you start an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software for the first time or download one, the message "Current UIM necessary to use IC card?" appears. If you select [Yes], you cannot use the IC card function without inserting the associated UIM. When you use the FOMA terminal with another UIM, you once need to delete all Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software with the associated UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal to use the IC card function.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [IC card content] and press ■.**




**2 Select the software and press ■.**

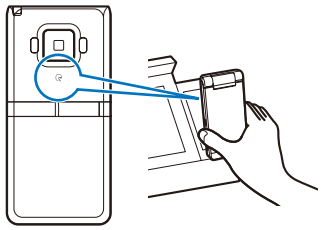
The software is started up and "" or "" appears.

- Reading/writing of data on the IC card from the software is interrupted in the following cases. Partially read/written data may be discarded.
  - When the time preset for the Schedule alarm or Alarm occurs
  - When receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call (The operation that takes place after you hang up the call may be different depending on the service you use.)
  - When the battery runs out

## Using the Osaifu-Keitai

When you hold up and show the FeliCa mark "" side of the FOMA terminal to a reading device, you can use the FOMA terminal for payment as e-money or use it in place of a train ticket. You can use this function without starting up the associated software.

- You can use Osaifu-Keitai by holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reading device during a call or i-mode connection. You cannot start the software.
- Holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reading device may cause the associated software to be executed.



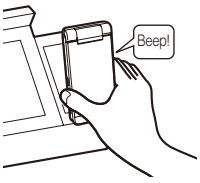
When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device, the FeliCa Sign lights in green. The vibrator vibrates when the communication starts.

- If the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal is not recognized by a reading device, move the terminal back and forth and side to side as you hold it up to the device.
- Even if the FOMA terminal is powered off, you can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding up and showing the FeliCa mark to a reading device. You cannot use it if the battery pack is not attached. You may not be able to use Osaifu-Keitai if the attached battery pack has not been used for a long period of time or has not been charged after the battery alarm was sounded. In this case, charge the battery pack and power on the FOMA terminal. When the FOMA terminal is powered off, you cannot start an Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli to read/write data on the IC card.
- Note that if you leave the FeliCa Sign lighting, the battery drains faster.
- When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device while charging the battery, the Charge indicator and FeliCa Sign light at the same time.

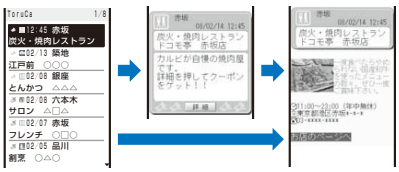
# What is ToruCa?

ToruCa is an e-card that can be obtained using Osaifu-Keitai. This convenient e-card can be used for applications such as flier, restaurant card, or coupon.
You can obtain ToruCa cards from a reading device or site. These e-cards can be easily exchanged by way of e-mail, infrared communication, or the microSD memory card.
The ToruCa card you obtained is saved in [ToruCa] of the [Osaifu-Keitai] menu.
You need a ToruCa-compatible terminal to use ToruCa. For details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide【i-mode】FOMA version”.

## Flow of ToruCa Operation

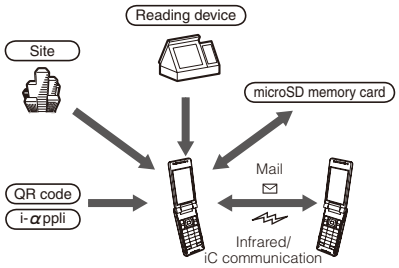



Hold up and show the Osaifu-Keitai to a reading device in order to obtain a ToruCa card. When the FOMA terminal comes within the communication range with the reading device, the FeliCa Sign lights in green. The vibrator vibrates and the FeliCa Sign flashes when the communication starts.



Select an obtained ToruCa card from the ToruCa list.

## Methods for Obtaining a ToruCa Card




Exchange a ToruCa card between i-mode terminals

- When you exchange a ToruCa card using i-mode communication, the regular packet communication charge is required.
- Some ToruCa cards may not allow you to update or redistribute using mail or infrared communication, etc. depending on the settings by IP (information service providers).

# Obtaining a ToruCa Card

<Obtain a ToruCa card>

You can hold up and show the FOMA terminal to a reading device to obtain a ToruCa or ToruCa(detail) card.

- You can obtain up to 100 ToruCa cards, each up to 1K bytes for a ToruCa card and up to 100K bytes for a ToruCa(detail) card. The number of ToruCa cards that can be obtained may decrease depending on the data to be obtained.
- While the IC card lock is set, you cannot obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device.




When you obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device, the FeliCa Sign flashes in green, a beep sounds to notify you that the card has been obtained, the ToruCa card is displayed, and the previous display reappears after about 15 seconds. The notification icon “” (New ToruCa) appears in the stand-by display.

To display the ToruCa card

Press ■ (Link) in the stand-by display and select “”.

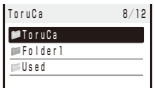
- Some ToruCa cards may not allow you to send mail with ToruCa cards attached, send data using iC or infrared communication, or copy them to the microSD memory card.
- When the Lock key is set, a beep for notifying you that the card has been obtained does not sound.

## Displaying a ToruCa Card

<Display ToruCa>

You can display a saved ToruCa or ToruCa(detail) card any time. You can also obtain a ToruCa(detail) card from the ToruCa card.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [ToruCa] and press ■.**




The ToruCa folder list appears.

- The following icons show the status of the folder.

| | |
|---|---|
| (Yellow) | Preset folder |
| (Blue) | User-created folder |

  - If there is an unread ToruCa card, "✉" appears at the lower right of the icon.

**2 Select a folder and press ■.**

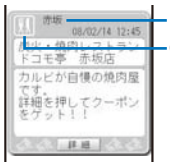



The ToruCa list appears.

- The following icons show the status of the ToruCa card.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✉/✉ | Unread ToruCa card/Expired unread ToruCa card |
| ✉/✉ | Read ToruCa card/Expired read ToruCa card |

**3 Select a ToruCa card and press ■.**




**4 Select [詳細] (Detail) → [Yes] and press ■.**




You obtain a ToruCa(detail) card.

To update a ToruCa(detail) card to the latest status

From the Function menu, select [Updated ToruCa] → [Yes].

To save data such as a phone number in the Phonebook

Move the cursor to the phone number, etc. and from the Function menu, select [Add to phonebook].

- Follow the same steps as in "Saving the Redial/Received Record in the Phonebook" (P.99, step 4 to 7).

- When you obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device while displaying a list such as the ToruCa list, the ToruCa folder list appears. Select [ToruCa] once again to display the obtained ToruCa card.

# Managing ToruCa Cards

- You cannot move, sort, or search a ToruCa card in the [Used] folder.

## Adding/Deleting Folders

You can create and delete a folder for saving a ToruCa card. You can manage up to 22 folders. You can also change the name of a folder or sort folders in the list.

- You cannot delete or change the names of the preset folders.

Example: Adding a folder

**1 Press [Func] (Func) in the ToruCa folder list.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder], press [●], and enter a folder name.**

Enter a folder name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.
The folder is added.

To change a folder name

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a folder name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

To reorder the folders

From the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Reorder folders] → a folder. Move the cursor to a position to move to, press [●] (Move), and press [i] (Complete).

To delete a folder

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

## Moving a ToruCa Card to Another Folder

You can move ToruCa cards to another folder using three methods.

- You cannot move a ToruCa card to [Used].

Example: Moving a ToruCa card

**1 From the ToruCa folder list, select a folder and press [●].**

To move all ToruCa cards in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → [Yes] → a folder.

To move several ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move], select ToruCa cards, and press [i] (Complete). Select [Yes] → a folder.

**2 Select a ToruCa card and press [Func] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Move] → [Move one] → [Yes] and press [●].**

The Select move to display appears.

**4 Select a folder and press [●].**

The selected ToruCa card is moved to another folder.

## Deleting a ToruCa Card

You can delete ToruCa cards using four methods.

Example: Deleting a ToruCa card

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [ToruCa] and press [●].**

To delete all ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a folder and press [●].**

To delete all ToruCa cards in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several ToruCa cards

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select ToruCa cards, press [i] (Complete), and select [Yes].

**3 Select a ToruCa card and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**4 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected ToruCa card is deleted.

## Sorting the List

You can temporarily sort the ToruCa cards in a folder and display them.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the ToruCa list.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Sort] → a sorting order and press ■.**

[Date]:
Sort by obtained date/time from newest to oldest.

[Genre]:
Sort by genre that identifies the type of ToruCa.

[Index]:
Sort by index in Japanese alphabetical order.

[By kana]:
Sort by "kana" in the data saved on a ToruCa card.

The ToruCa cards are displayed in accordance with the selected sort method.

● When you sort ToruCa cards using [Index], the order of sorting may not follow the Japanese alphabetical order if both full-width and half-width characters are used.

## Searching a ToruCa Card

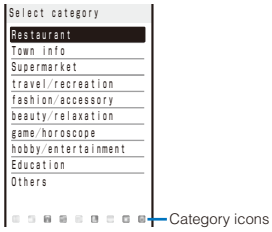
You can search for ToruCa cards by genre.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the ToruCa folder list.**

The Function menu appears.

To search for ToruCa cards in the folder
Press ✉ (Func) in the ToruCa list.

**2 Select [Search] and press ■.**




**3 Select a genre and press ■.**

The search result appears.

To delete all searched ToruCa cards
From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all item], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To move all searched ToruCa cards
From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all item] → [Yes] → a folder.

# Setting the ToruCa Details

<ToruCa setting>

## Setting Whether to Obtain a ToruCa Card

You can set whether to obtain ToruCa cards from a reading device or using the iC communication.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [ToruCa setting] → [ToruCa receive] and press ■.**

[Yes]:
Obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device or using the iC communication.

[No]:
Do not obtain a ToruCa card from a reading device or using the iC communication.

**2 Select [Yes]/[No] and press ■.**

The ToruCa receive is set.



Continued

## Assigning Separate Folders for ToruCa Cards

You can save requirements to sort ToruCa cards obtained from a reading device so that they can be automatically assigned to folders. Up to 20 sorting requirements can be saved.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [ToruCa setting] → [Sort folder] and press ■.**



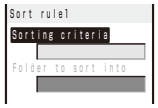

To delete a sorting requirement

Move the cursor to the sorting requirement and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several sorting requirements, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select sorting requirements, press i (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all sorting requirements, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To reorder the sorting requirements

From the Function menu, select [Reorder] → a sorting requirement, move the cursor to a folder to move to, press ■ (Move), and press i (Complete).

**2 Select a place to save the sorting requirement to and press ■.**




**3 Select the sorting method at [Sorting criteria].**

[Genre]:
Specify a genre of ToruCa cards.

[Title]:
Specify a part of a title within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

[Index]:
Specify a part of an index within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

[None]:
Do not specify any sorting method.

**4 Select a folder to be used for sorted ToruCa cards at [Folder to sort into] and press ■.**

When no folder is specified

ToruCa cards are sorted to [ToruCa].

**5 Press i (Complete).**

The sorting requirement is saved.

- If a ToruCa card satisfies several sorting requirements, the sorting requirement with a lower number in the list has higher priority.
- If you delete a folder for which the sorting requirement is set, [ToruCa] is used as a sort destination folder.
- ToruCa cards received before the sorting requirement is set are not sorted automatically.
- You cannot set [Used] as a sort destination folder.
- Only ToruCa cards obtained from the reading device are sorted automatically.

## Setting Whether to Automatically Recognize a ToruCa(Detail) Card

You can set whether to let a reading device recognize available ToruCa cards automatically when you hold up and show the FOMA terminal to it in order to use ToruCa.

- Up to 20 ToruCa cards are saved in [Used]. When the number of saved cards exceeds 20, the cards with the oldest date/time are deleted, in that order.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [ToruCa] → [Auto recognition] and press ■.**

[ON]:
Available ToruCa cards are automatically recognized by the reading device and saved in [Used].

[OFF]:
Available ToruCa cards are not recognized by the reading device.

To display the explanation about the Auto recognition
Move the cursor to [Auto recognition] and press i (Help).

**2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press ■.**

The Auto recognition is set.

When you select [ON]
Select [Yes].

- When the Lock all or Personal data lock is set, a ToruCa card does not move to [Used] even if it is to be deleted regardless of the Auto recognition being set to [ON].
- If you hold up and show the FOMA terminal to a reading device with the Auto recognition set to [OFF], a message confirming whether to use the Automatic reading function or stating that the Automatic reading function is OFF may appear. To use the Automatic reading function, select [Yes] to set the Auto recognition to [ON].

## Setting Whether to Check the Duplication of a ToruCa(Detail) Card

You can set the FOMA terminal to check if the ToruCa(detail) card you are trying to obtain has been obtained already when you obtain the card from a reading device.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [ToruCa] → [Duplication check] and press ■.**

[ON]:
Check if a target ToruCa(detail) card is already obtained. Do not obtain a ToruCa card that you have obtained already. Obtain a ToruCa card only when you have not obtained it yet.

[OFF]:
Do not check if a target ToruCa(detail) card is already obtained.

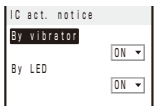
**2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press ■.**

The Duplication check is set.

## Setting Whether to Notify That within the Communication Range <IC act. notice>

You can set the FOMA terminal whether to notify you of being within the FeliCa communication range or the FeliCa communication being started by vibration or the FeliCa Sign when you are close to a reading device with the FOMA terminal powered on.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [IC act. notice] and press ■.**




[By vibrator]:
Set whether to activate the vibrator when the communication starts.

[By LED]:
Set whether to turn on the FeliCa Sign when you enter the range in which communication is enabled or when the communication starts.

**2 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the vibrator at [By vibrator].**

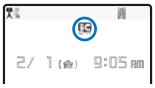
**3 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the FeliCa Sign at [By LED].**

- When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set, the FeliCa Sign does not light and the vibrator does not operate even if the By vibrator and By LED are set to [ON].

## Locking the IC Card Function <IC card lock>

You can lock the IC card function to prevent others from using it.

**1 Press ✳ (🔒) for over a second in the stand-by display.**



The IC card function is locked and "🔒" appears.

To cancel the IC card lock

Press ✳ (🔒) for over a second in the stand-by display, enter the Security code, and press ■ (OK).

## Locking the IC Card Function When the FOMA Terminal Is Powered Off

You can set to automatically lock the IC card function when the FOMA terminal is powered off.

**1 From the Menu, select [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [IC card lock] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**




[IC card lock]:
Set whether to lock the IC card function.

[IC lock(power-off)]:
Set whether to automatically lock the IC card function when the FOMA terminal is powered off.

**3 Select [Last status]/[Locked] at [IC lock(power-off)].**

[Last status]:
Keep the current status even after the FOMA terminal is powered off.

[Locked]:
Lock the IC card function when the FOMA terminal is powered off.

# GPS Function

Precautions on the Use of GPS Functions ..... 264
Checking Your Location ..... <Position location> 264
Using the GPS-compatible i-αppli ..... <i appli> 265
Providing Your Current Location Information upon Request ..... <Location provision> 270
Notifying Your Current Location Information ..... <Location notice> 274
Displaying the History of Location Positioning ..... <Location history> 276
Using the Location Information from Each Function ..... 277
Setting the GPS Functions ..... <GPS settings> 278

## Precautions on the Use of GPS Functions

- You may need i-mode subscription for the use of the GPS function.
- GPS is operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (degradation of accuracy, suspension of radio wave transmission, etc.) at the discretion of the U.S. Department of Defense.
- Note that radio waves may not be received or it may be difficult to receive radio waves in the following conditions, since GPS uses radio waves from a satellite.
  - Inside or immediately under a building
  - Inside a basement or tunnel, and below the ground or water
  - Inside a bag or box
  - High-rise building district or densely populated residential area
  - Inside or under a thick covering of trees
  - Near a high-voltage cable
  - In a car, inside a train compartment
  - Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
  - When there are obstructions (people or objects) near a mobile phone
  - When you are covering the display or earpiece of your mobile phone with your hand.

  The obtained location information may deviate by 300 m or more under the above conditions.
- When the FOMA terminal is outside of the service area (or it is overseas), the GPS function is not available.
- There are about 24 GPS satellites in orbit at an altitude of about 20,000 km, and each satellite takes about 12 hours to travel around the earth. Therefore, radio wave reception condition may vary depending on the date/time even if the operating environment is the same. For example, a significant deviation could occur to the location information or it may not be possible to identify a location.
- Please note that DoCoMo shall have no liabilities for any purely economic loss including those due to missing a chance to check the measurement (communication) results because of external factors (including the running out of the battery), such as a failure, malfunction, or any other problems of the FOMA terminal or the power failure.
- You cannot use the FOMA terminal as a navigation device for an aircraft, vehicle, and person. Please note that DoCoMo shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss while performing a navigation using the location information.
- You cannot use the FOMA terminal as a high-accuracy measurement GPS. Please note that DoCoMo shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss due to a deviation of the location information.
- The Position location, Location notice, and Location provision cannot be used in the following cases.
  - While the Lock all is set※1
  - While the Omakase Lock is set※1
  - While the Personal data lock is set※1
  - While the Lock key is set※1
  - While the Self mode is set
  - When the UIM is not inserted
  - While updating the software
  - While the Key dial lock is set※2

  ※1 The Location provision is available.

  ※2 The Position location, Location provision, and Location notice from the Loc. service client list are available.

## Checking Your Location

<Position location>

You can measure your current location to determine where you are. You can display a map based on the location information you obtain, mail the location information, or save the location information in the Phonebook.

- No communication charge is required for confirming your current location. Note, however, that there is an extra packet communication charge for displaying a map based on your current location information.

Example: Displaying a map of your current location

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [Position location] and press ■.**

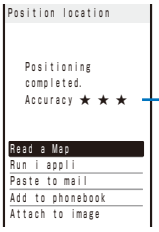
- You can also check your current location by pressing 9 for over a second in the stand-by display. After positioning, the operations follow the settings of the GPS button setting (P.278).




"" flashes and the incoming indicator flashes.
The progress of accuracy is indicated by the bar.

To quit the Position location
Press (Cancel).

To display the result for identifying a location right away
Press (Use).




To retry the operation
Press (Retry).

Accuracy
★ ★ ★: Nearly accurate location information (with an error less than approximately 50 m)
★ ★ ☆: Relatively accurate location information (with an error less than approximately 300 m)
★ ☆ ☆: Approximate location information (with an error more than approximately 300 m)

- Use the positioning accuracy as a guide. The accuracy may vary depending on the radio wave condition of the vicinity.

**2 Select [Read a Map] and press ■.**

The map of determined current location is displayed.

- After displaying the map, you can search for the neighborhood information using "i エリアー周辺情報ー" (i-mode area –Neighbor info–). For details about "i エリアー周辺情報ー", see the DoCoMo's website.

To use the location information with GPS-compatible i-αppli software
Select [Run i appli] → software to be used.

To paste the location information to mail
Select [Paste to mail] → [Yes].

- "location URL" that has a link to the location information is entered in the mail main body.
- The location information URL being sent is only displayed on the i-mode compatible terminals.

To save the location information in the Phonebook
Select [Add to phonebook] → [New]/[Add].

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.95, step 3 to 6).

To add location information on an image
Select [Attach to image] → an image from My picture of the Data Box.

● You can add location information using the GPS function on an image recorded by the camera automatically (P.171).

## Using the GPS-compatible i-αppli <i appli>

You can use the location information with GPS-compatible i-αppli software.

- When you use a GPS-compatible i-αppli, the location information is sent to the information provider of the software being used.
- When you use the GPS function with a GPS-compatible i-αppli, set the Use location info of the software being used to [Yes].
- The method of using the location information varies depending on the software.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [i appli] and press ■.**

The GPS software list display appears.

**2 Select a software and press ■.**

The software is started up and "" or "" appears.

## Using 地図アプリ(Map appli)

The preinstalled "地図アプリ(Map appli)" uses the GPS function and a map to display your current location or specified location, to search the information on neighborhood, and to navigate you to the destination by public transportation, walk, or car.

- An additional packet communication charge is required for using this function. It is recommended to use the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai Full for this software.
- When you have deleted the software but you want to restore it, download it from "i エリアー周辺情報ー" (i-mode area-Neighbor info-).
- You cannot use this software when 2in1 is set to the B mode because it uses mail.
- Please note that DoCoMo will not guarantee any result such as of the accuracy and immediacy of information such as map or route.
- While driving a car, please let a person other than the driver operate it.



Continued

## Basic Service and Additional Service

There are the basic services and additional services for this software.

Basic service : Services provided by DoCoMo for free of charge.

Additional service : Services provided by ZENRIN DataCom that require an additional charge.

You can use the additional services except the traffic information up to 90 days after you activate the software for the first time.

After 90 days, if you wish to keep using the additional services, you need to apply for a membership (paid) to "ゼンリン地図+ナビ" (ZENRIN Maps+Navi) provided by ZENRIN DataCom.

If you apply for a membership while still using it, you do not need to download the software again. You can keep using the software.

| Menu | Contents | Up to 90 days | After 90 days |
|---|---|---|---|
| 今いる場所 (Current location) | • Use the GPS function to show the map of your current location or send a map attached to mail.<br>• Leave your footmark of your current location, follow the track, and check others' footmarks. | Free | Free |
| 周辺を調べる (Search neighborhood) | • Search information such as shops, facilities, iD-available stores around your current location or specified location and obtain a coupon from gourmet information.<br>• Check weather or availabilities of parking lot near the location. | Free | Free |
| 地図を見る (View a map) | • Search a map by entering information such as keywords, a genre, address, and phone number. | Free | Free |
| | • Check a map of the location saved in the software, server, or Phonebook or searched before.<br>• Save a map of a location in a server to use the information on a PC as well. | Free | Paid |
| ナビをする (Navigation) | • Navigate the route to the destination by public transportation, walk, or car.<br>• Navigate the route to your house whose information is saved before. | Free | Paid |
| 乗換案内 (Transfer information) | • Check transfer information and time table of trains.<br>• Check the train route on a map and set an alarm before departure. | Free | Paid |
| 設定/直感★ (Settings/ Intuition) | • Tilt the FOMA terminal to move a 3D map or map. | Free | Free |
| | • Check how to set or operate the software regarding display of a map, navigation, etc. | Free | Free |

## Menus and Operations of the Top Display of "地図アプリ" (Map appli)

- When you use "地図アプリ" (Map appli) for the first time, the Terms of Use and precautions are displayed.
- The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

Top display




Each menu is displayed in the Top display. When you close the menu, the last searched map appears.

### ■ After 90 days without a subscription for a membership

When you use the software for the first time after 90 days, the message informing that available functions are limited and the message inquiring for a subscription for a membership appear.
When you select an additional service, those messages appear as well.



You can subscribe for a membership from the software accessed to the "ゼンリン地図+ナビ" (ZENRIN Maps+Navi) site.

## Display and Operations of a Map

- The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

Map display



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Key operations while displaying a map

| Key operation | Action |
|---|---|
| メニュー(Menu) | Display the menu. |
| ■ | Display the quick access menu. |
| 拡縮 (Zoom) | Display the zoom bar. Press ▲ to display a wider range, or ▼ to display the detailed area. Press (閉じる) (Exit) to determine the zoom and the bar disappears. |
| ▲▼◀▶ | Move the map horizontally or vertically. |
| CLR | Close the menu or send you back to the first searched result position. |
| * | Rotate the map counterclockwise. |
| 0 | Rotate the map faced to north. |
| # | Rotate the map clockwise. |

Key operations while displaying the quick access menu

| Key operation | Action |
|---|---|
| ▲ 周辺を調べる (Search neighbor) | Search the neighboring information based on the center of the displayed map. |
| ▼ ココへナビ (Navi here) | Search the route from the set departure point to the center of the displayed map. |
| ◀ ココを送信 (Send here) | Send mail with the URL of the displayed map. |
| ▶ ココを登録 (Save here) | Save the location information on the center of the map in the software, server, or Phonebook. When you save it in the server, you can access it from a PC as well. |
| ■ 地図へ (To Map) | Close the quick access menu. |
| 1 3D･パノラマ (3D/Panorama) | Display the points where you can display a 3D intersection or panorama image. Select the point to view them. |
| 2 ビル　テナント (Building Tenant) | Display a building existed around and if there is a tenant, you can click to check it. |

## Display and Operations of the Search Result of Neighboring Information

- It explains only for the display and operations of the search result displayed on the map, and it does not apply for the display and operations selected from the list.
- The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

Search result display of neighboring information



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Key operations while displaying the search result display of neighboring information

- When the cursor does not point at searched information such as a store, the quick menu is displayed.

| Key operation | Action |
|---|---|
| ■ | Check the detailed information on the search result. |
| ▲▼◀▶ | Move the map horizontally or vertically. |
| 5 | Search again based on the displayed map to be center. |
| 4 | Show the previous search result. |
| 6 | Show the next search result. |
| ✉ メニュー (Menu) | Display the menu. |
| i 拡縮 (Zoom) | Display the zoom bar. Press ▲ to display a wider range, or ▼ to display the detailed area. Press i (閉じる) (Exit) to determine the zoom and the bar disappears. |

## Navigating the Searched Route with Sound and Display to the Destination

You can set the departure point and the destination to search the route. The route is displayed traveling by walk, public transportation, or car. After the route is searched, you can be navigated to the destination with sound and display.

**1 While activating the software, press ✉ (メニュー) (Menu), select [ナビをする] (Navigation) → [ナビをする] (Navigation), and press ■.**

**2 Select [出発地] (Departure point), press ■, and set the departure point by the items below.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 現在地(GPS) (Current location (GPS)) | Position the current location and set it. |
| フリーワード検索 (By keyword) | Search by keyword. |
| 地図上で指定 (Specify on map) | Set the departure point on the map. |
| TEL/〒検索 (By phone number/code) | Search by phone number/ postal code. |
| 住所一覧から (From address list) | Select an address to set. |
| ジャンルから (From genre) | Select a genre to set. |
| 履歴から (From history) | Set from the previously displayed map. |
| 登録地点から (From saved location) | Set from the location information saved in the software, server, or Phonebook. |
| 自宅 (Home) | Set the location information on your home. |
| 出発地の確認 (Check departure point) | Check information on the departure point. |

**3 Select [目的地] (Destination), press ■, and set the destination following the similar steps at Step 2.**

**4 Select [時間指定] (Specify time), press ■, and select an item below.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 現時刻で指定 (Current time) | Check the route using the current time. |
| 出発時刻指定 (Start time) | Set the start time and check the route. |
| 到着時刻指定 (Arrival time) | Set the arrival time and check the route. |
| 終電を利用 (Last train) | Check the route with the last train of the day. |

**5 Select [条件設定] (Condition), press ■, select an item below, select [上記で設定] (Set as above), and press ■.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 乗換条件 (Transfer) | Select from [早い] (Fast), [安い] (Budget), or [楽々] (Easy) for transfer selection criteria. |
| 徒歩ルート (Walking route) | Select from [おまかせ] (Recommended), [屋根多い] (Many roofs), or [階段少ない] (Less up-and-down) for route selection criteria. |
| 特急利用 (Express) | Select whether to use express even if the total route distance is within 100 km. |
| 通常利用車種 (Type of car in regular use) | Select a type of car in regular use. |

**6 Select [🚃🚌🚗で検索]/[🚗のみで検索] and press ■.**

You can search a route by using the total navigation: [🚃🚌🚗で検索] and the car navigation: [🚗のみで検索]. Routes (up to six routes) are displayed as a search result. If there is another transfer route, an icon shows the characteristics of the route.

| Icon | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 早 (Fast) | Fastest route to reach the destination. |
| 安 (Budget) | Most budget route to reach the destination. |
| 楽 (Easy) | Route with less numbers of transfers to reach the destination. |
| オススメ (Recommended) | Meet the above three conditions. |
| 有料 (Toll) | Car route taking toll roads. |
| 一般 (Local) | Car route taking local roads. |

To save the route
Select [ルートを登録] (Save route).

**7 Select a route, select [ナビ・ルート確認] (Check Navi/route) → [ナビ]/[ナビ(省電力)] (Navi/Navi(power saver)), and press ■.**

The "ご利用上の注意" (Usage precautions) appears.

To check a route
Select a route and select [ルート確認] (Check route).

To check the time table
Select a route and select [時刻表] (Time table).

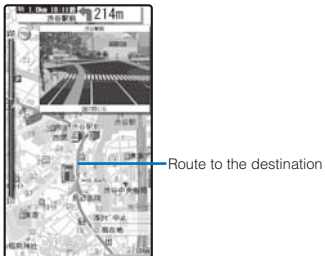
**8 Select [はい] and press ■.**

The navigation to the destination starts.

## Display and operations of route (car)/ navigation (car)

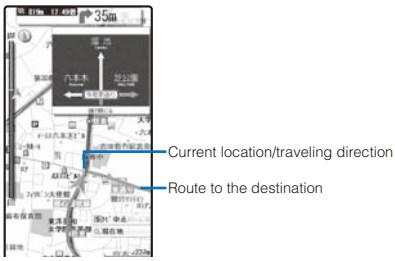
- The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display.

Route (car) display




©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Navigation (car) display




©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Key operations while using the navigation

| Key operation | Action |
|---|---|
| ✉ メニュー(Menu) | End the navigation and display the Top menu. |
| ■ | Display the quick access menu. |
| ℹ 拡縮 (Zoom) | Display the zoom bar. Press ▲ to display a wider range, or ▼ to display the detailed area. Press ℹ (閉じる) (Exit) to determine the zoom and the bar disappears. |
| ▲▼◀▶ | Move the map horizontally or vertically. |
| CLR | Go back to the current location. |
| 2 | Switch to the intersection mode. |
| 5 | End/start the navigation. |
| * | Rotate the map counterclockwise. |
| 0 | Rotate the map faced to north. |
| # | Rotate the map clockwise. |



Continued

Key operations while displaying the quick access menu

| Key operation | Action |
|---|---|
| ▼ 結果&設定 (Result&Settings) | Display the search result of a route (time, fee, etc.) and perform settings for the navigation. |
| ◀ 経由地の決定 (Decide the passing point) | Search the route adding up to three passing points toward the destination. |
| ▶ リルート (Search the route again) | Search the route from the departure to the destination again. |
| 1 ルート消去 (Delete route) | Delete the displayed route. |
| 2 モード切替 (Switch mode) | Switch to the intersection mode. |
| 3 渋滞情報 (Traffic information) ※ Only for the car route | Display the traffic information linked to the displayed map. |

## Using the Setting/Help

**1 From the menu of the Top display, select [設定/直感★] → [設定・ヘルプ], press ■, and select items from the followings.**

| | |
|---|---|
| 会員情報確認 (Check membership) | Check whether you sign up for [ゼンリン 地図+ナビ] (ZENRIN Maps+Navi). |
| α基本設定 (Basic settings of appli) | Set the settings related to the software itself such as the display color of the map and font size. |
| ナビ設定 (Navi setting) | Set the setting related to the navigation function such as リルート (Re-route) and volume of audio guidance. |
| 自宅設定 (Set your home) | Save your home location. |
| 履歴系クリア (Delete history) | Delete the usage history of maps and navigations. |
| 使い方の説明/よくある質問/利用規約 (Explanation of usage/ FAQ/Agreement for use) | Check the explanation of usage, FAQ, and agreement for use. |

# Providing Your Current Location Information upon Request <Location provision>

You can provide your current location information when there is a request from another party.

- Before using the Location provision, set the Location request to [ON] or [Permission sched]. The default setting is set to [OFF]. You may also need to perform the usage settings for each service (P.271). (When you use "imadoco-search", you need to set "位置情報利用設定" (Settings to use location information) (settings for imadoco-search) in i Menu ("オプション設定" (Options) of "料金&お申込・設定" (Charge & Subscription/Settings)).)
- To use the Location provision, you may need to subscribe to a service provider that supports this function. There may be a charge for the use of the service.
- To use the Location provision, follow the information provided by the service provider and DoCoMo's website.
- When the Location request is set to [ON] or [Permission sched], the location information may be sent to a searcher without operating the FOMA terminal.

# When Your Location Information Is Requested

When the provision of the location information is requested by the preset GPS host, the Location provision is started.

- During a voice call or PushTalk communication, the vibrator does not operate.

When the settings for using each service is set to "許可" (accept)




"■" flashes, the Loc. provide/accept tone sounds, and the incoming indicator flashes.

To quit the Location provision

Press ✉ (Cancel), ☎, or CLR.

When the Lock key is set, ✉ (Cancel) becomes invalid.

When the settings for using each service is set to "毎回確認" (Check every time)




Select [Send Loc.].




"" flashes, the Loc. provide/check tone sounds, and the incoming indicator flashes.

To quit the Location provision

Press (Cancel), , or CLR.

When the Lock key is set, (Cancel) becomes invalid.

- If there is a request for your location information when the Public mode (Drive mode) is set, the FOMA terminal operates as follows.
  - When the settings for using each service is set to "許可" (accept), it is indicated only in the display and the location information is provided. The Loc. provide/accept tone, vibrator, and incoming indicator do not operate.
  - When the settings for using each service is set to "毎回確認" (Check every time), the location information is not provided.
- When the location information is requested from a person who uses "imadocokantan search", the FOMA terminal operates as follows.
  - The confirmation screen appears every time you are requested. If you select [Send Loc.], the rough positioning result is immediately notified to the person who requests it. After you select [Send Loc.], the GPS positioning display appears. The high-detailed positioning result is notified after the GPS positioning.
  - After you select [Send Loc.] and you cancel providing the location, the rough positioning result is notified to the person who requests it. In this case, the Location history is saved but location information is not displayed.
- The location information may be sent depending on the timing of cancellation.
- Even if the location information may have been sent, the service provider that supports the Location provision function may not have received it depending on the radio wave condition.
- When 2in1 is used, the location information is provided, regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- Some Service client IDs may not be displayed.

## Setting Whether to Provide Your Location Information

You can set whether to accept or reject the request to provide your current location information.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [GPS settings] → [Loc. request menu] → [Location request] and press .**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press .**

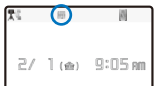
The Location request display appears.

[ON]:
Provide the location information to requesting party. The location information may be sent to a searcher without operating the FOMA terminal.

[OFF]:
Do not provide location information to requesting party.

[Permission schedule]:
Provide the location information to requesting party during the permitted period.

**3 Select a way to provide the location information and press .**




The Location request is set. If you set [ON] or [Permission sche], "" appears.

When you select [Permission schedule]

Set a period to permit for providing location information. Enter the time both at [Start time] and [End time] in 24-hour format and select the repeat type at [Repeat]. If you set [Eyd] or [Day], enter dates both at [Start day] and [End day].

To perform the setting via the Initial setting

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Initial setting] → [Location request], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]/[No].



Continued

## Operations When the Period to Permit for Providing Location Information is Set

Example: When the current date and time is "2008/2/23 14:00"

Starting time: 15:00 Ending time: 22:00

| Settings | | Period for providing location information |
|---|---|---|
| Repeat type | Valid period | |
| None specified | — | From 2008/2/23 15:00 to 2008/2/23 22:00 |
| Everyday | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/28 15:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 Everyday (from 15:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/23 15:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 Everyday (from 15:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | After 2008/2/23 15:00 Everyday (from 15:00 to 22:00) |
| Specified day | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/28 15:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 (from 15:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/23 15:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 (from 15:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | Specified day after 2008/2/23 15:00 (from 15:00 to 22:00) |

Starting time: 09:00 Ending time: 22:00

| Settings | | Period for providing location information |
|---|---|---|
| Repeat type | Valid period | |
| None specified | — | From 2008/2/23 14:00 to 2008/2/23 22:00 |
| Everyday | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/28 09:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 Everyday (from 09:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/23 14:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 Everyday (from 09:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | After 2008/2/23 14:00 Everyday (from 09:00 to 22:00) |
| Specified day | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/28 09:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 (from 09:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/23 14:00 to 2008/3/28 22:00 (from 09:00 to 22:00) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | Specified day after 2008/2/23 14:00 (from 09:00 to 22:00) |

Starting time: 15:00 Ending time: 10:00

| Settings | | Period for providing location information |
|---|---|---|
| Repeat type | Valid period | |
| None specified | – | From 2008/2/23 15:00 to 2008/2/24 10:00 |
| Everyday | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/28 15:00 to 2008/3/29 10:00 Everyday (from 15:00 to 10:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/23 15:00 to 2008/3/29 10:00 Everyday (from 15:00 to 10:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | After 2008/2/23 15:00 Everyday (from 15:00 to 10:00 at the next day) |
| Specified day | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/28 15:00 to 2008/3/29 10:00 (from 15:00 to 10:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/23 15:00 to 2008/3/29 10:00 (from 15:00 to 10:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | Specified day after 2008/2/23 15:00 (from 15:00 to 10:00 at the next day) |

Starting time: 09:00 Ending time: 09:00

| Settings | | Period for providing location information |
|---|---|---|
| Repeat type | Valid period | |
| None specified | – | From 2008/2/23 14:00 to 2008/2/24 09:00 |
| Everyday | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/28 09:00 to 2008/3/29 09:00 Everyday (from 09:00 to 09:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | From 2008/2/23 14:00 to 2008/3/29 09:00 Everyday (from 09:00 to 09:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | After 2008/2/23 14:00 Everyday (from 09:00 to 09:00 at the next day) |
| Specified day | Start date 2008/2/28 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/28 09:00 to 2008/3/29 09:00 (from 09:00 to 09:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date 2008/3/28 | Specified day from 2008/2/23 14:00 to 2008/3/29 09:00 (from 09:00 to 09:00 at the next day) |
| | Start date 2008/2/23 End date None specified | Specified day after 2008/2/23 14:00 (from 09:00 to 09:00 at the next day) |



Continued

## Setting the User-defined Host

※ Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set one host for using the GPS service besides the Initial host set at the time of subscription.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [GPS settings] → [Loc. request menu] → [Host setting] and press ■.**




To edit the set host
Move the cursor to the set host, press i (Edit), and enter the Security code. Edit each item.

To delete the set host
Move the cursor to the set host, press ✉ (Delete), enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To reset the host to the default setting
Select [Initial host].

**2 Select [Unregistered] and press i (Edit).**

The Security code screen appears.

**3 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**




[Host name]:
Enter a host name within 99 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

[Host address]:
Enter a host address within 100 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

**4 Enter each item.**

**5 Press i (Complete).**

The entered host is saved.

**6 Select a host and press ■.**

The user-defined host is changed.

## Performing Settings for Using the GPS Service

You can connect to the GPS service settings site and perform setting necessary for providing the location information.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [GPS settings] → [Loc. request menu] → [Service settings] and press ■.**

The FOMA terminal is connected to the GPS service settings site.

**2 Set each item.**

- For details about how to set the services, contact your service provider.

- While you are connecting to the GPS service settings site, available Function menus are different from the ones displayed during i-mode. The URL history is also not recorded.
- If you connect to the GPS service settings site during international roaming, an error message appears on the display and a communication charge is required.

## Notifying Your Current Location Information <Location notice>

You can notify a specific party (a service provider that supports the Location notice function) of the location information of your current location.

- To use the Location notice, you may need to subscribe to a service provider that supports this function. There may be a charge for the use of the service.
- To use the Location notice, follow the instructions provided by the service provider or on the DoCoMo's website. There is a charge for the use of the Location notice function.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [Location notice] and press ■.**

The screen for selecting the method for activating the Location notice appears.

**2 Select [Loc. service client] → a party to be notified and press ■.**




"■" flashes and the incoming indicator flashes.
When the current location is notified, the location notice tone sounds and the location information is notified to a recipient.

To enter a party to be notified and notify location information
Select [Direct input], enter the service client ID, and press ■ (OK).

To quit the Location notice
Press ✉ (Cancel), ☎, or CLR.

- When 2in1 is used, the location information is notified by Number A, regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- The location information may be sent depending on the timing of cancellation.
- Even if the location information may have been sent, the service provider that supports the Location notice function may not have received it depending on the radio wave condition.

## Saving a Party to Be Notified

You can save a party to be notified of your current location information as a location service client. Up to five parties can be saved.

- Make sure to enter [Loc. serv. client] and [Service client ID].

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [GPS settings] → [Reg. service client] and press ■.**




To display the details of a party
Move the cursor to the party and press ■ (Detail).

To edit the information of a party
Move the cursor to the party and from the Function menu, select [Edit]. Edit each item.

To delete a party
Move the cursor to the party and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all parties, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To save a party in the Phonebook
Move the cursor to the party and from the Function menu, select [Add to phonebook] → [Main memory]/ [UIM].

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.95, step 3 to 6) or in the Add to UIM phonebook (P.98, step 3 to 4).

**2 Press i (Create).**




[Loc. serv. client]:
Enter a name of the party to be notified.

[Service client ID]:
Enter a notified party ID specified by the service provider.

[Phone number]:
Enter a phone number.

[Auto Notice setting]:
Set whether to notify your current location automatically when you place a voice/ videophone call to the number set at [Phone number].

**3 Enter a name of a party to be notified at [Loc. serv. client].**

Enter the name within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.

**4 Enter a notified party ID specified by the service provider at [Service client ID].**

Enter the ID within 12 half-width numeric characters including "✻" or "#".



Continued

**5 Select [Phone number] → [Direct input], press ■, and enter a phone number.**

Enter the phone number within 26 half-width numeric characters including "✱", "#", "+", or "P".

- The phone number which is already saved as a location service client cannot be saved again.

To quote from the Phonebook

Select [Phonebook].

**6 Select the notification method at [Auto Notice setting].**

[Yes]:
Notify your current location automatically.

[No]:
Do not notify your current location automatically.

[Confirm]:
When you place a voice/videophone call, confirm whether to notify your current location.

**7 Press [i] (Complete).**

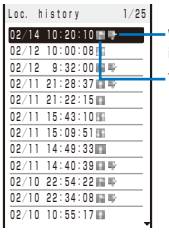
The party is set as a location service client.

## Displaying the History of Location Positioning <Location history>

Up to 50 results of location information positioned by the Position location, Location provision, and Location notice are recorded as history. You can perform various operations from the location information recorded in the history.

- When the number of location information records exceeds 50, the records are deleted starting from the location information with the oldest date/time.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [Location history] and press ■.**




- The following icons show the type of positioning used.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Position location |
| | Location notice |
| | Location provision |

To use the location information

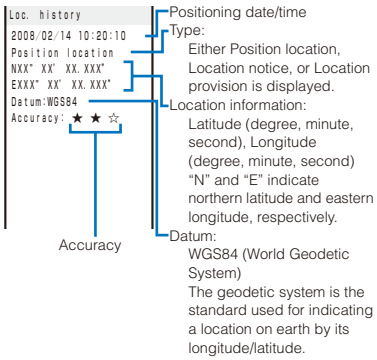
Press [✉] (Use).

- For details about how to use the location information, see P.277.

To delete a location history record

Move the cursor to the location history record and press [✉] (Use), select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several location history records, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select records, press [i] (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all location history records, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a location history and press ■ (Detail).**




- When the Location notice or Location provision is performed, it is recorded in the Location history even if the Position location fails or is canceled. However, note that some items are not displayed.
- A location history record for which location information is not obtained cannot be used by any function.
- Even if the result of the Location provision or Location notice is left in the history, the service provider may not have received the location information.
- When you provide your location information while 2in1 is used, the name of the party who requests the location information is displayed by each 2in1 mode following the Phonebook 2in1 setting.
- The location information and accuracy saved in the Location history may differ from those sent to the Location provision destination/Location service client depending on some reasons such as radio wave condition.

# Using the Location Information from Each Function

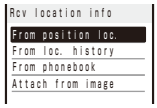
You can display a map based on the location information added to the Phonebook, sites, screen memos, ToruCa cards, Message R/F, or images. You can also paste the location information URL to mail.

## Adding the Location Information

You can add the location information to an image or the FOMA terminal phonebook or paste the location information URL in the main body of mail.

Example: Adding the location information to the mail main body by obtaining it by the Position location

**1 Press [Func] (Func) in the mail main body input display, select [Rcv loc. info], and press [●].**




To add the location information to the FOMA terminal phonebook

Select "" in the Edit FOMA terminal phonebook display.

**2 Select [From position loc.], press [●], and press [●] (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to paste the location URL appears.

To add the location information by selecting from the Location history

Select [From loc. history] → a location history and press [●] (OK).

To add the location information by selecting from the Phonebook

Select [From phonebook] → a phonebook.

To add the location information from an image

Select [Attach from image] → an image from My picture of the Data Box.

- You cannot select it when you add the location information on an image.

**3 Select [Yes] and press [●].**

"" location URL" that has a link to the location information is entered in the mail main body.

## Using the Added Location Information

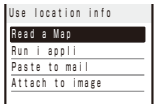
You can use the location information added to the image, FOMA terminal phonebook, sites, screen memos, ToruCa cards, or Message R/F.

- Items you can use vary depending on the type of data which is attached location information. The available items depending on the type of data are followings.

| Type of data | Available item |
|---|---|
| Image | Read a Map, Paste to mail, Run i appli, and Add to phonebook |
| Phonebook | Read a Map, Paste to mail, Run i appli, and Attach to image |
| Site, Screen memo, ToruCa, or MessageR/F | Read a Map, Paste to mail, and Run i appli |

Example: Displaying a map of the location information added to the Phonebook

**1 From the Phonebook, select data → [ Has loc. info] and press [●].**




**2 Select [Read a Map] and press [●].**

The map of the location information appears.

- After displaying the map, you can search for the neighborhood information using "i エリアー周辺情報ー" (i-mode area –Neighbor info–). For details about "i エリアー周辺情報ー", see the DoCoMo's website.

To add the location information on an image

Select [Attach to image] → an image from My picture of the Data Box.

To delete the location information added on the image

Select [Delete loc. info] → [Yes].

To use the location information with GPS-compatible i-αppli software

Select [Run i appli] → software to be used.

To paste the location information to mail

Select [Paste to mail] → [Yes].

- "" location URL" that has a link to the location information is entered in the mail main body.

To save the location information in the Phonebook

Select [Add to phonebook] → [New]/[Add].

- Follow the same steps as in the Add to FOMA terminal phonebook (P.95, step 3 to 6).

# Setting the GPS Functions

<GPS settings>

## Setting the GPS Keys

You can set the actions when performing the Position location by pressing 9 for over a second in the stand-by display.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [GPS settings] → [GPS button setting] and press ■.**




[Read a Map]:
Display the map showing your current location that is positioned.

[Run i appli]:
Use the GPS-compatible i-αppli.

[Paste to mail]:
Attach the location information into mail.

[Add to phonebook]:
Save the location information in the Phonebook.

[Attach to image]:
Attach the location information to an image.

[Confirm]:
Select a function every time you use.

**2 Select a function to be performed automatically and press ■.**

The GPS button setting is set.

## Setting the Positioning Accuracy

You can set to prioritize either the speed or accuracy of positioning.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [GPS] → [GPS settings] → [Positioning mode] and press ■.**




**2 Select a positioning mode at each item.**

[Standard mode]:
Perform positioning in preference to the speed.

[Quality mode]:
Perform positioning in preference to the accuracy. It may take time longer than [Standard mode] to perform positioning.

**3 Press i (Complete).**

The Positioning mode is set.

# 1Seg

About One Seg ..... 240
Before Using One Seg ..... 241
Setting Channels ..... <Set channel list> 242
Watching One Seg ..... <Activate 1Seg> 243
Using the Program Guide i-αppli ..... <Program guide> 247
Setting a Timer for Watching/Recording a One Seg Program ..... <Booking list> 247
Using Data Broadcasting ..... 251
Using TVlink ..... <TVlink> 252
Recording One Seg While Watching ..... <Record One Seg> 252
Starting Time Shift Play While Watching ..... <Time shift> 253
Receiving Mail While Watching One Seg ..... 254
Various Settings for One Seg ..... <1Seg setting> 255

# About One Seg

## What is One Seg?

One Seg is a digital terrestrial broadcasting for mobile devices and provides data broadcasting as well as video and sound broadcasting. You can also receive more detailed program information, join panel shows, enjoy TV shopping, and more using i-mode.

- For details on the “One Seg” service, see the website below.
  The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  PC : http://www.dpa.or.jp/
  i-mode : http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

## About Using One Seg

- One Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations).
- You can receive video, sound, and data broadcasting of One Seg that is broadcasted without any subscription and free of charge.
- The two types of information are available in the area of the data broadcasting: “data broadcasting” and “data broadcasting site”. “Data broadcasting” is carried in airwave with video and sound, and “data broadcasting site” is available by accessing sites provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations). Also, “i-mode site” can be accessed with this service. To access sites, you need to subscribe to services such as i-mode.
- The packet communication charge is required to access a site such as “data broadcasting site” or “i-mode site”.
  Depending on a site, an additional information charge may be required for using sites (i-mode paid sites).

### About Radio Wave

One Seg is one of the broadcasting services and uses the different radio wave (airwave) from the FOMA service. Therefore, regardless of whether you are outside/inside of the FOMA service area, you cannot receive One Seg broadcasting in a place where the airwave does not reach or in a time zone when it is out of service.
Even if you are in the digital terrestrial broadcasting service area, the receiving condition may become worse or you cannot receive anything in the following places.

- Places where are far away from the radio wave tower which send airwaves
- Places such as interfered by mountains, covered with a building where the radio wave is interrupted by features or buildings
- Places such as in the tunnel, basement, or building where the radio wave is weak or does not reach at all

To make the radio wave condition better, extend the One Seg Antenna fully. Changing the orientation of the antenna, placing the FOMA terminal closer or further to the body, or moving to another location may make the radio wave condition better.

### Display When Using One Seg for the First Time

After the purchase, when you use One Seg for the first time, the display for confirming the notabilia of the service appears. Check the contents and press [■] (OK).

- When you insert another UIM or perform the Reset all data&set, the display for confirming the notabilia of the service appears again.

## What is Broadcast Storage Area?

The broadcast storage area is a storage area inside the terminal that is exclusive for One Seg. The information you input according to the instructions provided by the data broadcast program you are watching is saved in the broadcast storage area as specified by the settings of TV broadcasters (broadcast stations). The information to be saved may contain answers for quiz, as well as personal information such as membership number, gender, age, or occupation.

The saved information may be displayed, or be sent to TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) without another input of information when you browse to the data broadcasting site.
To delete information in the broadcast storage area, see P.255.
When you replace the UIM with another one, the screen for confirming whether to reset the broadcast storage area appears. Select [Yes] to reset it.

■ Using information in the broadcast storage area

When information in the broadcast storage area is used while you are watching a program, the message “Use saved info? It may include info used by the same broadcasting gr.” appears. When you select [Yes], the confirmation screen does not appear as long as you watch the same program. If you select [Yes,from then on], the confirmation screen no longer appears even if the program is changed.

### Other Features

- One-touch channel selection by the remote-control numbers (P.244)
- Switching between the main sound and sub sound (P.246)
- Using the program guide i-αppli (P.247)
- Setting a timer for watching (P.247)
- Setting a timer for recording (P.247)
- Displaying and using the data broadcasting (P.251)
- Using TVlink (P.252)
- Recording a video and still image (P.252)
- Time shift play while watching (P.253)
- Rapid play with sound at about 1.3x speed (P.277)

# Before Using One Seg

## Step to Watch One Seg

Example: When you watch One Seg for the first time

Step 1 Set channel list (P.242)

Save a channel list suitable for the area you use.

Step 2 Activate One Seg (P.243)

Extend the One Seg Antenna and activate One Seg.

■ One Seg Antenna

When you use the One Seg function, extend the One Seg Antenna as illustrated below. When the One Seg reception is poor, change the direction of the One Seg Antenna or the location of the FOMA terminal.

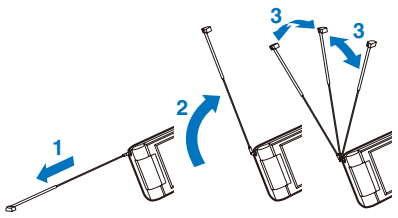
- Do not use force to change the direction of the One Seg Antenna.

Using the One Seg Antenna

**1 Pull out the One Seg Antenna.**

**2 Raise the One Seg Antenna.**

**3 Change the direction.**






Continued

Putting the One Seg Antenna back

**1 Change the direction back.**

**2 Push the One Seg Antenna back while aligning the top of the One Seg Antenna with the counter part until it stops.**

- If you use force to put the antenna back without confirming the correct orientation, it may cause malfunction.




■ The display that appears when One Seg is used for the first time

When One Seg is activated for the first time, the display for confirming the notabilia of the service appears. When the FOMA terminal is in the TV style, switch to the Normal style, and then check the contents and press [■] (OK) (P.240).

■ Battery level

- If you try to activate One Seg with the battery level low, the screen for confirming whether to activate One Seg appears. If you select [Yes], One Seg is activated. When the battery level becomes low while watching One Seg, the screen for confirming whether to quit One Seg appears. When you select [Yes], One Seg is terminated.
- When the battery level becomes low, the screen informing that the battery level becomes low appears, "/"/"/" flashes while watching One Seg, and "/"/"/" flashes while recording a One Seg program.
- When the battery level becomes extremely low while watching or recording a One Seg program, One Seg is terminated. When you are recording a One Seg program, the video recorded up to this point is saved automatically.

■ When there is an incoming call, etc. while watching One Seg

- When receiving a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call while watching One Seg, you can answer the call by pausing video and sound. After the call is terminated, the screen for confirming whether to use Time shift play appears. When you select [Yes], Time shift play is started.
- When receiving i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F while watching One Seg, the incoming mail display appears. The display restores when mail reception is completed. (When the Mail telop disp set is set to [OFF] and Dur multi task disp is set to [Prefer operat.])
- When the Alarm, Schedule alarm, or Booking alarm time comes while watching One Seg, the alarm is displayed. The display restores when you stop the Alarm or Schedule alarm and press [CLR] or [⏎] in the display informing the release of the alarm. When you stop the Booking alarm, the screen for confirming whether to activate One Seg appears depending on the setting of the Cfm. activation (P.248) and you can activate it.

- When the UIM is not inserted, you cancel the subscription to DoCoMo, or you temporarily suspend using the FOMA service, you cannot watch One Seg.
- Even when you insert the UIM for which you subscribe to DoCoMo, you may not be able to activate One Seg if you repeatedly watch One Seg in the condition the FOMA terminal cannot communicate such as when the FOMA terminal is outside of the service area or in the Self mode. In that case, try to activate One Seg in the condition the FOMA terminal can communicate by moving into the FOMA service area.
- When you activate One Seg for the first time, activate it within the FOMA service area.
- Even if the data may be lost or changed as a result of malfunction, repair, or other handling of the FOMA terminal, under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the FOMA terminal. Furthermore, note that the saved information (such as One Seg recorded videos or still images, TV links, or information saved in the broadcast storage area) cannot be moved when you change your FOMA terminal or have it repaired.
- If you continue watching One Seg for a long period of time with the battery being charged, the life of the battery pack may become shorter.

# Setting Channels <Set channel list>

To use One Seg, you need to perform the channel setting and save the channel list beforehand. When you watch One Seg, select a channel list suitable for the current location. You can save up to 10 channel lists, 62 broadcast stations for each list.

## Saving a Broadcast Station to the Channel List Automatically <Auto channel set>

Broadcast stations that can be received are automatically searched and saved to a channel list.

- You need to set it within the Terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area.
- When you perform the Auto channel set, extend the One Seg Antenna fully.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [Set channel list] and press ■.**




When no channel list is saved
Follow step 3 to 4.

**2 Select a place to save to and press [i] (Create).**

The screen for creating a channel list appears.

**3 Select [Auto channel set] → [Yes] and press ■.**




Searching broadcast stations starts. The Channel scan result display appears when the search is completed.

To cancel searching broadcast stations
Press ✉ (Cancel) and select [Yes].

**4 Press ■ (OK), select [Yes], press ■, and enter a name of a channel list.**

Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.
The channel list is saved.

- When the multiple broadcast stations which have the same remote-control number are retrieved, the message to the effect that the remote-control number is doubled appears. Press ■ and select the current location you are in from the Select service area display. The channels in the area you select are preferentially assigned to remote-control numbers 1 to 12, and channels in the area you do not select are assigned to remote-control numbers 13 to 62 onward.
- It takes about 40 to 60 seconds to complete searching broadcast stations. However, the searching time varies and it may exceed 60 seconds depending on the number of broadcast stations or the condition of airwave.



Continued

## Saving a Broadcast Station into the Channel List Manually

You can save broadcast stations to a channel list by selecting a service area, prefecture, and area.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [Set channel list] and press ■.**

The Set channel list display appears.

When no channel list is saved

Follow step 3 to 5.

**2 Select a place to save to and press i (Create).**

The screen for creating a channel list appears.

**3 Select [Select Serv Area] and press ■.**




**4 Select a service area → a prefecture → an area and press ■.**

The screen for confirming the channel information of the selected service area appears.

**5 Press ■ (OK), select [Yes], and press ■.**

The channel list is saved.

● Depending on the area you use, you may not be able to save a broadcast station correctly even if you set the Select Serv Area. In this case, use the Auto channel set.

## Selecting a Channel List to be Used

You can select a channel list suitable for your current location. Also, you can edit the saved channel lists.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [Set channel list] and press ■.**

The Set channel list display appears.

To activate One Seg from the channel list

Move the cursor to a channel list, press ch (Ch. list), move the cursor to a broadcast station in the channel list, and press ■ (Watch).

To change the name of a channel list

Move the cursor to a channel list and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

To delete a channel list

Move the cursor to a channel list and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes].

- The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.

To reset the channel list

From the Function menu, select [Reset], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To display detailed information of a broadcast station

Move the cursor to a channel list, press ch (Ch. list), move to the cursor to a broadcast station in the channel list, and press i (Detail).

**2 Select a channel list and press ■.**

The channel list to be used is set.

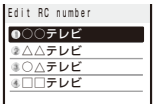
## Editing Remote-control Numbers

A remote-control number which can be used for selecting a station is already assigned to each broadcast station. Remote-control numbers can be changed.

**1 Select a channel list in the Set channel list display and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit RC number] and press ■.**




To delete a broadcast station

Move the cursor to a broadcast station and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes].

**3 Select a broadcast station and press ■.**

The remote-control number input screen appears.

**4 Enter a remote-control number.**

Enter a number within 01 to 62.
The remote-control number is changed.

When the remote-control number is already assigned to another broadcast station

Select [Yes]. The saved broadcast station is replaced with the new one.

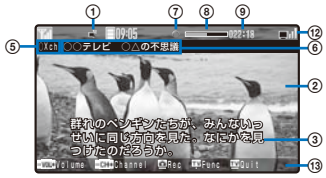
# Watching One Seg <Activate 1Seg>

## Using the Display for Watching One Seg

Normal style (Watching) Normal style (Recording)




TV style




① Display status
Watching One Seg Recording One Seg
② Video
③ Subtitle
④ Data broadcasting/displaying mail
- The display varies depending on the Mail disp set (P.256).

※ It is not displayed in the TV style.

⑤ Remote-control number
⑥ Name of the channel/program
⑦ Recording status
⑧ Recording progress bar
⑨ Estimated recordable time

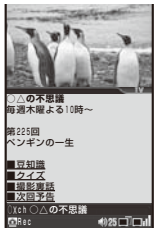
※ The recordable time changes according to the progress of recording. It may increase or suddenly decrease while recording, depending on the contents of the program to be recorded.

⑩ Volume
⑪ Operating mode
Video mode Data broadcasting mode
Video mode while displaying mail
Mail mode
⑫ Airwave reception level
(strong ⟷ weak) Outside of the broadcast service area
⑬ Guide display

## Watching One Seg in the Normal Style

You can watch One Seg in the Normal style.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [Activate 1Seg] and press ■.**




The channel which you watched previously is displayed.

- You can also activate One Seg by pressing TV for over a second in the stand-by display.

Operating method

Video mode

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| UP/DOWN channel select | Use ▶ (CH+) / ◀ (CH-). Select a station in order/ reverse order of the remote-control numbers. |
| One-touch channel select | Remote-control number<br>1 to 9 : 1 to 9<br>10 : ＊<br>11 : 0<br>12 : ＃ |
| Channel search | Use ▶ (CH+) / ◀ (CH-) for over a second. Search broadcast stations which can be received. |
| Volume adjustment | Use ▲ (ボリューム+) / ▼ (ボリューム−). The volume can be adjusted in 32 levels: 0 to 31. |
| Switch between video and data broadcasting modes | Press (TV/DATA) (P.251). |
| Start the program guide i-αppli | Press (EPG). |
| Time shift | Press (T.shft). Pause watching a program and play it back in time-shift mode (P.253). |
| Record a still image | Press . |
| Record a video | Press for over a second. |
| Quit 1Seg | Press and select [Yes]. |

Data broadcasting mode

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Display the previous/ next page | Use ◀ / ▶ while using the data broadcasting site. |
| Switch the data broadcasting screen between half and full screens | Press (TV/DATA) for over a second. |

When no channel list is saved

The screen informing that no channel list is saved appears. Select how to save a channel and save one (P.242).

To display the program information

From the Function menu, select [Program info.]. When you press ▶, the details of the program is displayed. To display the information of the previous/next program, press (Previous) / (Next).

To set the 1Seg setting

From the Function menu, select [1Seg setting].

To compose mail containing program information

From the Function menu, select [Prog info mail].

- When you send the program information to the FOMA terminal which is compatible with the Media To function, the recipient can select it to activate One Seg.

To select a program when multiple services (programs) are broadcasted on the same channel

From the Function menu, select [Select service] → a program.

To save the broadcast station into a channel list while watching it

From the Function menu, select [Add channel].

## Watching One Seg in the TV Style

When you switch the FOMA terminal to the TV style, you can watch One Seg in the horizontal orientation.

- See “About the Style” (P.27) to switch the FOMA terminal to the TV style.
- The data broadcasting cannot be displayed in the TV style.

### 1 Switch to the TV style in stand-by status.

The Viewing Touch Key lights and it can be operated.

- You can set functions to be activated when switching to the TV style (P.328). When you set other functions to be activated, activate One Seg in the stand-by status and then switch to the TV style.




The channel which you watched previously is displayed.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| UP/DOWN channel select | Use ◄ ►. Select a station in order/reverse order of the remote-control numbers. |
| Channel search | Use ◄ ► for over a second. Search broadcast stations which can be received. |
| Volume adjustment | Use ▲ ▼. The volume can be adjusted in 32 levels: 0 to 31. |
| Record a still image | Press 📷. |
| Record a video | Press 📷 for over a second. |
| Display the Function menu | Press TV. |
| Quit 1Seg | Press TV for over a second and select [Yes]. |

To display the program information

From the Function menu, select [Program info.]. When you use ◄ ► (Chg.Info), the details of the program is displayed. To display the information of the previous/next program, use ▲ / ▼ (Back/Next).

- Depending on the receiving condition of airwave, sound interruption or video pause may occur, black-shaped noise may appear on the picture, or a dark display without video or data broadcasting may appear.
- Depending on the radio wave condition, videos and data broadcasting may not be displayed even if the status of the airwave reception level is other than the outside of the broadcast service area.
- When you activate One Seg while the Manner mode is set, the screen for confirming whether to output sound appears. When you select [Yes], you hear the sound.
- Colors of the guide display, etc. may change slightly while watching One Seg.
- The Viewing Touch Key is turned off about 15 seconds after it lights. Pat the Viewing Touch Key or press TV, 📷, or ⏻ to light it again.

# Setting While Watching One Seg

## Watching One Seg with Subtitles

You can display subtitles while watching a program.

- You can set it either in the Normal style or in the TV style.

Example: For the TV style

**1 Press TV (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

For the Normal style

From the Function menu, select [Caption disp set] → a type of subtitles.

**2 Use ◄ ► to select [Caption disp set] and press TV.**

The Caption disp set menu appears.

[Language1]:
The subtitle of Language 1 is displayed.

[Language2]:
The subtitle of Language 2 is displayed.

[OFF]:
The subtitle is not displayed.

**3 Use ◄ ► to select a type of subtitles and press TV.**

The subtitle is set.

- Whether subtitles are provided or not depends on the program.
- When no subtitle is provided on a program, the subtitle is not displayed regardless of the Caption disp set.

## Displaying the Guide Display All the Time

You can set whether to display the guide display, icon, etc. all the time in the TV style.

- You can set it only in the TV style.

**1 Press TV (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Use ◄ ► to select [Guide always on] and press TV.**

The Guide always on setting menu appears.

**3 Use ◄ ► to select [ON]/[OFF] and press TV.**

The Guide always on is set.

● When the guide display, icon, etc. are displayed, part of video may not be seen.

## Adjusting the Image Quality

You can set the image quality of the video portion.

- You can set it either in the Normal style or in the TV style.

Example: For the TV style

**1 Press TV (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

For the Normal style

From the Function menu, select [Image quality] → an image quality.

**2 Use ◄ ► to select [Image quality] and press TV.**

The Image quality menu appears.

[Normal]:
The standard image quality emphasized naturalness.

[Sharp]:
Sharply edged image quality.

[Dynam.]:
The clear image quality in which an edge and contrast of an image is emphasized.

**3 Use ◄ ► to select an image quality and press TV.**

The image quality is set.

## Setting to Adjust the Light Automatically

You can set whether to adjust automatically the display light brightness by the Brightness Sensor to adapt for the surrounding brightness while watching One Seg.

- You can set it either in the Normal style or in the TV style.

Example: For the TV style

**1 Press TV (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

For the Normal style

From the Function menu, select [Auto Disp light] → [ON]/[OFF].

**2 Use ◄ ► to select [Auto Disp light] and press TV.**

The Auto Disp light display appears.

[ON]:
Adjust the light automatically.

[OFF]:
Do not adjust the light automatically.

**3 Use ◄ ► to select [ON]/[OFF] and press TV.**

The Auto Disp light is set.

## Adjusting the Brightness of the Display

You can set the display light brightness when you watch One Seg.

- You can set it either in the Normal style or in the TV style.

Example: For the TV style

**1 Press TV (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

For the Normal style

From the Function menu, select [Display light] → brightness.

**2 Use ◄ ► to select [Display light] and press TV.**

The Display light menu appears.

**3 Use ◄ ► to select brightness and press TV.**

Select brightness from [1 to 5].

## Switching between the Primary/Secondary Sounds

You can switch the sound between the primary and secondary sounds.

- You can switch the sound only in the Normal style.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Switch sound] and press ●.**

The screen for selecting the Switch sound appears.

[Primary sound]:
The primary sound is played back.

[Secondary sound]:
The secondary sound is played back.

**3 Select a sound and press ●.**

The Switch sound is set.

● Even if the Switch sound is set to [Secondary sound], the primary sound is played back when there is no secondary sound for the program which you are watching.

## Switching between the Main/Sub Sounds

You can switch the sound between the main and sub sounds.

- You can switch the sound only in the Normal style.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Main/Sub] and press ●.**

The screen for selecting the Main/Sub appears.

[Main sound]:
The main sound is played back.

[Sub sound]:
The sub sound is played back.

[Main+Sub sound]:
The main sound is played back from the left speaker and the sub sound is played back from the right speaker.

**3 Select a sound and press ●.**

The Main/Sub is set.

● Even if the Main/Sub is set to [Sub sound]/[Main+Sub sound], the main sound is played back when there is no sub sound for the program which you are watching.

## Using the Sleep Timer

You can set to terminate One Seg automatically after the certain period of time.

- You can set it either in the Normal style or in the TV style.

Example: For the TV style

**1 Press TV (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

For the Normal style
From the Function menu, select [Sleep] → a time before terminating One Seg automatically.

**2 Use ◄► to select [Sleep] and press TV.**

The Sleep setting menu appears.

**3 Use ◄► to select a time before terminating One Seg automatically and press TV.**

Select from [OFF], [30min], [60min], [90min], and [120min].

# Using the Program Guide i-αppli <Program guide>

Using the program guide i-αppli, you can activate One Seg by selecting a program from within the program guide and set a timer for watching or recording a program.

- "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control) is preinstalled as the program guide i-αppli (P.211). For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [Program guide] and press ■.**



※The display shown is an image for explanatory purpose and may be different from the actual display. The TV program list is displayed according to your location.

The program guide i-αppli is started and "" or "" appears.

To start the program guide i-αppli while watching in the Normal style

Press (EPG). You can also start the program guide i-αppli when, from the Function menu, select [Program guide].

To change the software to be activated by the Program guide key

Move the cursor to the software in the list of i-αppli software and from the Function menu, select [Individual set] → [Program guide key] → [Yes]/[No] (P.209).

● When you select a program in the "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE TV Program List Remote Control) display, you can watch the selected program by pressing (TV起動).

1Seg

## Setting a Timer for Watching/Recording a One Seg Program <Booking list>

You can set a timer for watching or recording a One Seg program. When you set a timer for watching a program, the alarm sounds to notify you of the start of the program at the specified date/time. You can save up to 50 timer settings for watching and recording programs.

- When the channel list is not set, you cannot set a timer for watching or recording a program.
- The copy control signal (indicating that "the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)", "the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)", or "the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)") is placed in One Seg. They are set by each broadcast station.
- If the copy control signal of a program is one of "the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)" and "the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)", the program can be recorded.
- When the copy control signal changes to "the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)" while recording a program, the recording stops. Video data recorded up to that point is saved.
- When you set a microSD memory card as a place to save a recorded video, insert a microSD memory card beforehand.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [Booking list] and press ■.**




The Res. data list display appears.

To delete a timer for watching/recording a program

Move the cursor to a timer and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all timers, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To edit a timer for watching/recording a program

Move the cursor to a timer and press (Edit).

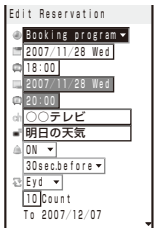
To display the detailed information of a timer for watching/recording a program

Move the cursor to a timer and press ■.

**2 Press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Create] and press ■.**



## 4 Save each item.

○: Allowed to be saved －: Not allowed to be saved

| Icon | Setting data | Booking program | Timer recording |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Select [Booking program] (Blue)/ [Timer recording] (Pink). | ○ | ○ |
| | Enter a starting date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31. | ○ | ○ |
| | Enter a starting time in 24-hour format. | ○ | ○ |
| | Enter an ending date from the starting date to 2050/12/31. | － | ○ |
| | Enter an ending time in 24-hour format. | － | ○ |
| | Select a channel. | ○ | ○ |
| | Enter a program name within 48 full-width or 96 half-width characters. | ○ | ○ |
| | Select [ON]/[OFF] of the alarm.<br>• When you set to [ON], you can select how many minutes before the starting time of timer the alarm should sound. If you want to sound the alarm at the same time as the starting time, select [00sec.before]. | ○ | － |
| | Select the repeat type.<br>[OFF]:<br>Do not repeat the timer.<br>[Eyd]:<br>Repeat the timer every day.<br>[Day]:<br>Repeat the timer on the same day of the week.<br>[Month]:<br>Repeat the timer every month on the same day.<br>• When the repeat type is set to other than [OFF], enter the repeat count within 01 to 99 times. | ○ | ○ |
| | Cfm. activation<br>Select whether to display the Cfm. activation display when the Booking alarm is activated.<br>[ON]:<br>Display the Cfm. activation display.<br>[OFF]:<br>Do not display the Cfm. activation display.<br>• When the alarm is set to [OFF], it cannot be set. | ○ | － |
| | Dur multitask Rec<br>Select whether to display the screen for confirming to start recording when the time to start recording comes while another function which cannot be activated at the same time is running.<br>[Pref. recording]:<br>Terminate the executed function automatically and start recording.<br>[Prefer operat.]:<br>Display the screen for confirming whether to terminate the executed function. When you select [Yes], terminate the executed function and start recording. When you select [No], a timer for recording a program is canceled. | － | ○ |
| | Output of Rec<br>Select [Data Box]/[microSD] as a place to save a recorded video. | － | ○ |

**5 Press [i] (Complete).**

A timer for watching/recording a program is saved.

- To play back a recorded video, see “Displaying/Playing Back One Seg” (P.277).

To set a timer for recording a program

The display for confirming the notabilia of the service appears. To save a timer for recording a program, confirm the contents and select [Yes]. If you do not want to display the confirmation display next time, select [Yes,from then on]. The confirmation display no longer appears.

- To restore the display for confirming the notabilia of the service, perform the Rset permission set (P.256).

- You can also set a timer for watching/recording a program using a program information provided by the program guide i-αppli, site, mail, etc.
- If the Alarm, Schedule alarm, and Booking alarm are set to start at the same time, the following priority is applied.
  1. Schedule alarm
  2. Booking alarm
  3. Alarm
- If there is a timer that is set to start at the same time as the new timer for recording a program, the confirmation screen appears. If you select [Yes], the previously saved timer for recording a program is overwritten by the new one.
- When the ending or starting date and time set for the previously saved timer for recording a program is the same as the starting or ending date and time set for the newly saved one respectively, the confirmation screen appears. If you select [Yes], the preceding timer terminates slightly earlier than the specified time.
- If the Booking list is updated because of the saved reservation being started while editing a reservation or other reason, the reservation may not be saved successfully.
- If the repeat type of the schedule set for the 31st is set to [Month], the schedule is set for the last day of the month for months with less than 31 days.

## At the Booking Alarm Time

The alarm tone sounds for about 30 seconds with the indicator flashing.




To stop the alarm tone

Press any key. When you stop the alarm tone, the display informing the release of the alarm appears. To turn off the display, press [■] (OK) or [CLR].

When you do not stop the alarm tone

The display informing the release of the alarm appears. To turn off the display, press [■] (OK) or [CLR].

When the Cfm. activation is set to [ON]

After you turn off the display informing the release of the alarm, the Cfm. activation display appears. Select [Yes] to activate One Seg.

When the Cfm. activation is set to [OFF]

Press [TV] for over a second to activate One Seg.

- If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks to the alarm tone, a movie in the i-motion is displayed.
- If the alarm time comes during a voice/videophone call or PushTalk communication, the default alarm tone sounds and default alarm image is displayed. The vibrator does not operate.
- The Booking alarm does not operate in the following cases.
  - When the FOMA terminal is powered off
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the Personal data lock is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - While updating the software

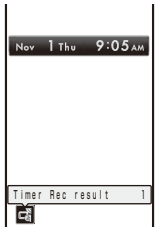
● If the alarm time comes in the following cases, the alarm may operate when the status changes to during a call or stand-by.
- While placing/receiving a voice/videophone call or originating/receiving a PushTalk call
- During packet communication
- During the infrared communication/while the infrared remote control is being used
- During the iC communication
- During data communication or while reading/writing data from/into a microSD memory card on a PC with the FOMA terminal connected using the USB cable
- While recording a still image/movie
- While the Schedule alarm is sounding
- Beep while receiving Area Mail, while sounding Area Mail ring tone, or displaying Area Mail

● If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Booking alarm may not operate correctly.

## At the Timer Recording Starting Time

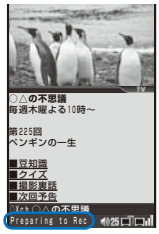
A recording is automatically started. When the timer for recording a program starts while One Seg is not activated, "" appears. After the recording is completed, the notification icon "" (Timer Rec result) appears in the stand-by display.

- Extend the One Seg Antenna fully while recording a program.




To check the reservation result

Press [■] (Link) in the stand-by display and select "".




When the timer recording starting time comes while watching One Seg

The Preparing to Rec display appears. To cancel recording, press [📷] and select [Yes].

To cancel the recording during timer recording

Press [📷] while recording and select [Yes].

● Even if the Dur multitask Rec is set to [Prefer recording], the timer for recording a program may be canceled in a case such as when there are too many active functions or there is not enough memory. Also, while transferring data to the microSD memory card, the recording does not start.

● If the Dur multitask Rec is set to [Prefer operat.] and when functions that cannot be run simultaneously are active, the screen for confirming whether to start the timer recording appears. When you select [Yes], the timer recording starts.
However, regardless of selecting [Yes] on the confirmation screen, the timer for recording a program may not start in a case such as when there are too many active functions or there is not enough memory.

● Even if the FOMA terminal is outside of the broadcast service area when the timer recording starting time comes, the timer recording works effectively.
However, the timer recording fails if the FOMA terminal is outside of the broadcast service area all the time from the beginning to the end of the scheduled recording time. The message "Could not receive broadcast wave" appears in the Result detail display (P.251).

● Timer recording does not start in the following cases.
- When the FOMA terminal is powered off
- When the UIM is not inserted
- While the Lock all is set
- While the Personal data lock is set
- While the Omakase Lock is set
- During packet communication
- During 64K data communication
- During the infrared communication
- During the iC communication
- While using the Data Security Service
- While updating the software

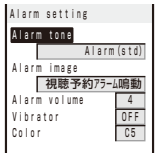
## Setting the Operation for the Booking Alarm

You can set the detailed operation for the Booking alarm.

### 1 Press ✉ (Func) in the Res. data list display.

The Function menu appears.

### 2 Select [Booking ALM set] and press ■.




### 3 Select an alarm tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box at [Alarm tone].

- You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| MUSIC※ | AAC-LC/HE-AAC | Max. 5M bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA(640×480)] |
| Melody | SMF/MFi | Max. 350K bytes | — |

※ Some files may not be set.

When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC]
The screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the whole track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone.

To mute the alarm tone
Select [Silent].

To check the alarm tone
Move the cursor to the alarm tone and press ｸﾘｱ (Play).

### 4 Select an image from My picture/i-motion of the Data Box at [Alarm image].

- You can set the following files.

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| My picture | GIF/JPEG | Max. 250K bytes | Max. [Stand-by (480×864)], Max. W480×H288 for GIF animation |
| | SWF | Max. 100K bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA(640×480)] |

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

To check the alarm image
Move the cursor to the alarm image and press ｸﾘｱ (Play).

### 5 Set the volume at [Alarm volume].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 6].

To set the volume to [OFF]
Press ▼ at level 1.

### 6 Select a vibration type at [Vibrator].

[Pattern1]:
Set short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2]:
Set long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody]:
Vibrates in accordance with the alarm tone. If you have set the alarm tone to [Silent] or to a melody that cannot be synchronized with the vibrator operation, the vibrator vibrates using [Pattern1].

[OFF]:
Do not set the vibrator.

To check the vibration
Move the cursor to the pattern and press [i] (Confirm).

**7 Select an indicator color at [Color].**

Select from 12 indicator colors or [C13:ALL] (indicator flashes in 12 colors in sequence).
When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

**8 Press [i] (Complete).**

The operation for the Booking alarm is set.

● When you set an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® for the alarm tone or set an i-motion for the alarm image, the settings may be changed in some cases.

## Checking the Reservation Result

Up to 30 results of Timer recording can be saved.

**1 Press [ch] (Res.Rslt) in the Res. data list display.**




To delete a reservation result
Move the cursor to a reservation result and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all reservation results, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a reservation result and press [■].**




## Using Data Broadcasting

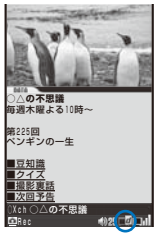
One Seg allows you to use the data broadcasting in addition to the video and sound broadcasting. Various kinds of information including still images and movies, such as sites linked with programs are available.

- You cannot display the data broadcasting in the TV style.
- During the data broadcasting mode, you cannot select a broadcast station.

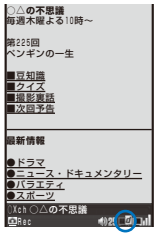
**1 Press [i] (TV/DATA) while watching One Seg.**

"" appears and the mode is switched to the data broadcasting mode.

Half-screen display




Full-screen display




To go back to the video mode
Press [i] (TV/DATA). Every time you press [i], the mode is switched between the video and data broadcasting modes.

To switch the data broadcasting screen between half and full screens
Press [i] (TV/DATA) for over a second during the data broadcasting mode. Every time you press [i] for over a second, the screen is switched between half and full screens.

To display the certificate
From the Function menu, select [Certificates].

To reload the data broadcasting site

From the Function menu, select [Reload].

To go back to the data broadcasting from the data broadcasting site

From the Function menu, select [Back to data BC.].

**2 Select an item and press ■.**

- When you access an i-mode site from the data broadcasting, the site is displayed in full-screen and the video and sound of One Seg are not output.
- If you select [Yes] on the screen for confirming whether to connect to i-mode that appears while using data broadcasting or data broadcasting site, the FOMA terminal connects to i-mode. If you select [Yes,from then on], the confirmation screen no longer appears. The packet communication charge may be required because of contents of data broadcasting or data broadcasting site being updated automatically. To display the confirmation screen again, perform the Rset permission set (P.256).
- The packet communication performed when connecting to a data broadcasting site is covered by the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai Full service.
- For the operation while the site is displayed, follow the same steps as in "Using Sites" (P.162). You cannot enter pictographs in the text box while in a data broadcasting or data broadcasting site.



## Using Displayed Information

Some data broadcasting or data broadcasting sites allow you to use displayed information to activate Phone To, Mail To, or i-αppli To function, download ToruCa cards, and save entries in the Phonebook or Schedule.

# Using TVlink <TVlink>

Depending on the data broadcasting or data broadcasting sites, you can save a URL or memo information as a TV link. Once the frequently used site or memo information is saved as a TV link, you can display a desired site or memo information directly.

## Saving as a TV link

- You can save up to 50 TV links.

**1 Select an item that can be saved as a TV link and press ■.**

**2 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The TV link is saved.

## Displaying the Saved TV link

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [TVlink] and press ■.**




- The following icons show the type of TV link

| | |
|---|---|
| | Data broadcasting site |
| | i-mode site |
| | Memo information |
| | TV link with expiration date set |

To display the detailed information of a TV link

Move the cursor to a TV link and press [i] (Detail).

To delete a TV link

Move the cursor to a TV link and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all TV links, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a TV link and press ■.**

The selected TV link is displayed.

When the screen for confirming whether to connect to the i-mode appears

Select [Yes].

# Recording One Seg While Watching <Record One Seg>

You can save a program as a video and a scene of a program as a still image while watching One Seg.

- The copy control signal (indicating that “the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)”, “the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)”, or “the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)”) is placed in One Seg. They are set by each broadcast station.
- If the copy control signal of a program is one of “the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)” and “the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)”, the program can be recorded.
- When the copy control signal changes to “the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)” while recording a program, the recording stops. Video data recorded up to that point is saved.

## Recording a Video

A recorded video is saved in either the [Video] folder in 1Seg of the Data Box or in 1Seg of a microSD memory card.

### ■ Estimated number and recording time of videos you can record

| Place to save to | Estimated max. number*1 | Estimated max. recording time*2 |
|---|---|---|
| Data Box | 99 items | About 30 minutes |
| microSD memory card (2GB) | 99 items | About 10 hours 43 minutes |

*1 Depending on the data size, the number of videos you can save may decrease.

*2 The recording times are estimated values. They vary depending on the contents of a program to be recorded.

- To set a place to save a recording video, see “Setting a Place to Save a Recorded Video to” (P.255).

**1 Press [📷] for over a second while watching One Seg.**

The display is switched to the Preparing to Rec display. After time for preparation, recording starts and “ ● ” appears.

**2 To stop recording, press [📷], select [Yes], and press [■].**

The recording is stopped and a video is saved.

- To play back a saved video, see “Displaying/Playing Back One Seg” (P.277).

For the TV style

Press [📷], select [Yes], and press [TV].

- A file name of a recorded video appears in the format of the recorded year, month, date, hour, and minute. For example, when a video is recorded at November 1, 2007, 9:05, it appears as “200711010905NNN”. A number “000 to 999” is assigned to “NNN”.
- You cannot set a recorded video for the stand-by display, ring tone, incoming image, etc.
- When the Rec T.shift now/Play T.shift now is activated, you cannot start recording a program.
- You cannot start recording a video while the FOMA terminal is outside of the broadcast service area.
- Recorded video can only be moved from the Data Box to the microSD memory card. A video cannot be moved/copied from the microSD memory card to the Data Box.
- If the free space of the storage area is being decreased during recording, the message informing that there is not enough space appears and the recording ends. The video recorded up to this point is saved.

## Recording a Still Image

You can save up to 50 recorded still images.

**1 Press [📷] while watching One Seg.**

A still image is recorded and saved automatically.

- A One Seg recorded still image cannot be saved in the microSD memory card.
- To play back a saved still image, see “Displaying/Playing Back One Seg” (P.277).



Continued

- Subtitles and data broadcasting cannot be recorded as a still image.
- A file name of a recorded still image appears in the format of the recorded year, month, date, hour, and minute. For example, when a still image is recorded at November 1, 2007, 9:05, it appears as "200711010905NNN". A number "000 to 999" is assigned to "NNN".
- You cannot set a recorded still image for the stand-by display, incoming image, etc.
- You cannot record a still image while the Rec T.shift is in progress, the FOMA terminal is outside of the broadcast service area, or video playback is in progress.
- The number of images that can be saved may decrease depending on the size of still images.

## Starting Time Shift Play While Watching <Time shift>

You can play back a time-delayed copy of a program after pausing watching One Seg.

- While playing back, a video and sound are played back at about 1.3× speed. When the time shift play is ended, the original broadcasting program is returned.
- When you start the Time shift recording while you are talking on the phone, extend the One Seg Antenna fully.
- You can set it either in the Normal style or in the TV style.

Example: For the TV style

**1 Press [TV] (Func) while watching One Seg.**

The Function menu appears.

For the Normal style

Press [■] (T.shft) and select [Yes]. To play back, press [■] (Play).

**2 Use [◄ ►] to select [Time shift] and press [TV].**

**3 Use [◄ ►] to select [Start] and press [TV].**

**4 Use [◄ ►] to select [Yes] and press [TV].**

The Time shift recording is started and the Rec T.shift now display appears.

To cancel the Time shift recording

From the Function menu, select [Time shift] → [Quit] → [Yes].

To cancel the Time shift recording in the Normal style

Press [CLR] and select [Yes].

**5 Press [TV] (Func) to play back.**

The Function menu appears.

**6 Use [◄ ►] to select [Time shift] and press [TV].**

**7 Use [◄ ►] to select [Play] and press [TV].**

The Time shift play is started.

To quit the Time shift play

From the Function menu, select [Time shift] → [Quit] → [Yes].

To quit the Time shift play in the Normal style

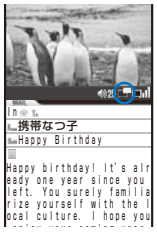
Press [■] (Quit) and select [Yes].

- When there is an incoming voice/videophone or PushTalk call while watching One Seg, the Time shift recording is automatically started. After the call is disconnected, the screen for confirming whether to play back a program appears. Select [Yes] to start the Time shift play.
- The recording time of video you can record using the Time shift recording is up to about 90 seconds. When 90 seconds are past, the older part of the video is overwritten by the newer one. Every latest 90 seconds of video is maintained.
- When the Time shift recording is too short, the Time shift play may not start, or it may stop immediately to return to the original broadcasting program.
- You cannot start the Time shift recording when the FOMA terminal is outside of the broadcast service area. However, if the FOMA terminal becomes outside of the broadcast service area while the Time shift recording is in progress, the recording continues.
- Regardless of whether the data broadcasting is displayed in half-/full-screen, you cannot start the Time shift recording during the data broadcasting mode.

# Receiving Mail While Watching One Seg

While watching One Seg, you can read received mail or reply to the mail. The display style of the received mail varies depending on the Mail disp set. The default setting is set to [OFF] (P.256).

## ■ When the Mail disp set is set to [Display mail]




Multi-window

"■" appears in the Video mode and "■" appears in the Mail mode.

When you receive mail in the Normal style, the screen for confirming whether to display received mail appears. Select [Yes] to display the contents of the mail and "■" appears.

### To reply mail/SMS using the Quote function

Press [Quote] (Quote). The Edit mail display or Edit SMS display appears.

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.179, step 3 to 5) or "Compose and send SMS" (P.202, step 3 to 4).

### To switch to the Video mode

Press [TV/Mail] (TV/Mail). Every time you press [TV/Mail] (TV/Mail), the mode is changed between Video and Mail modes.

### To end the mail display

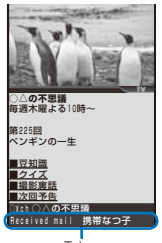
Press [QuitMail] (QuitMail).

- Mail cannot be displayed in the TV style but the Telop text is displayed.
- Mail cannot be displayed when you receive it from the sender who is saved as Secret. To display mail, set the Secret display to [ON].
- Mail cannot be displayed when it is sent from a sender who is not saved in the Phonebook.
- If you receive several mails continuously, the last received mail is displayed.
- When a message appears in the Mail mode, the message is not displayed completely and you may not be able to perform an operation. Press [TV/Mail] (TV/Mail) to switch to the Video mode, the message appears correctly, and then you can perform the operation.

## ■ When the Mail disp set is set to [Display telop]

When you receive mail, the Telop text is displayed. When you receive i-mode mail from the sender who is saved in the Phonebook, the name of the sender and subject are added to the Telop text. When SMS is sent from the sender who is saved in the Phonebook, the name of the sender and "SMS" are added.

For the Normal style




Telop

For the TV style



● When you receive mail from a sender who is saved as Secret, the name of the sender is not displayed. To display a name, set the Secret display to [ON].
● When the mail is being saved in the folder for which the Mail security is set, the name and subject are not displayed.
● When the Public mode (Drive mode) is set, the Telop text is not displayed.
● Mail ring tone, vibrator, and incoming indicator are not operated.
● If you receive several mails or messages continuously, the information of the last received mail or message is displayed in the Telop text.

## Various Settings for One Seg <1Seg setting>

You can set functions regarding One Seg, reset the settings, etc.

### Deleting the Broadcast Storage Area <Delete storage area>

You can delete information stored in the broadcast storage area.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [1Seg setting] → [Delete storage area] and press ■.**

The BC group list display appears.

To delete data by each affiliated channel group

Move the cursor to an affiliated channel group and from the Function menu, select [Delete aff. Data] → [Yes]. To delete data of all affiliated channel groups, from the Function menu, select [Del all aff.data], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select an affiliated channel group and press ■.**

The list of the broadcast stations in the affiliated channel group is displayed.

**3 Select a broadcast station and press i (Delete).**

**4 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

Data of the selected broadcast station is deleted.

### Setting Not to Display Images of Data Broadcasting Site <Display img>

You can set whether to display images provided by data broadcasting sites.

- This setting is synchronized with that of the Display img of i-mode (P.170).

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [1Seg setting] → [Display img] and press ■.**

**2 Select [ON]/[OFF].**

The Display img is set.

When set to [OFF], "🔍" is displayed instead of images.

● Even if the Display img is set to [ON], some images may not be displayed correctly.

### Setting Not to Hear Sound Effect of Data Broadcasting Site <Sound effect>

You can set whether to hear sound effect provided by data broadcasting/data broadcasting sites.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [1Seg setting] → [Sound effect] and press ■.**

**2 Select [ON]/[OFF].**

The Sound effect is set.

● The volume of the Sound effect follows that set for watching One Seg.

## Setting a Place to Save a Recorded Video to <Output of Rec>

You can set a place to save a recorded video.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [1Seg setting] → [Output of Rec] and press ■.**

The Save to display appears.

[Data Box]:
A video is saved in the [Video] folder of 1Seg of the Data Box.

[microSD]:
A video is saved in 1Seg of the microSD memory card.

**2 Select a place to save to and press ■.**

The Output of Rec is set.

● When you set the Output of Rec while recording a video, the setting is effective from the next recording.

## Setting the Operation for Incoming Mail While Watching One Seg <Mail disp set>

You can set whether to display contents of the received mail or telop when you receive mail while watching One Seg.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [1Seg setting] → [Mail disp set] and press ■.**

[Display mail]:
Display the screen for confirming whether to display the contents of mail when you receive mail.

[Display telop]:
Display the Telop text.

[OFF]:
Do not display anything.

When you watch in the TV style
In the watching display, from the Function menu, select [Mail disp set] → [Mail]/[Telop]/[OFF].

**2 Select an operation which is performed when you receive mail while watching.**

The Mail disp set is set.

● Even if the Mail disp set is set to [Display mail], while watching One Seg in the TV style or when receiving mail from the sender who is not saved in the Phonebook, the mail is not displayed but the Telop text is displayed.

## Displaying a User's Confirmation Screen for Data Broadcasting Site <Rset permission set>

If you select [Yes,from then on] on the screen for confirming whether to connect to i-mode, which appears when using data broadcasting or data broadcasting sites, the confirmation screen no longer appears. To display the confirmation screen again, perform the Rset permission set.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [1Seg setting] → [Rset permission set] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to perform the Rset permission set appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The Rset permission set is reset.

## Resetting the One Seg Settings to the Default Settings <Reset 1Seg set>

You can reset the settings of the functions regarding the One Seg video and sound to the default settings. The items that can be reset are as follows.

| Item | | Default setting |
|---|---|---|
| Items set from the Function menu while watching/ playing back a program | Caption disp set | OFF |
| | Guide always on | ON |
| | Image quality | Normal |
| | Display light | 3 |
| | Auto Disp light | ON |
| | Switch sound | Primary sound |
| | Main/Sub | Main sound |
| | Auto off setting | OFF |
| Items set from the 1Seg menu | Display img | ON |
| | Sound effect | ON |
| | Output of Rec | Data Box |
| | Mail disp set | OFF |
| | Booking ALM set | Alarm tone: Alarm(std), Alarm image: 視聴予約アラーム鳴動中, Alarm volume: 4, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5:Color5 |

- The broadcast storage area and channel list are not reset.
- By performing the Reset 1Seg set, the Rset permission set is also performed simultaneously.

**1 From the Menu, select [1 Seg] → [1Seg setting] → [Reset 1Seg set] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to reset the One Seg settings appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The One Seg settings are reset.

# Full Browser

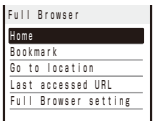
Displaying a Website Designed for PC ..... 280
Key Operations While Viewing a Website ..... 280
Managing a Bookmark..... 285
Setting the Full Browser Functions..... 286

# Displaying a Website Designed for PC

You can view websites designed for PC on the FOMA terminal using Full Browser.

- Some websites may not be displayed at all or displayed incorrectly.
- Note that the communication charge could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data such as viewing websites that contain a lot of images or downloading files. For details on the packet communication charge, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".

**1 Press (i-mode) in the stand-by display, select [Full Browser], and press .**




The Full Browser menu appears.

**2 Select [Go to location] → [Enter URL] and press .**

The Enter URL display appears.

To view the website saved as the Home page
Select [Home].

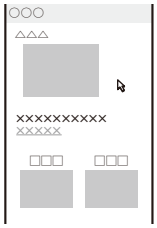
To view a website from a bookmark
Select [Bookmark] → a folder → a bookmark.

To view the website accessed last
Select [Last accessed URL] and press (Cnct).

**3 Press (Edit) and enter the URL.**

Enter the URL including "http://" within 512 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

**4 Press (Cnct).**




The website is displayed.

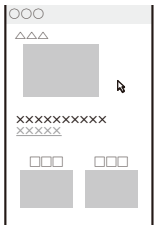
- When the Access setting is set to [No], the screen for confirming whether to use Full Browser appears. If you select [Yes] and [OK], the Access setting is changed and the website is displayed (P.288).

- It may take time to display a website depending on a website.
- Full Browser does not support the following functions.
  - Displaying a Flash movie
  - Plug-in
  - Playing back a melody or music data
  - Phone To
  - Displaying PDF data
- Some websites may communicate automatically.

# Key Operations While Viewing a Website

You can operate Full Browser both in vertical and horizontal views.
The following key operations can be performed while viewing a website.

## Operating in Vertical View



Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Move the pointer※ | Press ▲▼◀▶. |
| Zoom out | Press 1. |
| Scroll to the upper page | Press 2. |
| Zoom in | Press 3. |
| Scroll to the left page | Press 4.<br>It can be operated only in the PC mode. |
| Display the PagePilot display (Full page display) | Press 5. |
| Scroll to the right page | Press 6.<br>It can be operated only in the PC mode. |
| Display the previous page | Press 7 or (History). |
| Scroll to the lower page | Press 8. |
| Display the next page | Press 9. |
| Display the list of bookmarks | Press 0. |
| Switch to the left window | While displaying multiple windows, press ✱. |
| Switch to the right window | While displaying multiple windows, press #. |

※ The movement speed of the pointer can be changed (P.287).

To change the function assigned to a key

From the Function menu, select [Short cut], select a key, press (Edit), select a function to be assigned to the key, and press (Complete).

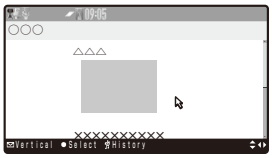
To restore the default settings, press (Reset) in the Short cut list display and select [Yes].

● You can scroll pages using the JOG but you cannot use the JOG to operate the pointer in a page such as selecting items. To operate the pointer, use the 4-way keys.

## Operating in Horizontal View

You can operate the FOMA terminal held horizontally, tilted 90 degrees from vertical.

**1 Press (Func) in the Full Browser display, select [Horizontal mode], and press .**



A website is displayed in horizontal view.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Move the pointer | Press ▲▼◀▶. |
| Switch the display to the vertical view | Press (Vertical). |
| View the previous page | Press (History). |
| OK | Press . |

● If you press (Vertical) while viewing a website in horizontal view, the display may not be switched to the vertical view immediately in a case such as when the PagePilot display is active. To switch to the vertical view, return to the normal page viewing display.

● Setting/canceling the full-screen display can be performed only in vertical view (P.284).

## Function Menus While Viewing a Website

While viewing a website, press (Func) to display the Function menu, and from the Function menu, the following operations can be performed.

- Operations from the Function menu are not available in horizontal view. Switch to the vertical view before using the Function menu.
- Some functions cannot be activated while loading a page.



Continued

| Item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Display the previous page | Select [Previous page]. |
| Display the next page | Select [Next page]. |
| Reload a website | Select [Reload]. |
| Save a website in the Bookmark | Select [Add bookmark] → [Complete] → a folder. |
| Connect to another site | Select [Bookmark] → a folder → a bookmark. |
| Use a history※ | Select [History]. |
| Display a website | Select [Go to location] (P.280, 283). |
| Save a website as the Home page | Select [Set as Home URL] → [Yes]. |
| Display the website saved as Home | Select [Home]. |
| Display in horizontal view | Select [Horizontal mode]. |
| Display in full-screen view | Select [Full scrn/normal]. |
| Save an image | Select [Acquire image] → [Save]/[Save&Setting] → an image. |
| Display multiple windows | Select [Window] (P.283). |
| Display the Flame selection display | Select [All frames] (P.283). |
| Search a character string in a page | Select [Search] (P.285). |
| Send a URL by mail | Select [Compose message] (P.207). |
| Display a website correctly | Select [Word translate].<br>• Sequentially convert the character codes and display the site again. |
| Retry to play back an animation | Select [Retry]. |
| Display a title of a website | Select [Title]. |
| Display a website URL | Select [URL].<br>• To copy the URL, press [i] (Copy). |
| Display a certificate | Select [Certificates] (P.284). |
| Set Full Browser | Select [Full browser set] (P.286). |
| Display a function assigned to a key | Select [Short cut] (P.281). |

※ If there is not enough memory, the image which is different from the one displayed in the shrinking display may appear.

## Action Menu While Viewing a Website

While viewing a website, press [i] (Action) to display the Action menu, and from the Action menu, the following operations can be performed.

- Operations from the Action menu are not available in horizontal view. Switch to the vertical view before using the Action menu.
- The Action menu which can be actually performed varies depending on a displayed website or position of the pointer.

| Item | Operating method |
|---|---|
| Display a link in a new window | Select [Open New Window] (P.283). |
| Display a linked URL | Select [Display Link URL] (P.283). |
| Download and save an image | Select [Save image] (P.285). |
| Save an image and set it as the stand-by display | Select [Save image&set]. |
| Zoom in | Select [Zoom in]. |
| Zoom out | Select [Zoom out]. |
| Select a portion of an entire page to display | Select [PagePilot] (P.284). |
| Select an area or grab a display to move | Select [Drag] (P.284). |
| Copy a text | Select [Text copy] (P.284). |
| Paste a text | Select [Text paste] (P.284). |

## Displaying Using the URL History

Up to 50 websites that have been displayed by entering their URLs are saved in the URL history. The sites can be directly accessed from the URL history.

- If a total of 50 URLs is saved in the URL history, the URL is overwritten from the oldest.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Go to location] → [URL history] and press ■.**

The URL history display appears.

To display a URL

Move the cursor to a URL history and from the Function menu, select [URL]. When you press ■ (Cnct), it is connected to its website.

To send a URL history by mail

Move the cursor to a URL history and from the Function menu, select [Compose message].

- Follow the same steps as in "Compose and send mail" (P.207, step 2 to 5).

To delete a URL history

Move the cursor to a URL history and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several URLs, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], select URLs, press ▮ (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all URLs, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a URL history and press ■ (Cnct).**

The website of the selected URL history is connected.

## Displaying Websites in the Multiple Windows

You can view several websites by switching windows.

- Up to five windows can be displayed. However, you may not be able to display the maximum number of windows depending on displaying websites.

Example: Displaying the Home page in the new window

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the Full Browser display, select [Window], and press ■.**

To display a link in the new window

Move the cursor to a link in the Full Browser display, press ▮ (Action), and select [Open New Window].

To display a URL of a link

Move the cursor to a link in the Full Browser display, press ▮ (Action), and select [Display Link URL].

**2 Select [Open New Window] and press ■.**

To display a website in the back window

Select [Open Back Window].

To close the window

Select [Close Window] → [OK].

To change the window

Select [Change Window] → a window being switched.

**3 Select [Home].**

The Home is displayed in the new window.

To display a website from a bookmark

Select [Bookmark] → a folder → a bookmark.

To display a website by entering a URL

Select [Go to location] → [Enter URL], press ▮ (Edit), enter a URL, and press ■ (Cnct).

To display a website from a URL history

Select [Go to location] → [URL history] → a URL.

## Displaying a Frame Page

You can display a website consisted of multiple frames. Select a frame from the frame selection display to display a page.

**1 Use ▲ ▼ to select a frame in the frame selection display and press ■.**

The selected frame is displayed.

To go back to the frame selection display

From the Function menu, select [All frames].

## Changing the Display

You can set whether to display the guide display in the display.

**1 Press [Func] (Func) in the Full Browser display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Full scrn/normal] and press [●].**

The Full scrn/normal is set.

## Displaying a SSL-/TLS-Compatible Page

You can display a SSL-/TLS-compatible page whose URL begins with "https://" using Full Browser.

- SSL/TLS is a method to perform data communication safely using the authentication/cryptograph technology.




When you display a SSL-/TLS-compatible page, the screen above appears. Once the SSL-/TLS-compatible page is displayed, "🔒" appears.

To display a certificate

From the Function menu, select [Certificates] → a certificate.

## Selecting a Portion to be Displayed from the Entire Page

**1 Press [i] (Action) in the Full Browser display, select [PagePilot], and press [●].**

The entire page is displayed.

**2 Use [▲][▼]/[◀][▶] to select a portion to be displayed and press [●].**

The selected portion is displayed.

● If there is not enough memory, the image which is different from the one displayed in the shrinking display may appear.

## Dragging

You can select an area or move a display using the dragging operation in the Full Browser display.

- Some sites may not allow you to drag.

Example: Selecting an area

**1 Press [i] (Action) in the Full Browser display, select [Drag], and press [●].**

The pointer changes from "↖" to "✋".

**2 Select the Start point and press [●].**

The pointer changes to "✋".

To move a display by dragging

Press [●] at the point to grab and use [▲][▼]/[◀][▶] to move the display.

**3 Use [▲][▼]/[◀][▶] to select an area and press [●].**

The area is selected and the pointer changes to "✋".

To quit the Drag

Press [CLR].

## Copying Text

**1 Press [i] (Action) in the Full Browser display, select [Text copy], and press [●].**

The pointer changes from "↖" to "I".

**2 Select the Start point and press [●].**

**3 Use [▲][▼]/[◀][▶] to select the End point and press [●].**

The text is copied.

To paste text

Press [i] (Action) in the textbox of the Full Browser display and select [Text paste].

## Searching a Character String in a Page

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the Full Browser display, select [Search], and press ■.**

**2 Enter a keyword to be searched at [Search text].**

Enter a keyword within 25 full-width or 50 half-width characters.

**3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Match full].**

**4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Case sensitivity].**

**5 Press ● (OK).**

The searched word is displayed in reverse video.

To display the previous/next search result

Press ✉ (Back)/ ● (Next).

## Uploading an Image

You can upload an image saved in the Data Box or microSD memory card to a website which allows you to upload an image.

- The way of uploading an image varies depending on a website.

**1 Select the "select" key in the Full Browser display and press ■.**

**2 Select an image in My picture of the Data Box or microSD memory card.**

- The following image can be uploaded.

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| My picture | GIF/JPEG | Max. 80K bytes※ | — |

※It is the size for one file. When containing several images or character strings, the maximum size of the total amount is 100K bytes.

## Saving an Image

You can save images downloaded from a website in the Data Box or microSD memory card.

- A GIF image, JPEG image, PNG image, or BMP image can be saved and the image size must be less than 1M bytes. PNG and BMP images can be saved in the microSD memory card only.
- You cannot save a GIF image exceeding [UXGA(1600×1200)] and a GIF animation exceeding [Stby(480×864)] in the Data Box. You may not be able to save some JPEG images in the Data Box as well.

**1 In the Full Browser display, move the pointer to an image which you want to save.**

**2 Press ● (Action), select [Save image], and press ■.**

The screen for selecting where to save appears.

[Data Box]:
Save an image in the Data Box. Select a folder to save to.

[microSD]:
Save an image in the microSD memory card.

**3 Select a place to save to and press ■.**

The image is saved in the selected place to save to.

# Managing a Bookmark

Up to 200 URLs can be saved as bookmarks of Full Browser.

- For information on functions operated at the folder list display or bookmark list display of Bookmark, see P.191 (a URL can be changed in Full Browser).
- A URL including "http://" of up to 512 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols can be saved as a bookmark.
- Bookmarks can be managed by up to 16 folders.
- A folder neme of a bookmark can be entered within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.
- If there is not enough memory, the image which is different from the one displayed in the shrinking display may appear.

## Editing a Bookmark

You can change the title of a bookmark or URL.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Bookmark] → a folder, press ■, select a bookmark, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit] and press ■.**

The display for editing a bookmark appears.

**3 Select [Title], press ■, and enter a title.**

Enter a title within 12 full-width or 24 half-width characters.

**4 Select [URL], press ■, and enter a URL.**

Enter the URL including "http://" within 512 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

**5 Press i (Complete).**

The edited contents are saved.

# Setting the Full Browser Functions

You can set the functions used for Full Browser.

- You can operate Full Browser from the Function menu while viewing a website, but some functions cannot be performed.

## Saving a Website as the Home Page

You can save a website as the Home page. "http://www.google.co.jp" is set as the Home URL at the time of purchase.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Home URL] and press ■.**

**2 Press i (Edit), enter a URL, and press ■ (OK).**

Enter the URL including "http://" within 512 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

## Setting Cookie

Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving information such as the user name, date and time you accessed the website, and number of accesses in the FOMA terminal when you accessed a website. When you access the same website next time, the information is used.

You can set whether to send/receive Cookie when connecting to a website.

- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie.
- Some websites may not be displayed correctly or may be unable to use when Cookie is not set.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Cookie setting] and press ■.**

[Valid]:
Cookie is always valid.

[Notify-sending]:
Select whether to send Cookie.

[Notify-receiving]:
Select whether to receive Cookie.

[Notify-send/recv]:
Select whether to send/receive Cookie.

[Invalid]:
Cookie is always invalid.

To delete all Cookie
Select [Delete Cookie], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select whether to set Cookie valid and press ■.**

The Cookie setting is set.

● When you insert another UIM, the Cookie setting becomes [Invalid].

## Setting JavaScript to Be Valid/ Invalid

JavaScript is a programming language used on a website to create a website with movement.
When JavaScript is used at the website, you can set whether to execute the program.

- Some websites may not be displayed correctly when you set JavaScript to be invalid.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Script setting] and press ■.**

[Valid(Auto)]:
Activate a program automatically during communication.
[Valid(Confirm)]:
Confirm whether to activate a program during communication. If you select [Yes,from then on] at the confirmation screen during communication, the setting is changed to [Valid(Auto)] automatically.
[Invalid]:
Do not activate a program.

**2 Select a method to activate a program and press ■.**

The Script setting is set.
When [Valid(Auto)] is selected
Select [Yes].

## Setting the Display Mode

You can set the display mode when activating Full Browser.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Display mode setting] and press ■.**

[PC mode]:
Display the website with the screen size for PC.
[Mobile mode]:
Reduce the display size of a website to fit in the width of the FOMA terminal.

**2 Select a display mode and press ■.**

The Display mode setting is set.

## Disabling the Display of Graphics

You can set whether to display graphics when displaying a website.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Display img] and press ■.**

**2 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press ■.**

The Display img is set.

## Setting the Display Magnification

You can set the display magnification for the Full Browser display.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Display magnification] and press ■.**

**2 Select a display magnification and press ■.**

Select from [75%], [100%], [125%], [150%], [175%], and [200%].

## Displaying the Entire Page While Scrolling

You can set whether to display the entire page automatically while scrolling.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [PagePilot setting] and press ■.**

**2 Select [Valid in scrl]/[Invalid] and press ■.**

The PagePilot setting is set.

## Setting the Movement Speed of the Pointer

You can set a speed to move the pointer.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Pointer speed setting] and press ■.**

**2 Select a movement speed of the pointer and press ■.**

Select from [1(Slow)], [2 to 4], or [5(Fast)].



Continued

## Setting Whether to Open a New Window Automatically

You can set whether to open a website in a new window automatically when JavaScript of a website requests to open a new window.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Window Open Guard] and press ■.**

[Valid]:
Do not open a website in a new window.

[Invalid]:
Open a website in a new window.

**2 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] and press ■.**

The Window Open Guard is set.

## Setting Whether to Send Referer

Referer is the information of a link origin. If you send Referer, the access information of which page is used to connect is sent to a site.
You can set whether to send Referer when you select the link while viewing a website.

- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any reveal of your information to third parties because of using Referer.
- Some websites may not be displayed correctly when Referer is not sent.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Referer setting] and press ■.**

**2 Select [Send]/[Unsend]/[Notify] and press ■.**

The Referer setting is set.

## Setting Whether to Use the Full Browser Function

You can set whether to use the Full Browser function.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Access setting] and press ■.**

[Yes]:
Full Browser can be used.

[No]:
The Access setting display appears when you activate Full Browser.

**2 Select whether to use the Full Browser function and press ■.**

**3 Select [OK] and press ■.**

The Access setting is set.

● When you change the UIM to another UIM, the Access setting changes to [No].

## Checking the Settings of Full Browser

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Check settings] and press ■.**

The contents of the settings appear.

## Restoring the Default Settings of Full Browser

You can restore the default settings of Full Browser.

**1 From the Full Browser menu, select [Full Browser setting] → [Reset settings] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■.**

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The default settings of Full Browser are restored.

# Data Display/Edit/ Management


■**Using Still Image**
Displaying the Saved Image ..... <My picture> 290
Display Images Using the Music Slide Show..... 291
Editing Still Images ..... <Edit photo> 292

■**Using Movie**
Playing Back Movie/i-motion ..... <i-motion> 295
Editing Movies ..... <Edit movie> 298

■**Using Chara-den**
What is Chara-den? ..... <Chara-den> 302

■**Using Music**
Playing Back Music Data ..... <Music> 303

■**Using the Melody**
Playing Back a Melody ..... <Melody> 304

■**Using Kisekae Tool**
Displaying/Playing Back Kisekae Tool ..... <Kisekae Tool> 305

■**Using the microSD memory card**
microSD memory card ..... 306
Displaying Data on the microSD memory card ..... 308
Folder Setup of the microSD memory card ..... 309
Data That Can Be Written/Read to and from the microSD memory card ..... 311
Saving Data from the FOMA Terminal to the microSD memory card ..... 312
Saving Data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA Terminal ..... 312
Managing the microSD memory card ..... 313
Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC ..... <USB mode setting> 314

■**Using the UIM**
Copying Data from the FOMA Terminal to the UIM ..... 316
Copying Data from the UIM to the FOMA Terminal ..... 317

■**Using Data Box**
Managing Data Box ..... <Data Box> 317
Checking the Memory of the FOMA Terminal ..... <Storage information> 326

■**Using Infrared Communication**
What is the Infrared Communication? ..... <Infrared communication> 327
Data That Can Be Sent/Received via Infrared Communication ..... 328
Receiving Data Using the Infrared Communication ..... <Receive Ir data> 329
Sending Data Using the Infrared Communication ..... <Send Ir data> 329
Using the Infrared Remote Control ..... 331

■**Using iC Communication Function**
What is iC Communication Function? ..... 331
Receiving Data Using iC Communication ..... 332
Sending Data Using iC Communication ..... 332

■**Using PDF-compatible Viewer**
Displaying PDF Data ..... <My document> 333

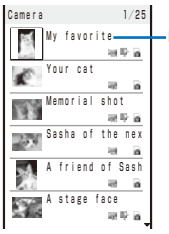
# Displaying the Saved Image <My picture>

You can display images saved in My picture of the Data Box or microSD memory card.

**1 Press ▲ (🗀) in the stand-by display, select [My picture], and press ■.**

My picture folder list appears.

**2 Select a folder and press ■.**




My picture file list appears.

- The following icons show the type/size of an image.

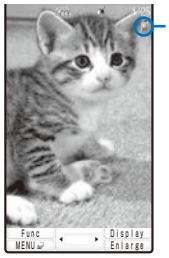
| Icon | Type | Size |
|---|---|---|
| | JPEG image | sQCIF(128×96) |
| | | QCIF(176×144) |
| | | QVGA(240×320) |
| | | CIF(352×288) |
| | | WQVGA(240×432) |
| | | VGA(640×480) |
| | | Stby(480×864) |
| | | 1M(1280×960) |
| | | 2M(1632×1224) |
| | | 2M Wide(1920×1080) |
| | | 3M(2048×1536) |
| | | 5M(2592×1944) |
| | | Others |
| | Mini-Photo image | QCIF(176×144) |
| | | QVGA(240×320) |
| | | VGA(640×480) |
| | | Stby(480×864) |
| | | Others |
| | Frame image | — |
| | Stamp image | — |
| | Deco mail pict. | — |
| | GIF image | — |
| | Flash movie | — |
| | Has loc. info | — |

- "🔒" appears on the upper right of the icon for images prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

To display the saved date/time

Press # to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

**3 Select an image and press ■.**




The selected image appears.

To change the display quality

Press 2. By pressing 2, you can switch the display quality between Normal/Sharp/Dynamic.

- The following icons show the display quality.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Normal |
| S | Sharp |
| D | Dynamic |

To hide the icons and guide display

Press i (Display). When you press i (Display), you can switch the display between standard and simple or turn off the display.

To display the previous/next image

Use ◀ to display the previous image and ▶ to display the next image.

To change the display size of a JPEG or GIF image

Press 画h (True img/Std./Enlarge/Shrink). Press 画h (True img) to display the image in the true size. However, when the image size is set to [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], or [QVGA(240×320)], press 画h (Std.) to display the image in the doubled size.

To display a Flash movie again

Press 画h (Retry).

To attach to i-mode mail

Press ✉ (Func) for over a second (P.212).

To post on a blog

From the Function menu, select [easy BlogUp] → a service provided a blog (P.358).

To set an image for stand-by or other displays

From the Function menu, select [Display setting] → a type of display.

To add the location information

From the Function menu, select [Location info] → [Rcv loc. info] → [Yes] (P.277).

To use the added location information

From the Function menu, select [Location info] → [Use loc. info] (P.277).

To display the attached detailed location information

From the Function menu, select [Location info] → [Location detail].

To delete the added location information

From the Function menu, select [Location info] → [Delete loc. info] → [Yes].

- When the file list of images in the microSD memory card is displayed, you cannot perform the Rcv loc. info or Delete loc. info.
- It may take time to display a file list or images saved in the microSD memory card.
- If you edit a recorded image on a PC, etc., "🖼" may be displayed instead of the thumbnail.
- When the image cannot be displayed, "🖼" appears.
- You can send a still image using the high-speed infrared communication (P.330).

# Displaying Images Using the Music Slide Show

JPEG images saved in My picture of the Data Box or microSD memory card can be displayed with a BGM and effect, while being switched automatically.

- The Music slide show is played back in the horizontal orientation.

Example: Playing back the Music slide show from My picture of the Data Box

## 1 Press ✉ (Func) in the My picture file list.

The Function menu appears.

To play back the Music slide show from the Menu display

From the Menu, select [Imaging] → [Music slide show].

To play back the Music slide show while the camera is activated

Press 📷 in the Camera mode, press ▣ (List), and from the Function menu, select [Music slide show].

## 2 Select [Music slide show] and press ■.

The display indicating stand-by for playing back the Music slide show appears.

## 3 Press ■ (Play).

The Music slide show is started.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Play | Press ■ (Play). |
| Pause | Press ■ (Pause). |
| Volume adjustment | Use ▲▼. |
| Fast-forward an image | Press ▶ while pausing. Pressing and holding ▶ keeps fast-forwarding images continuously. |
| Fast-reverse an image | Press ◀ while pausing. Pressing and holding ◀ keeps fast-reversing images continuously. |

To display the icon or guide display while playing back

Press ▲マナー. Every time you press ▲マナー, you can switch between turning on/off the display.

To specify the folder to be played back as the Music slide show

While pausing, from the Function menu, select [ 🖿 ] → a folder.

To change the Effect

While pausing, from the Function menu, select [ ](Effect) → a type of effects.

To set the repeat on the Effect

While pausing, from the Function menu, select [ ](Repeat) → [ ](ON)/[ ](OFF).

To change the BGM

While pausing, from the Function menu, select [ ](BGM) → [ ](Data Box) → [Music]/[i-motion] → a BGM. To mute the BGM, select [ ](Silent).

- When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC], the screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the BGM. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the BGM.

To set the display quality

While pausing, from the Function menu, select [ ](Change image quality) → [ ](Normal)/[ ](Sharp)/[ ](Dynamic).

To end the Music slide show

Press to end the Music slide show and go back to the stand-by display.

## Editing Still Images <Edit photo>

You can edit a JPEG image saved in My picture by pasting a stamp, a frame, etc.

- You cannot edit preinstalled images, images prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal, or images recorded with [Panorama] set at the Shoot mode.
- Some images may not be edited.
- Once you start editing an image of a type displayed after being rotated, the rotation is canceled and the image is displayed in the orientation in which the image is saved. Also after saving the image, it is displayed in the orientation without rotation.
- Images may become inferior by editing repeatedly.

### Pasting a Frame

A frame can be pasted to an image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [CIF(352×288)], [VGA(640×480)], and [Stby(480×864)].

Example: Pasting a frame and saving by overwriting

**1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit photo] → [Frame] and press .**

**3 Select a frame and press .**

To check a frame

Move the cursor to a frame and press (Play).

**4 Press (Save), select [Overwrite], and press .**

The image with the frame is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

### Pasting a Stamp

A stamp can be pasted to an image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [CIF(352×288)], [VGA(640×480)], and [Stby(480×864)].

Example: Pasting a stamp and saving by overwriting

**1 From My picture file list, select an image, press , and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit photo] → [Image stamp] and press .**

**3 Select a stamp and press .**

To check a stamp

Move the cursor to a stamp and press (Play).

**4 Use / / to adjust the position and press (Paste).**

To add the same stamp

Repeat step 4.

To paste another stamp

Press (Retry) and perform step 3 to 4 again.

**5 Press (OK).**

**6 Press ■ (Save), select [Overwrite], and press ■.**

The image with the stamp is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Pasting Text

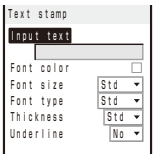
Text can be pasted to an image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [CIF(352×288)], [VGA(640×480)], and [Stby(480×864)]. The style and color of the text can also be specified.

Example: Pasting text and saving by overwriting

**1 From My picture file list, select an image, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit photo] → [Text stamp] and press ■.**




[Input text]:
Enter a text to be pasted within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

[Font color]:
Select the color of a font to be pasted.

[Font size]:
Select the size of a font to be pasted.

[Font type]:
Select the type of a font to be pasted.

[Thickness]:
Select the thickness of a font to be pasted.

[Underline]:
Select whether to display a line under a font to be pasted.

**3 Set each item.**

**4 Press ● (OK).**

**5 Use ▲ ▼ / ◀ ▶ to adjust the position and press ■ (Paste).**

To add the same text stamp

Repeat step 5.

To paste another text stamp

Press 消 (Retry) and perform step 2 to 5 again.

**6 Press ● (OK).**

**7 Press ■ (Save), select [Overwrite], and press ■.**

The image with the text is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Trimming Part of an Image After Zoom In

You can specify a part of an image after zooming in on it and trim it into a size of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [CIF(352×288)], [VGA(640×480)], and [Stand-by(480×864)].

- When the image size is [sQCIF(128×96)], you cannot trim this image.

Example: Trimming an image and saving by overwriting

**1 From My picture file list, select an image, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit photo] → [Zoom&trim] → a size of an image to be trimmed and press ■.**

- The image size displayed in gray is not available for trimming.

**3 Press ● (Zoom(T))/ 消 (Zoom(W)).**




- Press ● (Zoom(T)) to enlarge and 消 (Zoom(W)) to reduce an image.

The zoom is adjusted and the bar is displayed for the zoom magnification you have set.

**4 Use ▲ ▼ / ◀ ▶ to select the area to be trimmed and press ■ (OK).**

The image is trimmed to the selected size.



Continued

**5 Press ■ (Save), select [Overwrite], and press ■.**

The trimmed image is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Rotating an Image

An image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [CIF(352×288)], [VGA(640×480)], and [Stby(480×864)] can be rotated.

Example: Rotating an image and saving by overwriting

**1 From My picture file list, select an image, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit photo] → [Rotate] and press ■.**

**3 Press ↕ (Rotate) and press ■ (OK).**

Every time you press ↕ (Rotate), the image rotates clockwise by 90 degrees.

**4 Press ■ (Save), select [Overwrite], and press ■.**

The rotated image is saved by overwriting the original image.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Converting the Image Size

You can convert an image size into [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(240×320)], [CIF(352×288)], [VGA(640×480)], and [Stand-by(480×864)].

Example: Converting an image size and saving

**1 From My picture file list, select an image, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit photo] → [Select size] → a size of an image to be converted and press ■.**

- The image size displayed in gray is not available for size conversion.

**3 Press ■ (Save), select [Yes] → a place to save to, and press ■.**

The size-converted image is saved.

- Some of the image size cannot be converted into the selected size.

## Adding the Effect on an Image

You can add special effects on an image.

**1 From My picture file list, select an image, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit photo] → [Image effect] and press ■.**

[Photo fix]:
Adjust the color and brightness of an image automatically.

[Comical]:
Make an image cartoonish.

[Gray scale]:
Set an image in black and white.

[Antique]:
Set an image antique-toned like an old photograph. It is brighter than Sepia.

[Sketch]:
Make an image like in colored line drawing.

**3 Select an image effect and press ■.**

To display an image without an image effect

Press ↕ (Eff. OFF). To undo it, press ↕ (Eff. ON).

**4 Press ■ (Save), select [Overwrite], and press ■.**

The image added the effect is overwritten.

To save as a new image

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Storing an Image at the Data Security Service Center

You can use the Data Security Service to store up to 10 GIF/JPEG images at one time at the Data Security Service Center.

- Data Security Service is a paid service that requires a subscription. For details on this service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".
- You cannot store a file that contains an image larger than 100K bytes and an image that is prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

**1 Press (Func) in the file list of My picture.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Store in Center] and press .**

The Security code screen appears.

**3 Enter the Security code and press .**

The Select&save display appears.

**4 Select an image and press .**

- To store several images, repeat step 4.

**5 Press (Complete).**

The screen for confirming whether to store the image appears.

**6 Select [Yes] and press .**

The call is connected to the Data Security Service Center and the image is stored. When the storing is completed, the storing result display appears.

## Playing Back Movie/ i-motion <i-motion>

You can play back movie/i-motion that is saved in i-motion of the Data Box or microSD memory card.

**1 Press (▲) (📁) in the stand-by display, select [i-motion], and press .**

The i-motion folder list appears.

To play back data from the last stopped position

Select [Resume play].

To play back a playlist

Select the [Playlist] folder, move the cursor to a playlist, and press (Play). When you play back a movie/i-motion in the playlist, select the [Playlist] folder → a playlist, move the cursor to a movie/i-motion, and press (Play).

**2 Select a folder and press .**




The i-motion file list appears.

- The following icons show the type/size of a movie/i-motion and playback restrictions.

Type and size

| Icon | Type | Size |
|---|---|---|
| | Movie/i-motion with video and sound tracks | sQCIF(128×96) |
| | | QCIF(176×144) |
| | | QVGA(320×240) |
| | | VGA(640×480) |
| | | Others |
| | Movie/i-motion with video track only | sQCIF(128×96) |
| | | QCIF(176×144) |
| | | QVGA(320×240) |
| | | VGA(640×480) |
| | | Others |
| | Movie/i-motion with sound track only (i-motion without video track, such as singer's voice) | – |
| | Movie/i-motion downloaded partway | – |

- "🔑" appears on the upper right of the icon for movie/i-motion prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

Playback restrictions

| Icon | Playback restrictions |
|---|---|
| | Movie/i-motion with playback restrictions |
| | Movie/i-motion whose time limit on playback has expired |



Continued

To play back movie in a folder repeatedly

From the Function menu, select [Continuous play]. The files displayed in the list are played back sequentially. To stop the playback, press (Stop).

To display the saved date/time

Press # to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

### 3 Select a movie/i-motion and press ■.

The selected movie/i-motion appears.

When the screen informing to make enough space appears

Select [Yes].

To change the display quality

Press 2. By pressing 2, you can switch the display quality between Normal/Sharp/Dynamic.

- The following icons show the display quality.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Normal |
| S | Sharp |
| D | Dynamic |

To hide the icons and guide display

Press (Display). When you press (Display), you can switch the display between standard/simple or turn it off.

To display the previous/next movie/i-motion

Use ◀ to display the previous movie/i-motion and ▶ to display the next movie/i-motion.

To change the display size

Press (True img/Std./Enlarge). When the image size is set to [QVGA(320×240)], press (True img) to display the image in the true size. When the image size is set to [sQCIF(128×96)] or [QCIF(176×144)], press (Std.) to display the image in the doubled size.

- When the image size is set to [VGA(640×480)], the image is always displayed in the true size and cannot change the display size.

To attach to i-mode mail

Press (Func) for over a second (P.212).

To post on a blog

From the Function menu, select [easy BlogUp] → a service provided a blog (P.358).

To set a movie/i-motion for the stand-by display or other settings

From the Function menu, select [Display setting] → a type of a display.

To set a movie/i-motion for the ring tone or other tones

From the Function menu, select [Sound setting] → a type of a ring tone.

To change the display style of an image temporarily

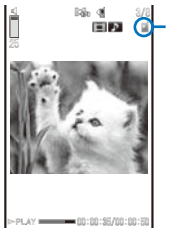
From the Function menu, select [Change scr. set] → a display style of an image.

- When the image size is [QVGA(320×240)], you can select [Hor. wide(zoom)]/[Hor. wide(full)].

To set the display style of an image

From the Function menu, select [Screen setting] → a display style of an image.

### 4 Press ■ (Play).




The selected movie/i-motion is played back.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Play | Press ■ (Play). |
| Pause | Press ■ (Pause). |
| Stop | Press (Stop). |
| Volume adjustment | Use ▲ ▼. |
| Fast-forward | Press ▶ during playback. Pressing and holding ▶ also provides Fast-forward. |
| Fast-reverse | Press ◀ during playback. Pressing and holding ◀ also provides Fast-reverse. |
| Frame advance | Press ▶ during pause. |

- When you play back a movie/i-motion for the first time, the screen for confirming whether to play it back in the horizontal orientation appears. If you select [Yes], the movie/i-motion is played back in the horizontal orientation.
- It may take time to display a file list or movie/i-motion saved in the microSD memory card.
- If you edit a recorded movie on a PC, etc., "■" may be displayed instead of the thumbnail.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and a movie/i-motion that has a time limit on playback may not be played back.
- A movie/i-motion can be set for the ring tone and/or incoming image when [Ring tone] and/or [Receive display] is set to "Not restricted" as can be checked in the Detail info display. However, the following are the exceptions.
  - A movie/i-motion restored from a PC or another FOMA terminal, which was once transferred to it using the infrared or iC communication or DoCoMo keitai datalink
  - A movie/i-motion saved from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal (including the one that is restored to the FOMA terminal after once copied/moved from there, except for the movable contents-compatible one)

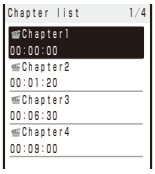
## Playing Back i-motion by Each Chapter

You can play back i-motion by each chapter.

**1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie/i-motion, press ●, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Chapter list] and press ●.**




**3 Select a chapter and press ●.**

The movie/i-motion is played back from the selected position.

To play back from the previous/next chapter

Press 1 to play back from the previous chapter and press 3 to play back from the next chapter.

## Creating a Playlist

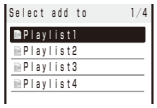
You can save your favorite movies/i-motion in a playlist. Up to five playlists can be saved and up to 25 movies/i-motion can be saved in each playlist.

Example: Adding and saving one movie/i-motion

**1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie/i-motion and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Add to playlist] → [Save one] and press ●.**




To create a new playlist

From the i-motion folder list, select [Playlist] and from the Function menu, select [Create playlist]. Enter a playlist name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

To save several movies/i-motion

From the Function menu, select [Add to playlist] → [Select&save], select movies/i-motion, and press i (Complete).

**3 Select a playlist to be saved and press ■.**

The screen for selecting the saving method appears.

[Add]:
The selected movie/i-motion is newly added in a playlist.

[Overwrite]:
The screen for confirming whether to overwrite all movies/i-motion saved in a playlist with selected movies/i-motion appears. Note that all data existing in the playlist is deleted when you select [Yes].

**4 Select [Add] and press ■.**

The selected movie/i-motion is saved in the playlist.

## Deleting/Reordering Movies/ i-motion of the Playlist

You can delete movies/i-motion from a playlist or reorder them within a playlist. Even if you delete movies/i-motion from a playlist, the files of the movies/i-motion are not deleted.

Example: Deleting one movie/i-motion

**1 From the i-motion folder list, select [Playlist] → a playlist and press ■.**

The movie/i-motion list of the playlist appears.

To delete all movies/i-motion
From the Function menu, select [Delete from list] → [Delete all] → [Yes].

**2 Select a movie/i-motion and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To reorder movies/i-motion
From the Function menu, select [Reorder] → a movie/i-motion. Move the cursor to the place to move to, press ■ (Move), and press ■ (Complete).

**3 Select [Delete from list] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected movie/i-motion is deleted from the playlist.

## Deleting/Editing the Name of the Playlist

You can delete a playlist or edit its name.

Example: Deleting one playlist

**1 From the i-motion folder list, select [Playlist] and press ■.**

A list of all playlists appears.

**2 Select a playlist and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To edit the name of a playlist
Move the cursor to the playlist and from the Function menu, select [Edit name]. Enter a new name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters.

**3 Select [Delete playlist] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected playlist is deleted.

# Editing Movies <Edit movie>

You can edit a movie recorded with the FOMA terminal.

- Some movies may not be edited.

## Clipping a Movie

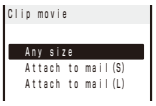
You can clip a portion of a movie of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(320×240)], and [VGA(640×480)] image size by specifying the range or size to be clipped.

Example: Trimming a movie image by specifying size and saving by overwriting

**1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit movie] → [Clip movie] and press ■.**




[Any size]:
Clip a movie by specifying the start and end positions.

[Attach to mail(S)]:
Automatically clip a movie to up to 500K-byte length from the specified start position.

[Attach to mail(L)]:
Automatically clip a movie to up to 2M-byte length from the specified start position.

**3 Select [Attach to mail(S)]/[Attach to mail(L)] and press ■.**



**4 Use ◀ ▶ to select the clipping start position and press ▮ (Start).**

When you select [Any size]
Use ◀ ▶ to select the clipping end position and press ▮ (End).

**5 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

**6 Press ■ (Save), select [Overwrite], and press ■.**

The movie clip is saved by overwriting the original movie.

To save as a new movie
Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

## Clipping a Still Image from a Movie

You can specify any portion of a movie and clip it as a still image of [sQCIF(128×96)], [QCIF(176×144)], [QVGA(320×240)], and [VGA(640×480)] image size.

**1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit movie] → [Clip picture] and press ■.**



To move forward frame-by-frame
Press ▶.

To move backward frame-by-frame
Press ◀.

**3 Press ■ (Play), press ■ (Pause) at the clipping position, and press 🖧 (Clip).**

**4 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

**5 Press ■ (Save), select [Yes] → a place to save to, and press ■.**

The still image clip is saved in My picture.

## Converting the Image Size

You can convert a [QVGA(320×240)] image size movie into the [QCIF(176×144)] image size.

Example: Converting the image size and saving by overwriting

**1 From the i-motion file list, select a movie, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit movie] → [Select size] and press ■.**

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

**4 Press ■ (Save), select [Overwrite], and press ■.**

The converted movie is saved by overwriting the original movie.

To save as a new movie

Select [Save new] → a place to save to.

- It may take time to convert a large movie/i-motion file.
- When the size of a file after conversion is too large, movie images may be partially clipped into a file of 500K bytes or less.

## What is Chara-den?<Chara-den>

You can send an avatar of your choice instead of your own image when you use the videophone function. You can make this avatar move by pressing the keys on the keypad. The mouth part of some avatars can be moved in response to the sound heard from the microphone.

■ Preinstalled Chara-den characters

アイアイ



©SEGA

■ Action lists of the preinstalled Chara-den characters

**アイアイ**

Full-body action

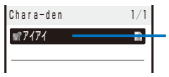
1: アレレ？　2: イェーイ！
3: エーンエーン　4: アハハッ
5: もうっ！　6: ねむいよ～
7: がっかり･･･　8: ごめんなさーい
9: なんだってー！

- If you have deleted a preinstalled Chara-den fille, you can download it from "PlayNow by SO". [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [PlayNow by SO] (Japanese only)

## Displaying and Operating Chara-den

You can display Chara-den characters saved in the Chara-den folder of the Data Box.

**1 Press ▲ (🗀) in the stand-by display, select [Chara-den], and press ■.**




Management title

The Chara-den file list appears.

- File restriction is set for Chara-den files and "" appears on the upper right of the Chara-den icon.

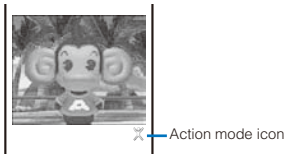
To place a videophone call

Move the cursor to the Chara-den file and from the Function menu, select [Call Chara-den], enter a phone number, and press 📞 (V.phone).

To set a substitute image of videophone

Move the cursor to the Chara-den file and from the Function menu, select [Set sub image].

**2 Select a Chara-den file and press ■.**



Action mode icon

©SEGA

To display the previous/next Chara-den

Use ◀ to display the previous Chara-den and ▶ to display the next Chara-den.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Stop action | Press [0] while in action. |
| Switch the action mode | Press [dh] (Change). Every time you press this key, the operation is switched between full-body action and parts action.<br>(Full-body action) :<br>The entire body is moved.<br>(Parts action) :<br>A part of the body is moved. |
| Display the action list | Press [i] (List). Select an action to check the movement of it. Move the cursor to an action and press [i] (Detail) to display the action name. |
| Display other Chara-den file | From the Function menu, select [Set Chara-den] → [Change Chara-den] → a Chara-den file. |

● The action that you can perform varies depending on a Chara-den file. Some Chara-den files have no action to be performed.

# Playing Back Music Data

<Music>

You can play back music data saved in MUSIC of the Data Box and microSD memory card.

**1 Press [▲] (🗀) in the stand-by display, select [MUSIC], and press [■].**




The list of music folders and files appears.

- The following icons show the type of music data and playback restrictions.

Type

| Icon | Type |
|---|---|
| | Original playlist, WMA playlist, and imported playlist |
| | Chaku-Uta Full® |
| | Chaku-Uta Full® downloaded partway |
| | 3GPP |
| | WMA |

- File restriction is set for Chaku-Uta Full® and "" appears on the upper right of the icon.

Playback restrictions

| Icon | Playback restrictions |
|---|---|
| | Music data with playback restrictions |
| | Music data whose time limit on playback has expired |
| | Uta-hodai |
| | Uta-hodai whose time limit on playback has expired |

To play back music data in a folder

Select a folder and press [■].

To switch between the jacket display and list display

From the Function menu, select [Change jackets].

To switch to the MUSIC Player

From the Function menu, select [Player mode].

To set a Chaku-Uta Full® for the ring tone

Move the cursor to a Chaku-Uta Full® from the Function menu, select [Sound setting] → a type of incoming.

- When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC], the screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone.
- When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® saved in the microSD memory card, select [Yes] at the screen for confirming whether to save to the FOMA terminal, select a folder to move to, and press [i] (Save).

**2 Select music data and press ■.**




The selected music data is played back.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Play | Press ■ (Play). |
| Stop | Press ■ (Stop). |
| Volume adjustment | Use ▲▼. |
| Rewinding | Press ◀. |
| Fast-forward | Press ▶ for over a second during playback. |
| Fast-reverse | Press ◀ for over a second during playback. |

When you select a playlist

It is switched to the MUSIC Player.

## Playing Back a Melody

<Melody>

You can play back an SMF/MFi-format melody that is saved in Melody of the Data Box or microSD memory card.

**1 Press ▲ (🗀) in the stand-by display, select [Melody], and press ■.**

The melody folder list appears.

**2 Select a folder and press ■.**




Management title

The melody file list appears.

- The following icons show the type of the melody.

| Icon | Type |
|---|---|
| ♪ | Melody |
| ♪ | 3D sound-compatible melody |

- "🔇" appears on the upper right of the icon for melodies prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

To play a melody that has specified playback range

Move the cursor to the melody and from the Function menu, select [Play portion].

To attach to i-mode mail

Move the cursor to the melody and from the Function menu, select [Attach to mail] (P.212).

To set a melody for the phone tone or other settings

Move the cursor to a melody and from the Function menu, select [Sound setting] → a ring tone.

**3 Select a melody and press ■.**




The selected melody is played and the indicator flashes.

To stop playback

Press ■ (Stop).

To play back the previous/next melody

Use ◀ to play back the previous melody and ▶ to play back the next melody.

To adjust the volume

Use ▲▼.

● When you play back a melody, the FOMA terminal may start vibrating in concert with the melody, regardless of the Vibrator setting (P.110).

# Displaying/Playing Back Kisekae Tool <Kisekae Tool>

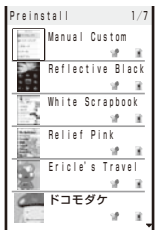
You can display/play back data selected from the list of contents of the Kisekae tool saved in the Data Box.

- You can display the list of contents of the Kisekae tool but cannot select data to display/play back it if the Kisekae tool is saved in the microSD memory card.

## 1 Press ▲ (🗀) in the stand-by display, select [Kisekae Tool], and press ■.

The Kisekae Tool folder list appears.

## 2 Select a folder and press ■.




The Kisekae Tool list appears.

- The following icons show the type of the Kisekae tool.

| Icon | Type |
|---|---|
| | Kisekae tool |
| | Kisekae tool downloaded partway |

To display an image of the Kisekae tool
Press 📷 (Play).

To set the Kisekae tool
Move the cursor to a Kisekae tool and from the Function menu, select [Kisekae setting].

## 3 Select a Kisekae tool and press ■.




The data list display of the Kisekae tool appears.

- The following icons show the type of the file.

| Icon | Type |
|---|---|
| | Kisekae menu |
| | Movie/i-motion |
| | Image or melody |
| | File that cannot be played back |
| | Color theme |

When the screen informing to make enough space appears
Select [Yes].

To set the currently displayed Kisekae tool
Press i (Kisekae).

## 4 Select data and press ■.

The selected data is displayed/played back.

# microSD memory card

You can save Phonebook, mail, Bookmark, and other data in the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, as well as copy data in the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. In addition, you cannot only view data in the microSD memory card on the FOMA terminal, but also use the FOMA terminal as a reader/writer of a microSD memory card by connecting it to a PC (P.314).

To use the microSD memory card, you are required to obtain a microSD memory card separately. If you have no microSD memory card, you can purchase it at a home electric appliance store or other similar store.

- Data saved in the microSD memory card from other devices may not be displayed/played back on the FOMA terminal. Similarly, data saved in the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played back on other devices.
- SO906i supports the commercially available microSD memory card of up to 2G bytes (as of December 2007).
  For the latest information for which normal operation of the microSD memory card is confirmed, such as information about the manufactures and capacities of the microSD memory card, see the following websites. Note that a microSD memory card other than listed in the websites may not operate normally on SO906i.
  i-mode site :
  [PlayNow by SO] (as of December 2007)
  [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [PlayNow by SO] (Japanese only)
  Website :
  Website of Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.
  http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/memorycard/
  Please note that the information listed represents only the result of the operation checks and by no means provides guarantee for all operations of the microSD memory card.
- Do not remove the microSD memory card during data access (reading of data, saving data, etc.). Doing so may cause malfunction, etc.
- During preparation for access after insertion of the microSD memory card (the time before the first reading/writing operation is ready), "" flashes. If "" keeps flashing, remove the microSD memory card and then insert it again. If the icon still keeps flashing, please check conditions of the microSD memory card.
- Do not stick a label, etc. on the microSD memory card. It may be removed when inserting/removing the microSD memory card, resulting in malfunction, etc. of the FOMA terminal.
- When you save data in a microSD memory card, it is recommended to make a backup copy of the saved data and keep it separately in a safe place. Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or modification of the data.

**The microSD memory card formatted on a PC or other devices cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Be sure to use the microSD memory card after formatting it using the FOMA terminal (P.313).**

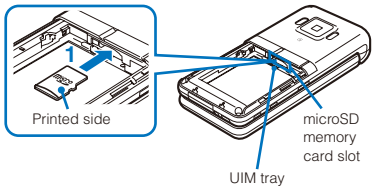
## Inserting and Removing the microSD memory card

■ Inserting the microSD memory card

- When inserting the microSD memory card, make sure to insert it in the correct orientation with the printed side facing up as illustrated below. Any insertion in an orientation other than illustrated below may cause malfunction, etc.

**1 Insert the microSD memory card into the slot.**

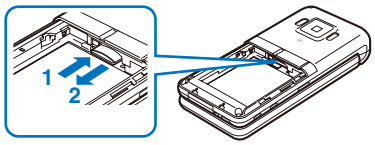
- Insert until it clicks into place.




■ Removing the microSD memory card

**1 Press the microSD memory card lightly.**

It is ejected slightly.



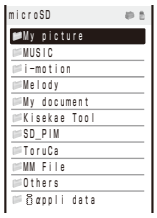

**2 Remove the microSD memory card.**

- "" appears in the display while inserting the microSD memory card. When it does not appear, the following reasons about the microSD memory card may be considered. Please check them.
  - Dust or something gets on the metallic terminal portion
  - Insertion is not completed
  - Damaged
  - Using an external memory other than recommended ones (For information on recommended external memories, scan the QR code in P.306 and access to "PlayNow by SO".)

## Displaying Data on the microSD memory card

Data saved in the microSD memory card can be displayed and checked.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [microSD] and press ■.**




The category list of the microSD appears.

To switch the contents of a memory to be displayed

Press [i] (Chg.Mmry). Each time you press [i], the contents to be displayed are switched between the Data Box/microSD memory card.

**2 Select a category and press ■.**

- To perform an operation while category/data is displayed, see the description about each function. You may not be able to perform some of the operations using the microSD memory card.
  - My picture (P.290)
  - MUSIC (P.303)
  - i-motion (P.295)
  - Melody (P.304)
  - My document (P.333)
  - Kisekae Tool (P.305)
  - Phonebook (P.101)
  - Text Memo (P.372)
  - Schedule (P.363)
  - Inbox/Outbox/Draft (P.219)
  - Bookmark (P.191)
  - ToruCa (P.257)
  - MM File (P.295, 309)
  - i αppli data (P.250)

**3 Select data and press ■.**

The contents of the selected data are displayed.

# Folder Setup of the microSD memory card

## When Displaying the Folders on the FOMA Terminal

○: Allowed to be saved　×: Not allowed to be saved　△: Only allowed to be moved

| Category | | Data you can/cannot save in the FOMA terminal | | | Contents of data |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | One file | Selected files | All files | |
| My picture | Camera | ○ | ○ | ○ | Image recorded with the camera of the FOMA terminal and GIF image |
| | Deco mail pict. | ○ | ○ | ○ | Deco-mail pictograph |
| | Other images | ○ | ○ | ○ | JPEG image and GIF animation |
| | Movable contents | △ | × | × | Movable contents-compatible still image |
| MUSIC | Distrib. contents | × | × | × | Music data (3GPP) |
| | Movable contents | △ | × | × | Movable contents-compatible music data (Chaku-Uta Full®) |
| | WMA | × | × | × | WMA file |
| i-motion | Distrib. contents | ○ | ○ | ○ | Movie/i-motion |
| | Movable contents | △ | × | × | Movable contents-compatible movie/i-motion |
| Melody | Distrib. contents | ○ | ○ | ○ | Melody |
| | Movable contents | △ | × | × | Movable contents-compatible melody |
| My document | Distrib. contents | ○ | ○ | ○ | PDF data |
| | Movable contents | △ | × | × | Movable contents-compatible PDF data |
| Kisekae Tool | Movable contents | △ | × | × | Movable contents-compatible Kisekae tool |
| SD_PIM | Phonebook | ○※1 | × | × | Phonebook data |
| | Text Memo | ○※1 | × | × | Text memo |
| | Schedule | ○※1 | × | × | Schedule |
| | Inbox | ○※1 | × | × | Received mail |
| | Outbox | ○※1 | × | × | Sent mail |
| | Draft | ○※1 | × | × | Saved mail |
| | Bookmark | ○※1 | × | × | Bookmark |
| ToruCa | | ○※1 | × | × | ToruCa card, ToruCa(detail) card |
| MM File | | ○ | ○ | ○ | i-motion with sound track only (i-motion without video track, such as singer's voice)※2 |
| Others | | × | × | × | Other files |
| i αppli data | | × | × | × | Saved i-αppli data |

※1 When you save a Phonebook entry, text memo, schedule, mail, bookmark, and a ToruCa card from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, they are saved as a file formatted for the microSD memory card. Multiple data records of above categories may be contained in a file of the microSD memory card.

※2 AAC-format music data is included.

### ■ Data that cannot be moved/saved in the FOMA terminal

| | |
|---|---|
| Phonebook | • You cannot save a movie/i-motion set for the Des call display and also a GIF/JPEG image set for the Des call display if it exceeds 100K bytes or [QVGA(240×320)]. |
| ToruCa | • You cannot save a ToruCa and ToruCa(detail) card exceeding 1K bytes and 100K bytes respectively. |
| Melody | • You cannot save a melody exceeding 200K bytes. |
| My picture | • You cannot save a GIF image exceeding 2M bytes.<br>• You cannot save a GIF image and a GIF animation exceeding [UXGA(1600×1200)] and [Stby(480×864)] respectively, and some JPEG images.<br>• You cannot save a JPEG image exceeding 2M bytes or [5M(2592×1944)]. |
| MUSIC | • You cannot save music data from the microSD memory card to the Data Box (except for the movable contents-compatible Chaku-Uta Full®). |
| i-motion | • You cannot save a movie/i-motion exceeding 10M bytes. |
| My document | • You cannot save PDF data exceeding 2M bytes. |

## When Displaying the Folders on a PC

When you save data of the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, a corresponding folder is created automatically.

- The maximum number of files that can be saved is an estimated number, assuming the blank memory is used.

| Category | FOMA terminal folder | File format | FOMA terminal filename | Estimated max. number of files to be saved (64MB) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DCIM | — | — | — | — |
| 100SODCF～999SODCF | My picture/Camera | JPEG(Exif), GIF | DSC0nnnn.JPG/.GIF | P.152 |
| SD_VIDEO | — | — | — | — |
| PRLxxx | i-motion/Distrib. contents | MP4 | MOLxxx.MP4/.3GP | P.152, 153 |
| SD_PIM | Phonebook | vCard | PIM*****.VCF | 3,877 |
| | Mail (Outbox/Inbox/Draft) | vMessage | PIM*****.VMG | |
| | Schedule | vCalendar | PIM*****.VCS | |
| | Bookmark | vBookmark | PIM*****.VBM※1 | |
| | Text Memo | vNote | PIM*****.VNT | |
| PRIVATE | — | — | — | — |
| DOCOMO | — | — | — | — |
| STILL SUDnnn | My picture/Other images | JPEG (excluding Exif), GIF animation, SWF | STILnnnn.JPG/.GIF/.SWF | 3,875 |
| RINGER RUDnnn | Melody/Distrib. contents | MFi, SMF | RINGnnnn.MID/.MLD/.SMF | 3,875 |
| DOCUMENT PUDnnn | My document/Distrib. contents | PDF | PDFDCnnn.PDF/.$DF※2 | 3,875 |
| TORUCA TRCnnn | ToruCa | vNote | TORUCnnn.TRC | 3,875 |
| MMFILE MUDnnn | MM File/Distrib. contents | MP4 | MMFnnnn.MP4/.3GP | P.152, 153 |
| MUSIC | MUSIC/Distrib. contents | 3GPP, WMA | Filename.3gp/.wma | P.343 |
| Playlist | MUSIC/Distrib. contents/Imp. playlist | M3U | Filename.m3u | P.348 |
| WM | Music/WMA | WMA | Filename.wma | P.343 |
| WM_SYSTEM | — | — | | P.343 |
| DECOIMG DUDnnn | My picture/Deco mail pict. | JPEG, GIF | DIMGnnnn.JPG/.GIF | 3,875 |
| OTHER OUDnnn | Others | — | OTHERnnn | 3,875 |
| TABLE DCIM | Additional information management files of each folder | — | — | — |
| STILL | | | | |
| SD_VIDEO | | | | |
| MMFILE | | | | |
| RINGER | | | | |
| DOCUMENT | | | | |
| TORUCA | | | | |
| DECOIMG | | | | |
| OTHER | | | | |
| SD_BIND | — | — | — | — |
| SVC***** | — | — | — | — |
| ******** | My picture/Movable contents | JPEG, GIF, SWF | ********.SB1 | 3,875 |
| ******** | i-motion/Movable contents | MP4 | ********.SB1 | 3,875 |
| ******** | Melody/Movable contents | MFi, SMF | ********.SB1 | 3,875 |
| ******** | My document/Movable contents | PDF | ********.SB1 | 3,875 |
| ******** | Kisekae tool/Movable contents | UI Meta-data file, UI Content-Package file | ********.SB1 | 32 |
| SVC***** | — | — | — | — |
| ******** | i αppli data | i αppli data | | 3,875 |
| SVC***** | — | — | — | — |
| ******** | MUSIC/Movable contents | Chaku-Uta Full® | ********.SB2 | P.343 |

※1 A "✻.url" file received via data communication is also processed as a bookmark file.
※2 If there is a file with the same name, a serial number is added to the end of the file name.

- The numbers "001" to "999" and "0001" to "9999" are assigned to "nnn" and "nnnn" respectively from the smallest available number in the order of their creation. Note that the number of files which can be saved per folder is up to 500 files.
- The hexadecimal digits "001" to "FFF" are assigned to "xxx" in the order of their creation.
- The numbers "00001" to "65535" and "00000001" to "00065535" are assigned to "*****" and "********" respectively from the smallest available number in the order of their creation.
- A file name that can be identified by the microSD memory card is up to 255 bytes including a drive name and path.

## Data That Can Be Written/Read to and from the microSD memory card

- It may take time to save data depending on the data size.
- Data saved from the microSD memory card may not be displayed/played back properly.
- You cannot copy/move a file prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

| Category | Data you can/cannot save from the FOMA terminal | | | Data you cannot save from the FOMA terminal and other information |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | One file | Selected files | All files | |
| My picture | ○ | ○ | ○ | • You cannot save a frame image and stamp image. |
| MUSIC | × | × | × | • You can only move data from the Data Box to the microSD memory card (except for the movable contents-compatible Chaku-Uta Full®). |
| i-motion | ○ | ○ | ○ | • You cannot save a movie/i-motion with playback restriction. |
| Melody | ○ | ○ | ○ | – |
| My document | ○ | ○ | ○ | • The document definition file is saved together with PDF data. |
| Kisekae Tool | × | × | × | • You cannot save data from the Data Box to the microSD memory card (except for the movable contents-compatible Kisekae tool). |
| Phonebook | ○ | × | ○ | • You cannot save the Des substitute image, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., and Select mail Illum.<br>• When you use Save one, you cannot save a Group number and Group name. To save data using Save one, set the Secret to [OFF].<br>• You cannot save a movie/i-motion set for the Des call display.<br>• When you use Save all, the data of the PushTalk phonebook is also saved.<br>• You cannot save the Des call display if the Save/attach image is set to [Invalid].<br>• You cannot copy the UIM phonebook. |
| Text Memo | ○ | × | ○ | – |
| Schedule | ○ | × | ○ | • You cannot save ON/OFF of the holiday setting for a repeated schedule.<br>• To save data using Save one, set the Secret to [OFF]. |
| Inbox/ Outbox/ Draft | ○ | × | ○ | • You cannot save a folder name, i-αppli To link, and file attachment not yet obtained.<br>• Mail exceeding 100K bytes is saved after being resized to 100K bytes by deleting a file attachment, etc.<br>• Protected mail and i-αppli mail are saved as regular mail.<br>• You cannot save the SMS report. |
| Bookmark | ○ | × | ○ | • You cannot save a folder name. |
| ToruCa | ○ | × | ○ | • You may not be able to save some ToruCa cards. |

- If you edit, add, or delete data stored in the microSD memory card on a device such as a PC, it may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal. If this happens, update the information of the management file in the microSD memory card (P.314).
- When you reply to mail saved in the microSD memory card, you cannot attach a file. If you want to reply to the mail with file attachment, you need to save the mail in the FOMA terminal first, select the mail from the Draft, attach a file to the mail, and then you can send it with file attachment.

## Saving Data from the FOMA Terminal to the microSD memory card

You can copy data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card.

- While you save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data, the status of the FOMA terminal is the same as the outside of the service area status. Therefore, you cannot use call or communication functions, such as placing/receiving a call and using i-mode and data communication.

Example: Saving data

**1 Select data and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Save to microSD] → [Save one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected data is saved.

To save several data

Select [Save to microSD] → [Select&save] and select data. Press i (Complete) and select [Yes].

To save all data in My picture/i-motion/Melody/My document

Select [Save to microSD] → [Save all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To save all Phonebook entries

Select [Save to microSD] → [Save all] → [Yes]/[No] and enter the Security code.

To save a file of the still image/movie file list displayed in the Camera mode

In the file list, move the cursor to a file and from the Function menu, select [Save to microSD] → [Save one] → [Yes]. To save several files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Save to microSD] → [Select&save] and select files. Press i (Complete) and select [Yes]. To save all files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Save to microSD] → [Save all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To save all text memos

Select [Save to microSD] → [Save all] → [Yes]/[No] and enter the Security code.

To save mail/Schedule/Bookmark/ToruCa card

In the data list, from the Function menu, select [Save to microSD] → [Yes]. To save all data, in the folder list or the calendar, from the Function menu, select [Save to microSD] and enter the Security code.

● When you save an image recorded with the camera from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, the orientation of the displayed image may differ from when it is saved in the Data Box.

## Saving Data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA Terminal

You can copy data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

### Saving the Phonebook and Mail

You can save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data to the FOMA terminal.

- While you save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data, you cannot use call or communication functions, such as placing/receiving a call and using i-mode and data communication, because the FOMA terminal is placed in the same condition as outside of the service area.
- While another function is activated, you cannot save the Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, mail, Bookmark, and ToruCa card data to the FOMA terminal.

Example: Saving the data by adding to the existing data

**1 From the microSD category list, select a category and press ■.**

**2 Select data and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Save to main] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**4 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

[Add]:

Save the data by adding to the existing data.

[Overwrite]:

Save the data by overwriting the existing data. The screen for confirming whether to delete the existing data appears.



Continued

**5 Select [Add] and press ■.**

The selected data is saved.

### Saving a Melody and Image

You can save My picture, i-motion, Melody, My document, and MM File data to the FOMA terminal.

Example: Saving one data item

**1 From the microSD category list, select a category and press ■.**

**2 Select data and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Save to main] → [Save one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected data is saved in the [Data exchange] folder.

To save several data

Select [Save to main] → [Select&save] and select data. Press i (Complete) and select [Yes].

To save all data

Select [Save to main] → [Save all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To save a file of the still image/movie file list displayed in the Camera mode

In the file list, move the cursor to a file and from the Function menu, select [Save to main] → [Save one] → [Yes]. The selected file is saved in the [Data exchange] folder. To save several files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Save to main] → [Select&save] and select files. Press i (Complete) and select [Yes]. To save all files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Save to main] → [Save all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

● Data created on a microSD memory card compatible device other than SO906i may not be saved correctly.

# Managing the microSD memory card

## Formatting

You can format the microSD memory card to be used with the FOMA terminal.

- If you format the microSD memory card that contains data, the data is deleted. Be careful not to delete important data unintentionally when you start formatting.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the microSD category list.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Format] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**3 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

**4 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The microSD memory card is formatted.

● Do not format the microSD memory card using a PC, etc. Make sure to format it on the FOMA terminal.

## Checking the Usage Information

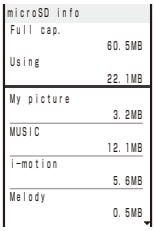
You can check the usage information of the microSD memory card.

- The displayed data amount and total capacity of the microSD memory card are estimated values that may not be accurate.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the microSD category list.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [microSD info] and press ■.**




To change the unit

Press [i] (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the MB and KB displays.

## Updating the Management Information of the microSD memory card

If you edit, add, or delete data stored in the microSD memory card on a device other than the FOMA terminal, it may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal. If this happens, update the information of the management file in the microSD memory card.

**1 Press [✉] (Func) in the microSD category list.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Update mng. info] and press ■.**

The Update mng. info display appears.

**3 Select a category to be updated, press ■, and press [i] (Complete).**

The screen for confirming whether to update the management information appears.

**4 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The management information is updated. While the management information is updated, "" appears.

- If any data in the microSD memory card has a file name that is not supported by the FOMA terminal, the file name is changed when you update the management information.
- If you update the management information while the screen for confirming whether to save the recorded images is displayed, the image that is being confirmed is discarded when the microSD memory card is set as the place to save to.

## Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC <USB mode setting>

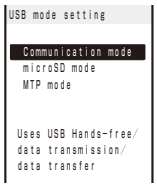
When you connect the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional), you can use it as an external drive to read/write data on the microSD memory card.

- You can change the USB mode setting before connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC.
- If the FOMA terminal is not connected to a PC correctly or the battery level is very low or 0, not only data cannot be sent/received, but also it may be lost in some cases.
- Do not unplug the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) during reading/writing data. If you do so, not only data cannot be sent/received, but also it may be lost in some cases.
- The operating environment for using the FOMA terminal connected to a PC is as follows.

| Item | Required environment |
|---|---|
| Connection cable | FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) |
| PC main unit | PC with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1 compliant) that can be used to connect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) |
| OS | Windows 2000 Professional (SP3 or later)※, Windows XP, Windows Vista (Japanese version) |

※ [Communication mode] and [microSD mode] are supported.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [USB mode setting] and press ■.**




[Communication mode]:

Perform packet and 64K data communication, and send/receive data (OBEX™ communication).

[microSD mode]:
Read and write data from/to the microSD memory card.
[MTP mode]:
Transfer music data (WMA file) from a PC to the microSD memory card.

**2 Select [microSD mode] and press ■.**

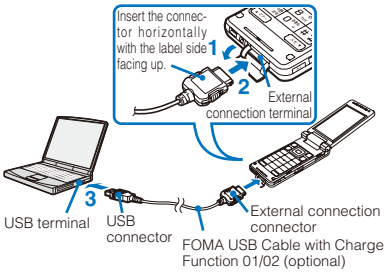
The microSD mode is set and "" changes to "". On the PC, "リムーバブル ディスク" is displayed for the microSD memory card.

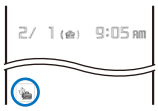
- You can check the current USB mode and connection status by the following icons.

| Icon | Mode/Connection status |
|---|---|
| | Communication mode |
| | microSD mode |
| | MTP mode (Connected) |
| | MTP mode (Transferring) |
| | MTP mode (Completed) |
| | MTP mode (Error)※ |

※It appears when the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC by the MTP mode and cannot start the connection because there is not enough memory. End the unused applications, increase memory space, and then retry the operation again.

**3 Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).**




The icon "" (USB cable cncted) appears in the stand-by display. When you press ■ (Link) and then select "", the USB mode setting display appears.

- Do not format the microSD memory card using a PC, etc. Make sure to format it on the FOMA terminal.
- Even if you set the USB mode setting to [MTP mode] or [microSD mode] and connect the FOMA terminal to a PC, the PC may not recognize the FOMA terminal while the FOMA terminal is accessing to the microSD memory card (reading/saving data, etc.) or the microSD memory card is not inserted.
- While the USB mode setting is set to [MTP mode] and the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC, when you press MENU, the Standard menu appears. The Kisekae menu is not displayed. Also, some functions may be limited.
- For more details about the USB mode setting, see the website below.
http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/so906i/faq.html

## Terminating the microSD Mode

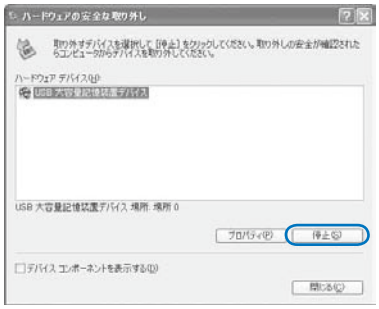
To remove the FOMA terminal from a PC, perform the procedure to safely remove the hardware on the PC in advance, which is slightly different for each OS.

Example: When using Windows XP

**1 Double-click the task tray icon [] (ハードウェアの安全な取り外し) on the Windows desktop.**

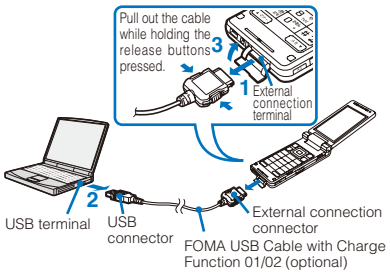


**2 Move the pointer to [USB大容量記憶装置デバイス] and click [停止].**




**3 Click [OK] and confirm that the hardware is unmounted successfully.**

**4 Remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) from the FOMA terminal and PC.**




## Copying Data from the FOMA Terminal to the UIM

You can copy up to 50 FOMA terminal phonebook entries and up to 20 SMS from the FOMA terminal to the UIM (FOMA card).

- Only the “name”, “reading”, “first phone number”, and “first mail address” can be copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook. The reading is converted from half-width katakana characters to full-width katakana characters. If “+” is included in a phone number, it is deleted.
- If a group with the same name exists in the UIM phonebook, data is saved in it and if not, data is saved in 0グループなし.
- You cannot copy the SMS report.

Example: Copying the FOMA terminal phonebook entries

**1 From the FOMA terminal phonebook, select data and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To copy all data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] → [Copy all] → [Yes] and enter the Security code.

To copy several data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] → [Select&copy] and select data. Press ▮ (Complete) and select [Yes].

To copy SMS

Move the cursor to the mail in the mail list and from the Function menu, select [Copy to UIM] → [Yes].

**2 Select [Copy to UIM] → [Copy one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected data is copied.

## Copying Data from the UIM to the FOMA Terminal

You can copy UIM (FOMA card) phonebook data and SMS from the UIM to the FOMA terminal.

- The reading of the UIM phonebook is converted from full-width katakana characters to half-width katakana characters.
- If a group with the same name exists in the FOMA terminal phonebook, data is saved in it and if not, data is saved in 0グループなし.

Example: Copying the UIM phonebook entries

**1 From the UIM phonebook, select data and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To copy all data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] → [Copy all] → [Yes] and enter the Security code.

To copy several data

From the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] → [Select&copy] and select data. Press ● (Complete) and select [Yes].

To copy SMS

Move the cursor to the mail in the mail list and from the Function menu, select [Copy to Main] → [Yes] → a folder.

**2 Select [Copy to Main] → [Copy one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected data is copied.

## Managing Data Box <Data Box>

Data handled by the FOMA terminal, such as downloaded data and data recorded using the camera, are saved in the categories of the Data Box: My picture, MUSIC, Music&Video Channel, i-motion, Melody, My document, Kisekae Tool, and Chara-den. You can display/play back saved data any time.

- You may not be able to operate some categories.

■ Data saved in the Data Box

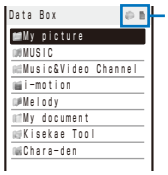
| Category | Folder name | Contents of data |
|---|---|---|
| My picture | i-mode | Images obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-αppli |
| | Camera | Images recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal and images replicated as the Mini-Photo images |
| | Deco mail image | Images that can be used when you compose Deco-mail |
| | Deco mail pict.※ | Deco-mail pictograph |
| | Stamp&Frame | Images used for stamps/frames |
| | Preinstall | Preinstalled images |
| | Data exchange | Images scanned by the bar code reader, images moved/copied from the microSD memory card, images received using infrared/iC communication, images clipped from the PDF data, and images retrieved from a PC, etc. |
| MUSIC | – | User-created original playlist, preinstalled Chaku-Uta Full®, or Chaku-Uta Full® obtained from a site |
| Music&Video Channel | Distrib. program | Program obtained from a site |

※ Only Deco mail pict. can be saved.

| Category | Folder name | Contents of data |
|---|---|---|
| i-motion | i-mode | Movie obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-αppli |
| | Camera | Movie recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal |
| | Preinstall | Preinstalled movie |
| | Playlist | User-created playlist |
| | Data exchange | Movie moved/copied from the microSD memory card, movie received using infrared/iC communication, and movie retrieved from a PC, etc. |
| Melody | i-mode | Melodies obtained from a site, i-mode mail, or i-αppli |
| | Preinstall | Preinstalled melodies |
| | Data exchange | Melodies scanned by the bar code reader, melodies moved/copied from the microSD memory card, melodies received using infrared/iC communication, and melodies retrieved from a PC, etc. |
| My document | i-mode | PDF data obtained from a site or i-mode mail |
| | Preinstall | Preinstalled PDF data |
| | Data exchange | PDF data moved/copied from the microSD memory card and PDF data received using infrared/iC communication |
| Kisekae Tool | i-mode | Kisekae tool obtained from a site |
| | Preinstall | Preinstalled Kisekae tool |
| Chara-den | — | Preinstalled Chara-den files, Chara-den files downloaded from a site |

Example: Displaying the file list in the [Preinstall] folder in My picture

### 1 Press ▲ (🗀) in the stand-by display.




Type of memory being displayed

To switch the memory contents to be displayed

Press ▮ (Chg.Mmry). Each time you press ▮, the displayed contents are switched between the microSD memory card/Data Box.

- The following icons show the type of memory being displayed.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Data Box (currently used) |
| | microSD memory card (currently used) |

### 2 Select [My picture] and press ■.




My picture folder list appears.

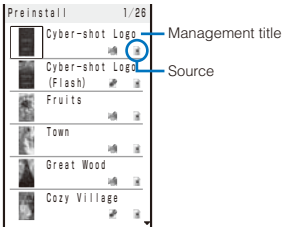
- The following icons show the status of a folder. The folder name is displayed next to the icon.

| | |
|---|---|
| (Yellow) | Preset folder |
| | i-mode |
| | Camera |
| | Deco mail image |
| | Deco mail pict. |
| | Stamp&Frame |
| | Preinstall |
| | Data exchange |
| (Blue) | User-created folder<br>● At the time of purchase, the [スーパーモンキーボール] folder is created in My picture, in which images used by i-αppli are contained. |



Continued

**3 Select [Preinstall] and press ■.**




The file list appears.

- The following icons show the source from where the file was obtained.

| Icon | Source |
|---|---|
| | Preinstalled data |
| | Data obtained from sites, i-mode mail, or i-αppli |
| | Data recorded using the camera of the FOMA terminal |
| | Data scanned by a bar code reader, data moved/copied from the microSD memory card, data received using infrared/iC communication, and data retrieved from a PC, etc. |

To display the saved date/time

Press # to switch the display temporarily between the management title and saved date/time.

● When you select [Search by i-mode] on the folder or file lists, the screen for confirming whether to connect to i-mode appears. If you select [Yes], the FOMA terminal connects to an i-mode site and you can search data.

## Setting Whether to Replicate an Image Automatically

When you move an image from the [Camera] folder in My picture of the Data Box to the microSD memory card, you can set whether to save the replicated image automatically in the Data Box (P.178).

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in My picture folder list.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Mini-Photo] → [Mini-Photo creator] and press ■.**

**3 Select [Replicate to main]/[Not replicate] and press ■.**

The Mini-Photo creator is set.

## Creating/Deleting Folders

You can create or delete a folder for saving data. Regarding the user-created folder, you can manage files by allocating them in 10 folders per category. You can also change the name of a folder.

- For MUSIC, 10 folders can be created under each folder in MUSIC.
- You can neither delete the preset folders nor change the name of them. However, the [スーパーモンキーボール] folder that is preset in My picture can be deleted and renamed.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the category folder list.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Edit folder] → [Create folder], press ■, and enter a folder name.**

Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters (seven full-width or 15 half-width characters in case of MUSIC).
The folder is added.

To change a folder name

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Edit folder name]. Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters (seven full-width or 15 half-width characters in case of MUSIC).

To delete a folder

Move the cursor to the folder and from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete folder], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]. To delete several folders, from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Select&delete], enter the Security code, and select folders. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all folders, from the Function menu, select [Edit folder] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete all data in the [WMA] folder in the microSD memory card

From the Function menu in the folder list, select [Delete all WMA], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

● When you perform the Delete all WMA, the [WM] and [WM_SYSTEM] folders of the microSD memory card and all data in the folders are deleted. Note that data which is not used for the MUSIC Player may be deleted as well.

## Moving Data to a Different Folder

You can use three methods to move data to another folder or the microSD memory card.

- You cannot move the Chara-den and data saved in the [Preinstall] folder.
- You cannot move copyrighted data if it is not permitted by the provider of this data.
- You cannot move data such as an i-motion or Kisekae tool downloaded partway to the microSD memory card.

Example: Moving data from the Data Box to the microSD memory card

### 1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder and press [■].

To move all data in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → a place to move to.

To move several data

From the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move] → a place to move to and select data. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes].

To move data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Move to main] → [Move one]. To move several data, select [Move to main] → [Select&move] and select data. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes]. To move all data, select [Move to main] → [Move all].

- You cannot perform the Select&move and Move all to move copyrighted data.

To move a Chaku-Uta Full® from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Move the cursor to a Chaku-Uta Full®, from the Function menu, select [Move to main] → a place to move to, and press [i] (Complete).

To move a file of the still image/movie file list displayed in the Camera mode

In the file list, move the cursor to a file and from the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move one] → a place to move to. To move several files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Move] → [Select&move] → a place to move to and select files. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes]. To move all files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Move] → [Move all] → a place to move to.

### 2 Select data and press [✉] (Func).

The Function menu appears.

### 3 Select [Move] → [Move one] and press [■].

The screen for selecting where to move appears.

[Data Box]:

Move data to a folder in the Data Box. To move a folder within the Data Box, select a place to save to → a folder.

[microSD]:

Move data to a folder in the microSD memory card. Copyrighted data is moved to [SO906i] of [Movable contents].

[Back to origin]:

Restore data to its original folder.

### 4 Select [microSD] and press [■].

The selected data is moved to the microSD memory card.

● When you move an image saved in My picture of the Data Box to the microSD memory card, if the Mini-Photo creator is set to [Not replicate], the replicated image is automatically saved in the Data Box (P.319).

## Deleting Data

You can delete data using three methods.

- You cannot delete some preinstalled data.

Example: Deleting one data item

**1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder and press ■.**

To delete all data in the folder

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete several data

From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select data. Press i (Complete) and select [Yes].

To delete a file of the still image/movie file list displayed in the Camera mode

In the file list, move the cursor to a file and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select files. Press i (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all files, in the file list, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select data and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected data is deleted.

## Sorting Data

Data in a folder can be sorted for display.

- You cannot sort data in MUSIC.

**1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Sort] → a sorting order and press ■.**

[Title(up)]:
Sort data by the management title in Japanese alphabetical ascending order.

[Title(down)]:
Sort data by the management title in Japanese alphabetical descending order.

[Date(new → old)]:
Sort data from newest to oldest saved date.

[Date(old → new)]:
Sort data from oldest to newest saved date.

[Size(big → small)]:
Sort data in decreasing order of file size, the largest file first.

[Size(small → big)]:
Sort data in increasing order of file size, the smallest file first.

[Originated(icon)]:
Sort data by the icon of the source in the order of "" (Preinstall) → "" (i-mode) → "" (Camera) → "" (Data exchange).

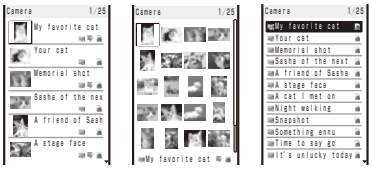
The data is listed in the selected order.

● When you sort data by titles, sorting may not be performed exactly in Japanese alphabetical order for reasons such as because some titles contain a mixture of full-width and half-width characters.

## Setting How to Display a List of Images

You can select the display style of My picture, i-motion, Music&Video Channel, and Kisekae Tool file lists using the following three methods. The set display style is applied to all folders.

6 images | 20 images | List only



Display by 6 images | Display by 20 images | Display in the list form

**1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

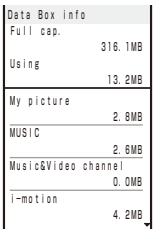
**2 Select [Change display] → the display style and press ■.**

The display style of a file list is set.

## Displaying the Data Box/Data Information

### Displaying the Data Box Information

**1 Press ✉ (Property) in the Data Box.**




To change the unit

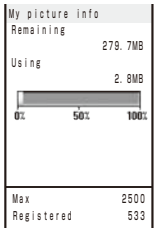
Press i (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the MB and KB displays.

### Displaying Information of Folders in Data Box

**1 From the Data Box, select a category, press ■, and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Folder info] and press ■.**




To change the unit

Press i (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the MB and KB displays.

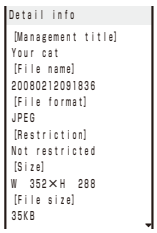
● Data in the [Distrib. program] folder of Music&Video Channel are not counted.

### Displaying/Editing Data Information

You can change the data management title and file name, and set file restrictions. The management title is displayed in the file list.

- You may not be able to edit the detailed information of some preinstalled data.

**1 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder and press ■. Select a data item and press i (Detail) or ch (Detail).**

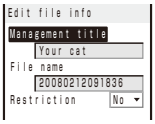



The detailed information of data appears.



Continued

**2 Press [i] (Edit).**




For Chaku-Uta Full®

Press [ch] (Edit). Edit each item. To reset each item, move the cursor to an item, and press [ch] (Reset).

- You can enter a management title at [Management title] within 25 full-width or 50 half-width characters.

**3 Enter a title at [Management title].**

Enter a title within 18 full-width or 36 half-width characters.

To reset the management title

Press [ch] (Rset Ttl).

- You can reset the management title only of the data that has an original title to be displayed.

**4 Enter a file name at [File name].**

Enter a file name within 36 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- You cannot use half-width symbols " ✳ / : < > ? ¥ | . You cannot enter "." at the beginning of a file name.

**5 Select [Yes]/[No] at [Restriction].**

[Yes]:

Set file restriction. Once you send the file as a mail attachment, it cannot be sent or forwarded from the recipient's FOMA terminal.

[No]:

Do not set file restriction.

**6 Press [i] (Complete).**

- The image size expressed in width×height at [Size] in the Detail info display is based on the orientation of an image in which it is saved. Since an image recorded while the Auto orientation is set to [ON] is displayed rotated according to the orientation of the FOMA terminal held when it is recorded, the orientation of the displayed image may differ from expressed at [Size] (P.151, 179).

## ■ List of display items and items that can be edited

◎: Can be edited　○: Display only　－: Not displayed

| Display item | My picture | | | Chaku-Uta Full® | Music&Video Channel | | | Movie/ i-motion | Melody | My document | Chara-den | Kisekae Tool | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | JPEG | GIF | SWF | | Program | Chapter (Chaku-Uta Full®) | Chapter (Movie/ i-motion) | | | | | | |
| Management title | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ | － | － | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ | Title to be displayed on the FOMA terminal |
| File name | ◎ | ◎ | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | ◎ | ◎ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Name of file to be displayed when the mail has a data attachment. |
| Original title | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | － | ○ | ○ | Original title |
| File format | ○ | ○ | － | ○ | ○ | － | － | ○ | ○ | ○ | － | － | File type |
| Restriction | ◎ | ◎ | ◎ | ○ | ○ | － | － | ◎ | ◎ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Whether the file can be sent or forwarded from the recipient's FOMA terminal when it is sent as a mail attachment<br>• You may not be able to change the restriction for an i-motion and melody obtained from a site, etc.<br>• You cannot change the restriction for a frame image and stamp image. |
| Size | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | ○ | － | Data display size<br>• This item is not displayed for i-motion with sound track only (i-motion without video track, such as singer's voice). |
| File size | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Data file size |
| Mail attach size | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | File size of an Exif-format file excluding the size of its thumbnail |
| Replay restriction | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | Playback restriction |
| Ring tone | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | Whether setting as the ring tone is permitted |
| Receive display | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | Whether setting as the receive display is permitted |
| Full song ring tone | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Whether setting as the Full song ring tone is permitted※1 |
| Point ring tone | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Whether setting as the Point ring tone is permitted※1 |
| Savable Jacket image | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | With/without a CD jacket image that can be saved※1 |
| Savable Image | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | With/without a stand-by display image that can be saved※1 |
| Savable Lyric | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | With/without a song image that can be saved※1 |
| Title | － | － | － | ◎ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Track title |
| Artist | － | － | － | ◎ | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | Name of artist |
| Album | － | － | － | ◎ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Name of album |
| Year | － | － | － | ◎ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Year composed (Christian calendar) |
| Genre | － | － | － | ◎ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Genre |
| Comment | － | － | － | ◎ | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | Comment |
| Track number | － | － | － | ◎ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Track number in the album and the total number of tracks |
| Music by | － | － | － | ○ | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | Name of composer |
| Lyric by | － | － | － | ○ | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | Name of lyricist |
| Rights holder | － | － | － | ○ | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | Copyright holder |
| Selling agency | － | － | － | ○ | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | Distributor |
| Rights information | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | Copyright information |
| Label | － | － | － | ○ | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | Album label |
| URL※2 | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | URL information |
| Creator | － | － | － | － | ○ | － | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | Author information of a file |
| Copyright | － | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | Copyright information of a file |
| Description | － | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | Description of a file |
| Video | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | Yes/No (with/without video track)/Not supported※1 |
| Audio | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | Format and bit rate for Chaku-Uta Full®, Audio format/No (without sound track)/Not supported for movies※1 |
| Text | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | － | － | － | － | Yes/No (with/without text track) |
| Play time | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | Estimated playback time |
| Originated | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | － | － | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Source from where the file is obtained |
| Download date | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | － | － | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Date on which the file was saved |
| Create date | ○ | ○ | － | － | － | － | － | － | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Date on which the file was created |



Continued

| Display item | My picture | | | Chaku-Uta Full® | Music&Video Channel | | | Movie/ i-motion | Melody | My document | Chara-den | Kisekae Tool | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | JPEG | GIF | SWF | | Program | Chapter (Chaku-Uta Full®) | Chapter (Movie/ i-motion) | | | | | | |
| Move to microSD | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Yes/Yes(Same model only)/No/Unknown for transferring data to the microSD memory card※1<br>• [Yes(Same model only)] indicates that the data can be moved only when the same model as used for obtaining the data is used. |
| Record time | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | Recording time |
| Setting | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | — | ○ | ○ | Type of stand-by display or ring tone currently set |
| Shooting date | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Date on which the image was recorded |
| Digitized date | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Date on which the image was edited |
| AE | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | The value that indicates the amount of light passing through a lens (F4/F2.8). |
| Shutter speed | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Period during which light is stored in CMOS |
| EV | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | EV correction |
| ISO | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | The value that indicates the level of sensitivity to light (equivalent to the ISO sensitivity of a film). |
| Photometry | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Photometry mode |
| Time link distribution | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Set or not the playback starting time, Program repeat interval |
| Move restriction | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Whether saving again is permitted |
| FF restriction | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | With/without a fast-forward restriction |
| Rew restriction | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | With/without a rewined restriction |
| Chapter skip restriction | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | With/without a chapter skip restriction |
| Chapter back restriction | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | With/without a chapter back restriction |
| Program image | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Program image |
| Program title | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Program title |
| Distributor | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Distributor |
| Program size | — | — | — | — | ○ | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Memory space saved for the delivery area |

※1 Depending on the data, the displayed contents may not represent exact information about it.

※2 For the Chaku-Uta Full®, it is displayed as “URL info”.

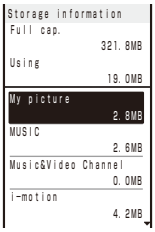
- When there is no information for the displayed item, “unknown” or a blank is indicated.
- Even if “◎: Can be edited” is indicated for an item in the above table, you may not be able to change some of the data.
- Detailed information of data saved in the microSD memory card may be different from the information displayed on the FOMA terminal.

## Checking the Memory of the FOMA Terminal <Storage information>

You can display the memory use status of the FOMA terminal. You can also check the volume used up by the category-specific Data Box and i-αppli memories.

- The displayed data amount is an estimated value and not accurate.

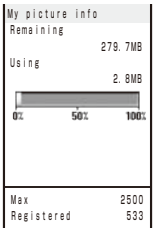
**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Storage info] and press ■.**




To change the unit

Press i (Unit chg) to switch temporarily between the MB and KB displays.

**2 Select an item and press ■.**




● Preinstalled i-αppli, [Deco mail pict.] and [スーパーモンキーボール] folders in My picture, and data of MUSIC and My document are included in the data amount.

## In Case of Insufficient Memory

If there is not enough memory when you save or download data or software in My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, melody, My document, Chara-den, and Kisekae Tool of the Data Box, or i-αppli, select and delete data that is no longer required from the same category, allocate the save area, and then save the new data/software.

Example: When there is not enough memory while downloading software

**1 Download the software.**

The screen informing memory shortage appears.

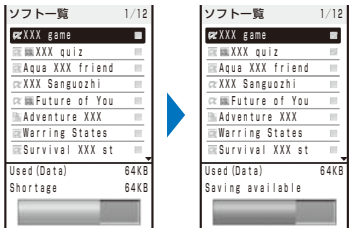
[Sel. delete data]:
Delete unnecessary software and continue to download the software.

[Cancel]:
Cancel downloading.

**2 Select [Sel. delete data] and press ■.**




**3 Select a folder → software and press ■.**




To cancel the selection

Press ■ (Rel.).

**4 Press [i] (Delete), select [Yes], and press [■].**

The selected software is deleted and then downloading starts.

● If you delete preinstalled Chara-den files, it does not help you increase the save area.

## What is the Infrared Communication? <Infrared communication>

You can send and receive the Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Bookmark, mail, image, movie, melody, PDF data, and ToruCa card to/from a mobile phone equipped with the infrared communication function. To send/receive all entries, you need a 4-digit authentication password preset with a communication target recipient/sender.

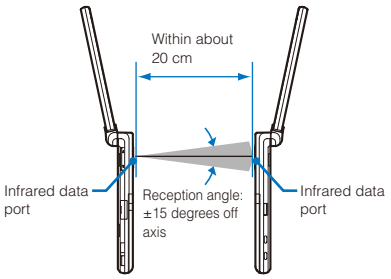
The FOMA terminal can also do much more in conjunction with other devices equipped with the infrared communication function by using the infrared communication feature of i-αppli.

- There are some data that cannot be exchanged even if the other device is equipped with the infrared communication function.
- The infrared communication of the FOMA terminal follows IrMC™ version 1.1. Even if the other device follows IrMC™ version 1.1, there may be data that cannot be exchanged properly depending on the software.
- You cannot perform infrared communication during a call or i-mode/packet/64K data communication, or when the Lock all, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Lock key, or Self mode is set.
- During the infrared communication, the status of the FOMA terminal is the same as the outside of the service area status. Therefore, you cannot place a call or perform i-mode and data communication.
- When the other device does not support IrSimple™ function, the communication speed slows.
- The infrared receiving function of the FOMA terminal and infrared sending function of contents of the Data Box support IrSimple™ function.
- JPEG images saved in My picture of the Data Box can be sent by using the high-speed infrared communication (IrSimpleShot™ function※) (P.330).

※IrSimpleShot™ function is the one-way communication function (Home Appliance Profile) that is compliant with IrSimple™ function.

## Using the Infrared Communication

- The FOMA terminal and the other device can be used within about 20 cm apart. The infrared data port must be kept pointed at the other device until the data exchange ends.
- If used under direct sunlight, fluorescent lamp or near other infrared devices, the infrared data exchange may not function properly.



# Data That Can Be Sent/Received via Infrared Communication

You can send and receive your Own number, Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Bookmark, mail, image, movie, melody, PDF data, and ToruCa card between mobile phones and other devices equipped with the infrared communication function.

- It may take time to exchange or save data depending on the data size.
- Data received using the infrared communication may not be displayed/played back properly.

| Type of data | Reception | | Transmission | | Storage for received data | Items that cannot be sent/received, etc. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | One item | All items | One item | All items | | |
| Own number | × | – | ○ | – | FOMA terminal phonebook※1 | • You cannot send Additional No.1 and No.2 and images.<br>• Data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF]. |
| FOMA terminal phonebook | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | FOMA terminal phonebook※1 | • You cannot send Des call display, Des substitute image, Des phone tone, Des mail tone, Select phone Illum., and Select mail Illum.<br>• When you send one data item, the group number, group name, memory number, and data of the PushTalk phonebook are not sent. Data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF].<br>• When all data is sent/received, the data of the PushTalk phonebook is also sent/received.<br>• When all data is sent/received, the first Phonebook entry is sent/received as the Own number. |
| UIM phonebook | ○ | ○ | × | × | FOMA terminal phonebook※1 | • When you receive one data item, the group name is not transmitted. |
| Schedule | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Schedule※2 | • You cannot send ON/OFF of the holiday setting for a repeated schedule.<br>• When you send one data item, the data is sent by setting the Secret to [OFF]. |
| Text memo | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Text Memo※3 | – |
| Bookmark | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | Bookmark※4 | • You cannot send/receive a folder name. |
| Mail Received | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | [Inbox]※5 | • You cannot send a folder name, i-αppli To link, and file attachment not yet obtained.<br>• Mail exceeding 100K bytes is sent until the size being sent reaches 100K bytes after deleting a file attachment, etc.<br>• Protected mail and i-αppli mail are sent as regular mail.<br>• You cannot send the SMS report . |
| Sent | | | | | [Outbox]※5 | |
| Saved | | | | | [Draft]※5 | |
| JPEG/GIF image/Flash movie | ○ | × | ○ | × | [Data exchange] folder in My picture ※4 | • You cannot receive an image exceeding 2M bytes.<br>• You cannot receive a GIF image and a GIF animation exceeding [UXGA(1600×1200)] and [Stby(480×864)] respectively, and some JPEG images.<br>• You cannot send a frame image, stamp image. |
| Movie/i-motion | ○ | × | ○ | × | [Data exchange] folder in i-motion※4 | • You cannot receive a movie/i-motion exceeding 10M bytes and that with playback restriction. |
| Melody | ○ | × | ○ | × | [Data exchange] folder in Melody※4 | • You cannot receive a melody exceeding 200K bytes. |
| PDF data | ○ | × | ○ | × | [Data exchange] folder in My document※4 | • You cannot receive PDF data exceeding 2M bytes.<br>• You cannot send PDF data that you downloaded by page or failed to download.<br>• The document definition file is sent together with PDF data. |
| ToruCa | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | [ToruCa] folder in ToruCa※4 | • You cannot receive a ToruCa and ToruCa(detail) card exceeding 1K bytes and 100K bytes respectively.<br>• You may not be able to send some ToruCa cards. |

- When you send/receive bookmark or mail data, the folder allocation setting may not be applied depending on the terminal model of a caller/recipient.
- When you send mail data, all of the title may not be displayed depending on the recipient's terminal.
- You cannot send data saved in the microSD memory card except JPEG images. To send JPEG images, you can use the infrared communication or high-speed infrared communication (IrSimpleShot™ function).
- You cannot send/receive a file prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

※1 Saved in a memory space with the smallest vacant memory number.
※2 Saved in the order of date and time when they start.
※3 Saved in the order of date and time when they were created.
※4 Saved at the top of the list.
※5 Saved in the order of date and time when they were received/sent/saved.

# Receiving Data Using the Infrared Communication <Receive Ir data>

## Receiving Data

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Receive Ir data] → [Receive] and press ■.**

"" changes to "" and the screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

**2 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The infrared communication is started and data exchange is started.
The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The received data is saved.

When you receive Phonebook data

The screen for confirming whether to save data in the PushTalk phonebook appears. If you select [Yes], the data is saved in both the PushTalk and FOMA terminal phonebooks. If you select [No], the data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook only. When there are several phone numbers, select the phone number to be saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

## Receiving All Data

- It is necessary that you and the sender determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

Example: Adding received data

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Receive Ir data] → [Receive all] and press ■.**

"" changes to "".




[Add]:
Save received data by adding to the existing data.

[Overwrite]:
The screen for confirming whether to delete the existing data appears. Note that all existing data is deleted if you select [Yes].

**2 Select [Add] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**3 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The Authentication password screen appears.

**4 Enter the authentication password.**

The screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

**5 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The infrared communication is started. Data exchange is started and the data is added to the existing data.

To cancel receiving

Press ✉ (Cancel).

# Sending Data Using the Infrared Communication <Send Ir data>

## Sending Data

**1 Select data to be sent and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Send Ir data] and press ■.**

"" changes to "" and the screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

To send data from the still image file list in My picture of the Data Box or displayed in the Camera mode

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Send Ir data] → [Send Ir data].

To send a still image displayed in the Camera mode

From the Function menu, select [ ](Send data) → [ ](Send Ir data).

To send a movie displayed in the Camera mode

From the Function menu, select [ ](Send data) → [ ](Send Ir data).

To send one entry in the Phonebook/Text Memo

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [Send Ir data] → [Send Ir data].

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The infrared communication is started and data exchange is started.

## Sending All Data

- It is necessary that you and the receiver determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

**1 Press [Func] (Func) in the folder list of data to be sent.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Send all Ir data] and press [●].**

"" changes to "" and the Security code screen appears.

To send all entries in the Phonebook/Text Memo
From the Function menu in the list of data, select [Send Ir data] → [Send all Ir data].

To send all entries in the Schedule
From the Function menu in the calendar display, select [Send all Ir data].

To send all ToruCa cards
From the Function menu in the folder list, select [Send all Ir data] → [Yes] → [Yes].

**3 Enter the Security code and press [●] (OK).**

The Authentication password screen appears.

**4 Enter the authentication password.**

The screen for confirming whether to begin the infrared communication appears.

**5 Select [Yes] and press [●].**

The infrared communication is started and data exchange is started.

To cancel sending
Press [Cancel] (Cancel).

## Sending a Still Image Using the High-Speed Infrared Communication

You can send a JPEG image saved in My picture of the Data Box or microSD memory card to the IrSimpleShot™ function-compatible devices using the high-speed infrared communication.

- IrSimpleShot™ function is the one-way communication, so send data without checking the answer from the receiver. Therefore, the sender side is completed normally even if the receiver cannot receive data.

Example: Sending an image in My picture of the Data Box

**1 From My picture file list, select an image and press [Func] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Send Ir data] → [Send IrSS] and press [●].**

"" changes to "" and the screen for confirming whether to begin the IrSimpleShot™ communication appears.

To send a still image displayed in the Camera mode
From the Function menu, select [ ](Send data) → [ ](Send IrSS).

To send an image in the microSD memory card
Select [Send IrSS].

**3 Select [Yes] and press [●].**

The high-speed infrared communication is started and data transfer begins.
After completing to send data, the screen informing the completion appears.

**4 Select [End] and press [●].**

The high-speed infrared communication ends.

To send the same data again
Select [Retry].

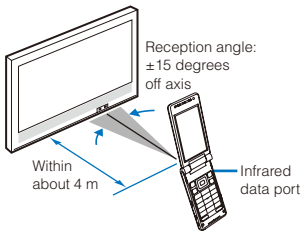
## Using the Infrared Remote Control

Once infrared remote control software is downloaded from a site and saved in the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal can be used as the TV or DVD player remote control.

- To use the infrared remote control, it is necessary to download the software corresponding to the target equipment. Even if the corresponding software is used, some equipment may not be operated.
- The infrared remote control key operations vary depending on the software.

### ■ Remote control operation

When using this function, point the FOMA terminal's infrared data port at the remote control receiver of the TV or DVD player and operate the FOMA terminal within about 4 m remote control range. Note that communication may be affected by the target equipment or ambient brightness.



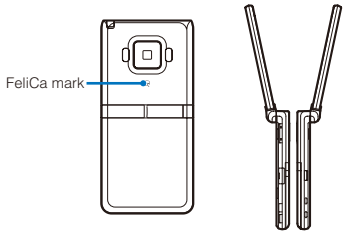

## What is iC Communication Function?

You can send and receive data by placing the FOMA terminal provided with the iC communication function over the FeliCa mark of another FOMA terminal.

- Data that can be sent and received by iC communication is the same as the data exchanged using infrared communication (P.328).
- You cannot perform the iC communication during a call, i-mode/packet/64K data/infrared communication, or when the Lock all, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Lock key, Self mode, or IC card lock is set.
- To receive data using iC communication, make sure that the FOMA terminal is in stand-by status. You cannot receive data when operation of another function is in progress.
- During the iC communication, the status of the FOMA terminal is the same as the outside of the service area status. Therefore, you cannot place a call or perform i-mode and data communication.
- Data may not be sent/received depending on the recipients' terminals. In this case, move the FOMA terminals so that both FeliCa marks "" are closer or farther together, or move the FOMA terminals ups and downs or back and forth.
- When you send mail data, all of the title may not be received depending on the recipient's terminal.

### Performing iC Communication

- Place the FeliCa mark "" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal. Do not move either of the FOMA terminals until the data exchange is completed.



# Receiving Data Using iC Communication

## Receiving Data

**1 Place the FeliCa mark "" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal in the stand-by display on both terminals.**

The vibrator vibrates and the FeliCa Sign lights.
"" changes to "" and data exchange is started.
The screen for confirming whether to save data appears.

**2 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The received data is saved.

When you receive Phonebook data

The screen for confirming whether to save data in the PushTalk phonebook appears. If you select [Yes], the data is saved in both the PushTalk and FOMA terminal phonebooks. If you select [No], the data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook only. When there are several phone numbers, select the phone number to be saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

## Receiving All Data

- It is necessary that you and the sender determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

Example: Adding received data

**1 Place the FeliCa mark "" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal in the stand-by display on both terminals.**

The vibrator vibrates and the FeliCa Sign lights.
"" changes to "".




[Add]:
Save received data by adding to the existing data.

[Overwrite]:
The screen for confirming whether to overwrite the existing data with the received data appears. Note that all existing data is deleted if you select [Yes].

**2 Select [Add] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**3 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The Authentication password screen appears.

**4 Enter the authentication password.**

Data exchange is started and the data is added to the existing data.

To cancel receiving

Press (Cancel).

# Sending Data Using iC Communication

## Sending Data

**1 Select data to be sent and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [iC transmission] and press ■.**

"" changes to "" and the screen for confirming whether to begin data exchange appears.

To send a still image/movie displayed in the Camera mode

From the Function menu, select [ ](Send data) → [ ](iC transmission).

To send one entry in the Phonebook/Text Memo

Move the cursor to the data and from the Function menu, select [iC transmission] → [iC transmission].

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The message "Place over another one" appears.

**4 Place the FeliCa mark "" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal.**

The FeliCa Sign lights.
Data exchange is started.



Continued

## Sending All Data

- It is necessary that you and the receiver determine the 4-digit authentication password beforehand.

**1 Press [Mail] (Func) in the folder list of data to be sent.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [iC trans.(all)] and press [●].**

"" changes to "" and the Security code screen appears.

To send all entries in the Phonebook/Text Memo

From the Function menu in the list of data, select [iC transmission] → [iC trans.(all)].

To send all entries in the Schedule

From the Function menu in the calendar display, select [iC trans.(all)].

**3 Enter the Security code and press [●] (OK).**

The Authentication password screen appears.

**4 Enter the authentication password.**

The screen for confirming whether to begin data exchange appears.

**5 Select [Yes] and press [●].**

The message "Crossover the with counterpart" appears.

**6 Place the FeliCa mark "" of the FOMA terminal over that of the other terminal.**

The FeliCa Sign lights.
Data exchange is started.

To cancel sending

Press [Mail] (Cancel).

## Displaying PDF Data

<My document>

You can display PDF data saved in My document of the Data Box or microSD memory card. You can also download PDF-compatible data from a site to the FOMA terminal and display/save it.

- It may take time to display some PDF data. Note also that PDF data written in a format incompatible with the PDF-compatible viewer or containing a complicated design may not be displayed correctly.
- To display PDF data protected with a password, you need to enter the password.

**1 Press [▲] (📁) in the stand-by display, select [My document], and press [●].**

My document folder list appears.

**2 Select a folder and press [●].**



Management title

My document file list appears.

- The following icons show the type of PDF data.

| Icon | Type |
|---|---|
| | PDF data retrieved all pages |
| (White) | PDF data retrieved in pages |
| (Gray) | PDF data that you canceled retrieving or could not retrieve |

- "" appears on the upper right of the icon for PDF data prohibited from being retrieved out of the FOMA terminal.

**3 Select PDF data and press ■.**




©SEGA

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Display the data in original size or by adjusting the page width to the display size | Press ■ (Fit/Tr img). |
| Scroll | Use ▲ ▼ / ◀ ▶. |
| Zoom in | Press 3. |
| Zoom out | Press 1. |
| Move to previous page | Press 4 or ▲マナー. |
| Move to the specified page | Press 5, enter a page number, and press ■ (OK). |
| Move to next page | Press 6 or メモ▼. |
| Rotate counterclockwise by 90 degrees | Press 7. |
| Rotate clockwise by 90 degrees | Press 9. |
| Turn on/off the Ratio/Page No. | Press *. |
| Turn on/off the scrollbar display | Press #. |
| Display the list of key operations | Press 🖧 (Help). |

To change the page layout

From the Function menu, select [Page layout] → [Single page]/[Continuous]/[Continuous-facing].

To move to the first/last page

From the Function menu, select [Move page] → [First page]/[Last page].

To use a link

From the Function menu, select [Display link].

- You can use a link set in PDF data to use the Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions and move to another page within the PDF data.

To display the detailed information

From the Function menu, select [Property].

To save PDF data

From the Function menu, select [Save] → a place to save to.

To download all PDF data that you downloaded by page

From the Function menu, select [Download all] → [Yes].

● If you have deleted preinstalled PDF data, you can download it from "PlayNow by SO".
[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [PlayNow by SO] (Japanese only)

## Setting How to Display PDF Data

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the PDF data display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Detail info disp] and press ■.**

The Disp detail info display appears.

[Ratio/Page No.]:
Set whether to display the ratio and page no.

[Scroll bar]:
Set whether to display the scroll bar.

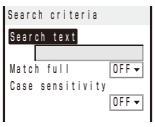
**3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Ratio/Page No.].**

**4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Scroll bar].**

The Detail info disp is set.

## Searching a Character String of PDF Data

**1 Press [i] (Search) in the PDF data display.**




[Search text]:
Enter a character string you want to search for.

[Match full]:
Set whether to search for an exact character string match.

[Case sensitivity]:
Set whether to distinguish uppercase and lowercase characters.

**2 Enter a character string at [Search text].**

Enter a character string within eight full-width or 16 half-width characters.

**3 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Match full].**

**4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Case sensitivity].**

**5 Press [i] (OK).**

The searched character string is displayed in reverse video.

To display the previous/next search result
Press [✉] (Back)/ [i] (Next).

## Using a Bookmark/Mark

Once you save a bookmark or mark in pages that you use frequently, you can display the linked page by simply selecting the bookmark or mark. You can save a mark for the number of the currently displayed page and location in the page. Some PDF data is preset with bookmarks or marks.

- The two types of bookmarks that you can use are as follows.
  - Bookmark: Saved in PDF data in advance. You cannot change it.
  - i bookmark: You can add/delete this bookmark.

### Adding an i Bookmark/Mark

You can add up to 10 i bookmarks and marks each.

Example: Adding an i bookmark

**1 In the PDF data display, display the page for which you want to add an i bookmark and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To add a mark
From the Function menu, select [Mark] → [Add mark]. "▷" appears at the location where the mark is added.

**2 Select [Bookmark] → [Add i bookmark] and press [■].**

The i bookmark is added.

● The i bookmarks/marks that you have added may be deleted if you attempt to copy them to a PC or other FOMA terminals using infrared/iC communication or the microSD memory card.

## Displaying the i Bookmark/Mark List

Example: Displaying the i bookmark list

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the PDF data display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Bookmark] → [i bookmark list] and press ■.**

The list of i bookmarks is displayed.

To display the list of marks

Select [Mark] → [Mark list].

To check the details of a bookmark/i bookmark

Press i (Confirm).

To change the title of an i bookmark

Move the cursor to the i bookmark and from the Function menu, select [Edit title]. Enter a new title within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.

To delete an i bookmark/mark

Move the cursor to the i bookmark/mark and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several i bookmarks/marks, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select i bookmarks/marks. Press i (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all i bookmarks/marks, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**3 Select an i bookmark and press ■ (Disp).**

The page set with the i bookmark appears.

## Clipping a Still Image

You can clip a part of the currently displayed PDF data and save it as a JPEG image.

- You may not be able to clip an image of some PDF data.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the PDF data display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Capture screen] → [Yes] and press ■.**

**3 Select a folder and press ■.**

The image clip is saved in My picture of the Data Box.

# Music&Video Channel/ Music Playback

Handling the music data

- Chaku-Uta Full® and WMA (Windows Media Audio) files which are played back on the MUSIC Player are stated as “music data” in this manual.
- The FOMA terminal can play back WMA files and Chaku-Uta Full® which are protected by the copyright protection technology.
- When you download music data from a website over the Internet, make sure to check the usage conditions (licensing, prohibited acts, etc.) before you use it.
- The WMA files protected by the copyright protection technology are played back by the FOMA terminal using its own information. When the FOMA terminal's own information is changed due to malfunction, repair, or change, the existing WMA files may not be played back again.
- Under no condition will DoCoMo be held liable for handling CCCD (copy controlled CD) or when music data cannot be converted to a WMA file or other file format.
- Music data saved in the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card is used only for your personal use. Please take care that you never violate other party's intellectual property right and other rights such as copyright when you use it. Also, do not copy or move music data saved in the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to a PC or other devices.


What is Music&Video Channel? ..... 338
Setting a Program..... 338
Playing Back a Program ..... 340
Playing Back a Program from the Data Box ..... 342

**■Listening to Music**

What is MUSIC Player? ..... 342
Transferring Music Data..... 343
Downloading Chaku-Uta Full® ..... 344
Playing Back Music Data..... 345
Managing the Playlist ..... 348
Changing the MUSIC Player Settings..... 349

## What is Music&Video Channel?

Music&Video Channel is a service that a music program of up to one hour is automatically distributed during the night only by setting your favorite channel in advance. You can also enjoy high-quality movie programs up to 30 minutes. Programs are updated regularly and you can enjoy the distributed program anytime such as during commuting time to work or school.

### ■Before using the Music&Video Channel service

- Music&Video Channel is a paid service that requires a subscription. (To apply for the Music&Video Channel service, the subscriptions to i-mode and Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai Full service are required.)
- The packet communication charge may be required depending on a program in addition to the Music&Video Channel service charge.
- For details on the Music&Video Channel service, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".
- After you subscribe to the Music&Video Channel service, inserting the UIM into the FOMA terminal which is incompatible with the Music&Video Channel service does not allow you to use the service. Even in this case, note that the service charge is required unless you unsubscribe from the service.
- You cannot set or download programs during international roaming.※ Stop the distribution service before you go abroad. Restart the distribution service after you come back.

  ※Note that the packet communication charge for connecting to i-mode is required when you try to set or download programs during international roaming.

## Setting a Program

When you set a desired program in advance, the program data is automatically distributed at night.

**1 From the Menu, select [Music] → [Music&Video Channel] and press ■.**




The Music&Video Channel menu appears.

[Set program]:
Connect to a site to set/cancel a program.

[Program list]:
Connect to a site that contains a program list.

[About this service]:
Connect to a site that explains about Music&Video Channel.

**2 Select [Set program] and press ■.**

**3 Operate as instructed on the display to set a program.**

For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".

- To set a program, you need to add a site which provides the Music&Video Channel service to My Menu (P.190).
- You can set two programs at a time.

## Checking/Canceling a Set Program

**1 From the Music&Video Channel menu, select [Set program] and press ■.**

**2 Operate as instructed on the display.**

You can check or cancel a set program. For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".

- Even if you cancel a set program, the site is not deleted from My Menu.

## After Setting a Program

"▦" appears in the stand-by display 12 hours before the downloading starts.
A program is automatically downloaded at night and the notification icon "▦" (Download completed) appears in the stand-by display right after downloading successfully.




To play back a program immediately
In the stand-by display, press ■ (Link) and select "▦". The Music&Video Channel menu appears.

When failed to download a program
The notification icon "✖" (Download failed) appears.

- If the communication is interrupted due to weak radio wave, etc. while downloading a program, the FOMA terminal attempts to resume the downloading up to five times at 3-minute intervals. If the program cannot be downloaded completely after the reacquisition, the FOMA terminal attempts to download the program at nighttime of the next day.
- If downloading fails because of the following reasons: outside of the service area, the terminal is powered off, the battery level is low, etc., the FOMA terminal will download the program at the next night.
- Downloading a program may take time so make sure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and used in an area where the radio wave condition is good.
- The downloaded program cannot be copied.
- Programs cannot be downloaded automatically in the following cases. Set a program again from the Music&Video Channel menu.
  - When inserting the UIM which is not the one used for setting a program
  - When inserting the UIM into another Music&Video Channel compatible FOMA terminal after setting a program.
  - When performing the Rset all data&set.
- Only one program data can be saved in per channel. When new program data is downloaded, the previously downloaded program data is deleted and cannot be played back.
- When you unsubscribe from the Music&Video channel or i-mode service, the program data in the [Distrib. program] folder may be deleted.

## Downloading a Program Manually

When failed to download a program automatically, you can download it manually.

**1 From the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program → [Yes] and press ■.**

- During certain hours of a day, you may not be able to download a program manually.
- When downloading is interrupted, the partly downloaded program until the interruption can be saved. You can operate the FOMA terminal to resume the downloading for the remaining data except during certain hours.
- You cannot re-download a program whose playback restriction has expired. You cannot also update until the next distribution date.

# Playing Back a Program

**1 From the Menu, select [Music] → [Music&Video Channel] and press [■].**




The Music&Video Channel menu appears.

- The following icons show the program type, status, and playback restrictions.

Type/status

| Icon | Type/status |
|---|---|
| | Program downloaded successfully |
| | Program failed to download/Program partly downloaded successfully |
| | Program for which the starting time of playback is set |
| | Program not yet played back |

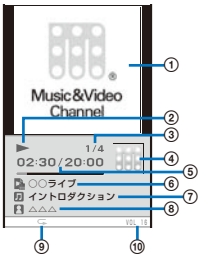
Playback restrictions

| Icon | Playback restrictions |
|---|---|
| | Program with playback restrictions |
| | Program whose time limit on playback has expired |

To display the detailed information on a program

Move the cursor to a program and press [i] (Detail).

**2 Select a program and press [■].**




① Image/movie of chapter
② Current status (Playing back/Stopping/Pausing/Forwarding/Reversing)
③ The number of the chapter being played back/The total number of chapters of the program
④ Images in the program
⑤ The elapsed playback time/The total playback time of the program
⑥ Program title
⑦ Chapter title/Original title
⑧ Name of artist/Name of composer
⑨ Repeat playback (ON/OFF)
⑩ Volume

The program is played back.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Play | Press [■] (Play). |
| Pause | Press [■] (Pause). |
| Stop | From the Function menu, select [Stop]. |
| Volume adjustment | Use [▲][▼]. |
| Beginning of the next chapter※ | Press [▶]. |
| Beginning of the current chapter※ | Press [◀]. |
| Beginning of the previous chapter※ | Press [◀] repeatedly. |
| Fast-forward | Keep pressing [▶] during playback. |
| Fast-reverse | Keep pressing [◀] during playback. |
| Full screen※ | Press [i] (Full scrn).<br>• You cannot switch the display to be full-sized when a program is a Chaku-Uta Full® file. |
| Use Web To | Press [dh] (Web to).<br>If a program contains URL information, you can connect to a site. |
| Repeat playback | From the Function menu, select [Settings] → [Repeat] → [ON]/[OFF]. |

※ You cannot operate it while stopping.

- If a program with some restrictions such as the number of playback times, period of playback, and term limitation for playback, you cannot play it back once exceeding the restrictions.
- When you select a program that failed to be downloaded, the screen for confirming whether to download the program again appears. If you select [Yes], the downloading starts. Even if the update is failed but the original program is able to be played back, the program is played back when you select [Play prev. prog].
- When you select a program partly downloaded, the screen for confirming whether to download the remaining of the program appears. If you select [Yes], the downloading starts. If you select [Play halfway], the downloaded part is played back. However, if the program has the playback starting time, you cannot play it back unless it is fully downloaded.
- When the program has the playback starting time, the time is set to play back so that you cannot play it back out of the time. The playback starts at the time on the clock set by the Auto time adjust.
- When you select a program for which the playback starting time is set before the time when it is set to start, the message "This program is unable to play at this hour" appears and shows the next playback starting time. The message "It is coming soon. Please wait for a while." appears about 60 seconds before the program starts and soon you can play it back.
- Some programs may have some limitations on pausing, skipping chapters, fast-forwarding, and fast-reversing.
- When you try to play back a program while the battery level is low, the screen for confirming whether to play it back appears. Also, when the battery level becomes low during playback, the playback is paused and the screen for confirming whether to continue to play back appears. Fully charge the battery before playback.

## Checking the Program Chapter

By displaying the program chapter list, you can check a title of each chapter, name of artist, and playback time.

**1 From the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Chapter list] and press [■].**




To display the detailed information of a chapter

Move the cursor to a chapter and press [i] (Detail).

## Deleting a Program

**1 From the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Delete] → [Yes] and press [■].**

- Even if you delete a program, the Set program is not canceled.

## Moving a Program to a Different Folder

Downloaded programs are saved in the [Distrib. program] folder in Music&Video Channel of the Data Box. Every time the program is updated, the program saved in the folder is overwritten and you cannot play back the older one. You can move the program to a different folder before the update. You can save up to 10 programs.

**1 From the Music&Video Channel menu, select a program and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Move program] → [Yes] and press [■].**

**3 Select a folder and press [i] (Complete).**

- You cannot move a downloaded program to the microSD memory card.
- The following programs cannot be moved.
  - Program which is partly downloaded
  - Program for which the playback starting time is set
  - Program whose time limit on playback has expired

## Playing Back a Program from the Data Box

You can play back a program saved in Music&Video Channel of the Data Box.

**1 Press [▲] ([🗀]) in the stand-by display, select [Music&Video Channel], and press [■].**




The list of the Music&Video Channel folders and files appears.

- For information on operations while displaying the list of folders/files, see "Managing Data Box" (P.317).

To play back a program within a folder

Select a folder and press [■].

**2 Select a program and press [■].**

The selected program is played back.

## What is MUSIC Player?

You can use the MUSIC Player to play back Chaku-Uta Full® downloaded from an i-mode site. You can also play back music data that was saved from a PC in the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal.

- You can play back music data in the background while operating other functions such as displaying a site or sending/receiving mail (Background playback).

■ Music data that can be played back

Data Box

| Place to save to | Files that can be played back | Format | Extension |
|---|---|---|---|
| MUSIC | Chaku-Uta Full® | AAC-LC/ HE-AAC | .3gp |

microSD memory card

| Place to save to | Files that can be played back | Format | Extension |
|---|---|---|---|
| [Distrib. contents] folder of MUSIC | WMA/ 3GPP | WMA/AAC-LC/ HE-AAC | .wma/ .3gp |
| [Movable contents] folder of MUSIC | Chaku-Uta Full® | AAC-LC/ HE-AAC | .SB2 |
| [WMA] folder of MUSIC | WMA | WMA | .wma |

■ Format supported for playback

| Format | Description |
|---|---|
| WMA | A sound compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation, which is employed as the Windows standard sound compression technology. |
| AAC-LC | A sound compression technology used in MPEG2 and MPEG4, enabling a high compression rate while keeping the sound quality. |
| HE-AAC | A sound compression technology used in MPEG4, which is an extended version of AAC and also employed in the Chaku-Uta Full®. |

■ Bit rate supported for playback

| File | Format | Bit rate (kbps) |
|---|---|---|
| Chaku-Uta Full® | AAC-LC | 8－128 |
| | HE-AAC(v1) | 8－128 |
| | HE-AAC(v2) | 8－48 |
| 3GPP | AAC-LC | 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 |
| | HE-AAC(v1) | 40, 48, 64, 80, 96 |
| WMA | WMA | 20－320 |

- Typically, the higher the bit rate is, the better the sound quality, however, also the larger the data size is, resulting in the smaller number of tracks that can be saved.

■Maximum number of tracks that can be stored for operation on the MUSIC Player

| Place to save to | Maximum number of tracks |
|---|---|
| Data Box | 200 |
| microSD memory card: 2G bytes | 1,500 |

- Copy-righted music data in the "WMA" format saved in the microSD memory card can only be played back on your SO906i.
- Some music data saved in the microSD memory card may not be played back on other FOMA terminals.

# Transferring Music Data

You can transfer music data from a PC to the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal using Windows Media Player or Napster® appli.

## Transferring a WMA File to a PC Using Windows Media Player

You can use Windows Media Player 10/11 to import music data from a music CD to a PC and save it in the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal.

**1 Install Windows Media Player 10/11 on your PC.**

- When installing Windows Media Player 10/11 on a PC running Windows XP, use Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later version.
- When installing Windows Media Player on a PC running Windows Vista, use Windows Media Player 11.

**2 Save a WMA file in the PC.**

For the operations on Windows Media Player 10/11, see the Help of Windows Media Player 10/11.

**3 Change the USB mode setting of the FOMA terminal to [MTP mode].**

- Follow the same steps as in "Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC" (P.314, step 1 to 3).
- Make sure to insert the microSD memory card before changing to the MTP mode.

**4 Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).**

**5 Transfer music data from Windows Media Player 10/11.**

- When you transfer a playlist, the playlist can be used as a WMA playlist on the FOMA terminal.

**6 Remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) from the FOMA terminal and PC.**

- A WMA file which is transferred to the microSD memory card by other FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played back on your SO906i.
- When you use the microSD memory card in which a WMA file is transferred by other FOMA terminal even if the USB mode setting is set to [MTP mode] and the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC, the PC may not recognize it. In this case, either perform the Delete all WMA (P.320) or format the microSD memory card (P.313). If you format the microSD memory card, please note that not only music data but also all other data are deleted.

## About Napster® appli

You can also transfer music data using Napster® appli.

- You can download Napster® appli from the website below.
  http://www.napster.jp/ (as of December 2007)
- For more information, see the website for Napster® appli below.
  http://www.napster.jp/support/ (as of December 2007)



Continued

## Directly Copying Music Data to the FOMA Terminal on a PC

The microSD memory card can be used as an external drive of a PC by connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC, allowing you to read/write data from/to the microSD memory card.
With an AAC file (.3gp), you can play it back on the MUSIC Player also by saving it directly in the microSD memory card without using Windows Media Player.

- Music data that is saved in the microSD memory card without using Windows Media Player may not be played back properly on SO906i.
- Do not delete music data that is saved in the microSD memory card using Windows Media Player by performing the direct operation of the microSD memory card.
- For details on the folder setup of the microSD memory card, see P.309.

**1 Change the USB mode setting of the FOMA terminal to [microSD mode].**

- Follow the same steps as in "Using the FOMA Terminal with a PC" (P.314, step 1 to 3).

**2 Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).**

**3 Double-click [リムーバブル ディスク] of マイ コンピュータ.**

**4 Create folders named "PRIVATE", "DOCOMO", "MMFILE", and "MUSIC" in this order.**

- You do not need to create the folders if they already exist.

**5 Save the music data in the "MUSIC" folder created.**

**6 Remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) from the FOMA terminal and PC.**

## Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®

You can download a Chaku-Uta Full® file of up to 5M bytes and save it in the Data Box or microSD memory card.

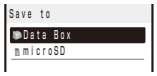
Example: Saving Chaku-Uta Full® in the Data Box

**1 While displaying a site, select a Chaku-Uta Full® and press ■.**




The Chaku-Uta Full® is downloaded to the FOMA terminal. For Uta-hodai, the information of time limit on playback is obtained and then the FOMA terminal starts to download an Uta-hodai.

**2 Select [Save] and press ■.**




[Data Box]:
Save data in MUSIC of the Data Box.

[microSD]:
Save data in [Movable contents] of MUSIC in the microSD memory card. (Insert the microSD memory card.)

To play back Chaku-Uta Full®
Select [Play].

To display detailed information
Select [File property].

**3 Select [Data Box] and press ■.**

**4 Select a folder and press i (Save).**

The downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® is saved.

● If you have deleted preinstalled Chaku-Uta Full®, you can download it from "PlayNow by SO".
[i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [PlayNow by SO] (Japanese only)

# Playing Back Music Data

You can use the MUSIC Player to play back music data saved in MUSIC of the Data Box and microSD memory card.
You can also search a song you want to listen to easily by specifying an artist, album, genre, etc. in the Music menu.

- While music data in the MUSIC Player is updated, "" appears. If another function is activated, updating the data may take time. The MUSIC Player operation may be slower while the data is being updated. While the data is updated, all tracks may not be displayed. After the update is completed, re-display the Music menu.
- It may take time to start playback of some music data.
- Jacket images may not be displayed depending on music data.
- Sound skip or noise may occur depending on the format and bit rate of music data.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to operate the MUSIC Player. If the battery level becomes low during playback, the player is stopped. Fully charge the battery before using this function.
- Do not insert/remove the microSD memory card into/from the FOMA terminal while you are playing back music data on the MUSIC Player. The playback is interrupted.
- If you receive a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call or mail, or the Alarm/Schedule alarm is activated while you are playing back music data on the MUSIC Player, the playback is interrupted and one of the above operations is performed. After the operation is completed, when you return to the MUSIC Player, the playback resumes automatically, however, with some exceptions.
- If you save a Chaku-Uta Full® or display the music folder while you are playing back music data on the MUSIC Player, the MUSIC Player is terminated.
- It may take time to display a music data list depending on music data.

Example: Playing back music data by selecting the artist

**1 From the Menu, select [Music] → [MUSIC Player] and press [■].**




- You can also activate the MUSIC Player by pressing [♫] for over a second in the stand-by display.

[Resume play]:
When there is music data that was played back last time, the current track is played back from the last stopped position. If you delete the music data, however, you cannot select [Resume play].
- When the Music menu is displayed by pressing [CLR] during playback, [To playback disp] appears. Select this option to return to the playback display.

[Shuffle all songs]:
Perform random playback of all music data.

[Albums]:
Display the list of albums. Select an album → music data.

[Artists]:
Display the list of artists. Select an artist → an album → music data.

[Genres]:
Display the list of genres. Select a genre → artist → an album → music data.

[Playlists]:
Display the playlist. Select [Original playlist]/[WMA playlist]/[Imported playlist] → a playlist → music data.

[Songs]:
Display the list of all music data. Select the music data.



Continued

[Top50]:
Display up to 50 tracks in the order of the number of the playback times, from the highest to the lowest. Select the music data.

[Recent 50]:
Display up to 50 tracks in the order of the playback date/time, from the most recent to the oldest. Select the music data.

[Saved areas]:
Select a place to save to and select the music data.

[Music settings]:
Display the menu of the Music settings.

### 2 Select [Artists] and press [■].

The artist list appears.

### 3 Select an artist → an album and press [■].

To display detailed information
Move the cursor to the music data and from the Function menu, select [Detail info].

To check the jacket
Move the cursor to the music data and from the Function menu, select [Display img].

To check the lyrics
Move the cursor to the music data and from the Function menu, select [Display lyrics].

### 4 Select music data and press [■] (Play).




Current status (During playback/Stopped)
The number in the list of the current track/The total number of tracks in the current playback list
The elapsed playback time/The total playback time of the current track
Track title
Album title
Name of artist
Status of the MUSIC Player setting

The selected music data is played back.

Operating method

| Operation | Key operation |
|---|---|
| Play | Press [■] (Play). |
| Stop | Press [■] (Stop). |
| Volume adjustment | Use [▲] [▼]. |
| Beginning of the next track | Press [▶]. |
| Beginning of the current track | Press [◀] after more than three seconds since the music starts. |
| Beginning of the previous track | Press [◀] within less than three seconds since the music starts. |
| Fast-forward | Keep pressing [▶] during playback. |
| Fast-reverse | Keep pressing [◀] during playback. |
| Switch display | Press [i]. The player screen switches between the visualizer display and jacket display. |
| Move to the previous display | Press [CLR]. |

To end the Music Player
Press [☎] to end the Music Player and go back to the stand-by display.

- Some jacket or lyric may be saved. To save it, press [i] (Save) while displaying it and select [Yes] → a folder.
- If you select [File mng. Mode] from the Function menu in the Music menu, you can stop the MUSIC Player to display the music data saved in the MUSIC folder that is to be prepared in each place to save.

## Playback Restrictions of Music Data

Some music data is set the playback restrictions. When you play back music data with playback restrictions, the different confirmation screen may appear depending on a type of music data.

### ■ Chaku-Uta Full®

When you play back music data with playback restrictions, the followings are displayed.

| Playback restriction | Display |
|---|---|
| Playback time left | "This data can be replayed XX times. Replay?" appears. Select [Yes] to play back the music data. |
| Playback time over | "This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?" appears. Select [Yes] to delete the music data. |
| Time limit on playback over | "Replay period has expired. Delete?" appears. Select [Yes] to delete the music data. |
| Before playback period | "Replay period has not yet started" appears. |

### ■ Uta-hodai

- When you play back an Uta-hodai whose time limit on playback has expired, "Some data need to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site?" or "Need to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site?" appears. Select [Yes] to update the time limit on playback. If you select [No], you cannot play back music data.
- The packet communication charge is required when updating the time limit on playback.
- When you use the FOMA terminal in other countries, the time limit on playback may expire before or after the displayed time limit.
- Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full does not cover the packet communication charge for updating the time limit on playback during international roaming.
- The playback restrictions for some Uta-hodai may be set the renewal period for a few days after the time limit on playback has expired. During the period, you can play back music data without updating the time limit on playback. After the renewal period on playback has passed, the file cannot be played back. Also, when you download music data while updating the time limit is not proceeded, playback cannot be performed before saving it.
- When the maximum number of music services (members only) which can be saved has been exceeded, the screen for confirming whether to overwrite a service appears. If you select [Yes], the new service overwrites the service which has the oldest time limit on playback. Also, you cannot play back music downloaded from the service which is overwritten.
- The date and time of the time limit information in the display which notifies the time limit on playback is displayed in Japan time.

## Setting How to Display the Music Data List

You can select how to display the music data list from two types.

- When no jacket information is available in the music data, the jacket is not displayed.

List display




Jacket display




**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the music data list display, select [Change jackets], and press ■.**

The list display is changed to the jacket display or vice versa.

# Managing the Playlist

There are three types of playlists that can be played back using the FOMA terminal.

Original playlist

The playlist is created on the FOMA terminal. You can create or edit up to 20 playlists and save up to 50 tracks of music data per file.

WMA playlist/Imported playlist

The playlist is created on an external device such as a PC. You can display up to 100 playlists. A WMA playlist or imported playlist can display up to 500 tracks or 200 tracks of music data per file, respectively. You cannot create/edit these playlists on the FOMA terminal. You can create a WMA playlist using Windows Media Player 10/11. You use an imported playlist by transferring a playlist file in the M3U format created by a PC, etc. to the microSD memory card.

## Creating a Playlist

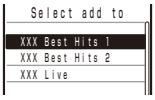
You can save your favorite music data in an original playlist.

Example: Adding and saving one track of music data in an original playlist

**1 From the music data list, select music data and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Add to playlist] → [Save one] and press .**




To create a new original playlist

Press (Create) and enter a name for the playlist. Enter the name within nine full-width and 19 half-width characters.

To save several music data

From the Function menu, select [Add to playlist] → [Select&save] → music data and press (Complete).

To save all music data

From the Function menu, select [Add to playlist] → [Save all].

**3 Select an original playlist to be saved and press .**

The screen for selecting the saving method appears.

[Add]:

Newly add selected music data to the music data saved in a playlist.

[Overwrite]:

The screen for confirming whether to overwrite all music data saved in a playlist with selected music data appears. Note that all data existing in the playlist is deleted when you select [Yes].

**4 Select [Add] and press .**

The selected music data is saved in the original playlist.

## Deleting/Reordering Music Data of the Playlist

You can delete music data from a playlist or reorder it within a playlist. Even if you delete music data from a playlist, the files of the music data are not deleted.

- You cannot delete music data from a WMA playlist/ imported playlist or reorder it.

Example: Deleting one track

**1 From the Music menu, select [Playlists] → [Original playlist] → a playlist and press .**

The music data list of the Original playlist appears.

To delete all music data

From the Function menu, select [Delete from list] → [Delete all] → [Yes].

To delete several music data

From the Function menu, select [Delete from list] → [Select&delete] → music data. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes].

**2 Select music data and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To reorder music data

From the Function menu, select [Reorder] → music data. Move the cursor to the place to move to, press [■] (Move), and press [i] (Complete).

**3 Select [Delete from list] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press [■].**

The selected music data is deleted from the playlist.

## Copying/Deleting/Editing the Name of the Playlist

You can delete a playlist or edit its name.

- You cannot copy/edit a WMA playlist or imported playlist.

Example: Deleting one playlist

**1 From the Music menu, select [Playlists] → [Original playlist] and press [■].**

A list of all playlists appears.

To delete a WMA playlist

Select [WMA playlist].

To delete an imported playlist

Select [Imported playlist].

To delete all playlists

From the Function menu, select [Delete playlist] → [Delete all] → [Yes].

To delete several playlists

From the Function menu, select [Delete playlist] → [Select&delete] → playlists. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes].

**2 Select a playlist and press [✉] (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

To edit the name of a playlist

Move the cursor to the playlist and from the Function menu, select [Edit name]. Enter a new name within nine full-width or 19 half-width characters.

To copy a playlist

Move the cursor to the playlist and from the Function menu, select [Copy Playlists] → [Yes].

To display the detailed information of a playlist

Move the cursor to a playlist and from the Function menu, select [Detail info].

**3 Select [Delete playlist] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press [■].**

The selected playlist is deleted.

# Changing the MUSIC Player Settings

**1 From the Music menu, select [Music settings], and press [■].**




**2 Select a playback mode for music data at [Play mode].**

[Normal]:

Play back the selected music data list in the order of appearance.

[Shuffle]:

Perform random playback of the selected music data list.

**3 Select the repeat type at [Repeat].**

[All tracks]:
Repeat playback of all tracks in the selected music data list.

[1 track]:
Repeat playback of the selected track.

[OFF]:
Play back only once.

**4 Select whether to restrict the playback volume at [AVLS].**

[ON]:
Restrict the playback volume. You cannot turn up the volume to level 16 or higher.

[OFF]:
Do not restrict the playback volume.

To reset the music settings to the default status
From the Music settings display, select [Reset settings] → [Yes] and enter the Security code.

# Other Convenient Functions


Multiaccess Feature ..... <Multiaccess> 352
Multitask Feature ..... <Multitask> 353
Displaying the Edit Display by Sliding the FOMA Terminal..... <Edit slide setting> 354
Using the Lifetime Calendar ..... <Lifetime Calendar> 355
Posting on a Blog..... 358
Starting the Alarm at a Specified Time ..... <Alarm> 360
Saving Schedules ..... <Schedule> 363
Performing Frequently Used Functions Quickly ..... <My Selection> 368
Setting a Function to Be Activated in the TV Style ..... <Display rotated appli> 368
Recording Recipient's or Your Own Voice ..... <Voice memo> 369
Checking the Call Duration and Charge ..... <Call duration/cost> 369
Setting the Limit for Alert on the Total Call Charge ..... <Cost limit notice> 371
Using the Calculator ..... <Calculator> 372
Using a Memo ..... <Text Memo> 372
Displaying the Settings of Various Functions ..... <Application> 373
Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch ..... <Earphone/microphone with switch> 374
Receiving a Call Automatically with Earphone ..... <Auto answer setting> 375
Setting Which Mic to Use..... <Headset microphone> 376
Resetting to the Default Settings ..... <Reset settings> 376
Deleting All Saved Data ..... <Reset all data&set> 377
List of Reset Items ..... 378

# Multiaccess Feature

<Multiaccess>

Multiaccess is a function that enables you to use a voice call, packet communication, and SMS functions at the same time.

● For multiaccess combinations, see P.435.

| | |
|---|---|
| Voice call | 1 line |
| i-mode, i-αppli, i-mode mail, and packet communication by connecting a PC | 1 line |
| SMS | 1 line |

● Charge is required for the use of each communication line during multiaccess.
● You cannot use multiaccess during a videophone call or 64K data communication, but you can receive SMS.

## Main Functions That Can Be Performed Using Multiaccess

### Starting Other Communication during a Voice Call

Example: Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

**1 Press [MENU] (MENU) during a voice call and press [MENU] (New TASK).**

The menu display appears.

**2 Select [i-mode] → [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) and press [■].**

You can access i-mode while the call is being connected.

To send mail
Select [Mail] → [Compose message] and compose mail and send it.

To perform packet communication using a connected PC
Establish connection for packet communication using PC operation.

To switch the display
Press [MENU] (MENU) and select a task icon.

### Receiving Mail during a Voice Call




You receive mail while the call is being connected.

● If you receive i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F while you are talking on the phone, the ring tone, incoming indicator, and vibrator do not operate.

### Placing a Voice Call during i-mode/Packet Communication

Example: Placing a voice call during i-mode

**1 Press [MENU] (MENU) during i-mode or packet communication.**

The menu display appears and the cursor moves to the TASK MENU.

**2 Select "[■] (Stand-by) and press [■].**




**3 Enter a phone number and press [↶].**

Place a voice call while you continue to use i-mode or packet communication.

To switch the display during a call
Press [MENU] (MENU) and select a task icon.

● When you place a videophone call while i-mode is being used, the i-mode connection is disconnected and your videophone call is placed.

## Receiving a Voice Call during i-mode/ Packet Communication

**1 When you receive a call, press [ ].**

When you receive a voice call, the receive call display appears.
You can answer a voice call while you continue to use i-mode or packet communication.

To switch the display during a call
Press [MENU] (MENU) and select a task icon.

# Multitask Feature <Multitask>

Multitask is a function that enables you to perform several functions at the same time, each of which you can access by switching the displays.

- For multitask combinations, see P.437.

## Using the Display during the Multitask Operation




/ / : One/two/three or more tasks are being executed. ( changes to while playback is in progress on the MUSIC Player)

TASK MENU
Press [MENU] (MENU) to display the TASK MENU.

■ Task icons

| Icon | Function name | Icon | Function name |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Stand-by | | Viewer |
| | Phone<br>Phone number entry | | easy BlogUp |
| | PushTalk<br>Dial PushTalk | | Music slide show |
| | Camera | | i-mode |
| | Movie | | i-Channel |

| Icon | Function name | Icon | Function name |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Mail/i-mode common setting<br>i-mode setting<br>Settings<br>Storage information<br>USB mode setting<br>Input method setting | | Data Box |
| | | | MUSIC Player |
| | | | Music&Video Channel |
| | Full Browser | | Music&Video Channel Download |
| | Mail<br>Display mail<br>Message | | IC card |
| | | | ToruCa |
| | Mail box | | Own number |
| | Compose message | | Bar code reader |
| | Compose SMS | | microSD |
| | Templates | | Lifetime Calendar |
| | Receive mail<br>Check new messages<br>Receive SMS<br>Check new SMS<br>Data transmission | | Alarm setting |
| | | | Alarm |
| | | | Schedule |
| | Mail setting | | Schedule alarm |
| | i αppli | | Text Memo |
| | Phonebook | | Calculator |
| | Call record | | Data Security Service |
| | PushTalk phonebook | | GPS |
| | Record message | | NW Services |



Continued

## Activating a New Function

**1 Press [MENU] (MENU) during the activation of a function.**



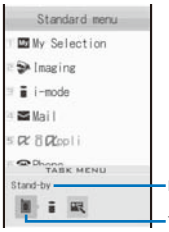

**2 Press [MENU] (New TASK).**

**3 From the Menu, select a new function and press [■].**

## Switching Functions

While running multiple functions, you can switch to the display that provides access to the function you want to use.

**1 Press [MENU] (MENU).**




**2 Use [◀] [▶] to select a task icon and press [■].**

The selected function display appears.

## Stopping All Functions Currently Activated

**1 Press [MENU] (MENU).**

**2 Press [i] (Quit all).**

**3 Select [Yes] and press [■].**

All functions currently activated are stopped.

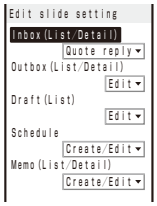
● When you execute multiple functions, you can press [↩] to quit the current function.

## Displaying the Edit Display by Sliding the FOMA Terminal <Edit slide setting>

You can set to display the Edit mail display, Edit schedule display, and Edit Text Memo display just by sliding the FOMA terminal to open.

Example: Displaying the Edit mail display for replying from Inbox

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Slide setting] → [Edit slide setting] and press [■].**




[Inbox(List/Detail)]:
Set whether to display the Edit mail display for replying when you open the FOMA terminal in the received mail list or Inbox display.

[Outbox(List/Detail)]:
Set whether to display the Edit display of sent mail when you open the FOMA terminal in the sent mail list or Outbox display.

[Draft(List)]:
Set whether to display the Edit display of saved mail when you open the FOMA terminal in the saved mail list or Draft display.

[Schedule]:
Set whether to display the Edit schedule display when you open the FOMA terminal in the Calendar of the Schedule, schedule list, or Schedule detail display.

[Memo(List/Detail)]:
Set whether to display the Edit Text Memo display when you open the FOMA terminal in the text memo list or Text Memo display.

**2 Select [Quote reply]/[Reply] at [Inbox(List/Detail)].**

[Quote reply]:
Quote the main body.

[Reply]:
Do not quote the main body.

[OFF]:
Do not display the Edit mail display.

- Even if you select [Quote reply], the Reply is applied when the Quote reply cannot be performed. Also, even if you select [Reply], the Quote reply is applied when the Reply cannot be performed.

To edit a send mail
Select [Edit]/[OFF] at [Outbox(List/Detail)].

To edit a saved mail
Select [Edit]/[OFF] at [Draft(List)].

To edit a schedule
Select [Create/Edit]/[OFF] at [Schedule].

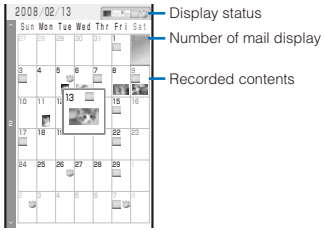
To edit a text memo
Select [Create/Edit]/[OFF] at [Memo(List/Detail)].

## Using the Lifetime Calendar

<Lifetime Calendar>

The Lifetime Calendar displays an image, mail, Schedule, and birthday data stored in the FOMA terminal in the Calendar format. This function helps you more effectively to keep track of items to remember.
You can also automatically display the items to remember, and display mail, Schedule, etc. from the Lifetime Calendar.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Lifetime Calendar] and press ■.**




The Lifetime Calendar appears.

- Use ※E▼ to display the calendar of the next month and ▲マナー to display the calendar of the previous month.
- The following icons show the displayed or saved items.

Display status

| | |
|---|---|
| | Still image (All)/(Selected)/(Selected off)/(OFF) |
| | Received mail (All)/(Selected)/(Selected off)/(OFF) |
| | Sent mail (All)/(Selected)/(Selected off)/(OFF) |
| | Schedule (All)/(OFF) |
| | Birthday (All)/(OFF) |

Recorded contents

| | |
|---|---|
| | The saved schedule data |
| | The saved birthday data |

- When there are mail, the color defines the number of mail.

Number of mail display

| Background color | Number of mail |
|---|---|
| Cream | 1 to 4 |
| Beige | 5 to 9 |
| Orange | 10 to 19 |
| Silver | 20 to 99 |
| Gold | More than 100 |

When the Lifetime Calendar is set as the stand-by display
When you press ■ (Link) in the stand-by display and select the Lifetime Calendar, the Lifetime Calendar is activated.



Continued

To display the index

Press [i] (Index). When you select a year and month, the Lifetime Calendar for the selected year and month appears.

To create a new schedule

From the Function menu, select [Create new] and save the schedule.

To display the Lifetime Calendar by specifying a date

From the Function menu, select [Select date] and enter the date. Enter the date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

To update the displayed data

From the Function menu, select [Data update].

### 2 Select the date and press [●].

The Lifetime Calendar appears displaying one year including the selected day (Detail view).




Display status

Recorded contents

To display the index

Press [i] (Index). When you select a date, the Lifetime Calendar (Detail view) appears.

To display a still image

Select [ ] (P.290).

To display received mail

Select [ ] or [ ] (P.219).

To display sent mail

Select [ ] (P.219).

To display the schedule

Select [ ] (P.366).

To display a birthday

Select [ ]. The Phonebook display (P.101) or the Own number display (P.45) appears.

- The Phonebook, Own number, and Schedule saved as Secret are not displayed in the Lifetime Calendar. Set the Secret display to [ON] to display the data.
- When you have more still images, mail, and schedule data saved in the FOMA terminal, you can build a more interesting Lifetime Calendar. We recommend saving data in the FOMA terminal using infrared communication and the microSD memory card if you are going to use this function immediately after you purchase SO906i.

## When Items to Remember Are Displayed

If no operation is performed for a specific period, still images, mail, and Schedule data saved in the FOMA terminal are displayed randomly as past memories.




Items to remember

To display details of the item to remember

Press [ch] (Memory). When you select an item to remember, the Lifetime Calendar (Detail view) appears.

## Data Displayed in the Lifetime Calendar

The following data is displayed in the Lifetime Calendar.

- JPEG and GIF images saved in My picture of the Data Box
- Received and sent mail saved in the FOMA terminal, or images attached to SMS and received/sent mail ※1
- Schedule saved in the FOMA terminal
- Name, Des call display, and birthday saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook※2
- Name, image, and birthday saved in the Own number

※1 When 2in1 is set to the A mode, data for Address A is displayed. When the B mode is set, data for Address B is displayed.

※2 When 2in1 is set to the A mode, data set as [Common] and [A] at the Phonebook 2in1 setting is displayed. When the B mode is set, data set as [Common] and [B] is displayed.

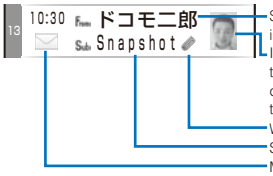
### ■ Typical display examples

- When the image attached to mail cannot be displayed, "" appears.

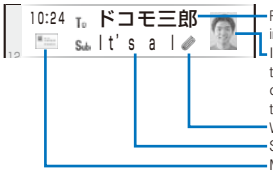
Still image




Received mail




Sent mail




- When you send mail to several recipients using address type "To", "" appears next to the address.

Schedule




Birthday




- Data saved in the microSD memory card cannot be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar.
- When the date and time of mail are corrected to the local time during international roaming, "" appears next to the time (P.44).
- Images in the [Preinstall] and [Stamp&Frame] folders cannot be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar.
- While displaying the Lifetime Calendar, when receiving new mail or deleting/changing saved data such as images, Phonebook, or Schedule using Multitask, the displayed contents of the Lifetime Calendar may differ from the actual data. In this case, from the Function menu, select [Data update] to update the displayed contents of the Lifetime Calendar.

## Setting the Display of Lifetime Calendar

You can set the data to be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar and set whether to automatically display the items to remember.

**1 Press (Func) in the Lifetime Calendar.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [LTC setting] and press .**

The LTC setting display appears.

[Display setting]:
Set the data to be displayed in the Lifetime Calendar.

[Memory auto display]:
Set the time before the item to remember is automatically displayed when a key is not operated for a specific period.

[Security data display]:
Set whether to display a folder which is set the Mail security or Data security. If you set [Display], you need to enter the Security code when you display the Lifetime Calendar.

To display the Help of the LTC setting
Press [i] (Help).

**3 Select [Display setting] and press [■].**

The Display setting display appears.

[Photo]:
Set the display of the still image to [All]/[Selected]/[Selected off]/[OFF]. To or not to display still images saved in a specific folder only, select [Selected]/[Selected off] → [Select folder] → a folder.

- You cannot select the [Preinstall] or [Stamp&Frame] folder.

[Received mail]:
Set the display of the received mail to [All]/[Selected]/[Selected off]/[OFF]. To or not to display mail received from a specific address only, select [Selected]/[Selected off] → [Select mail address] and set a mail address.

[Sent mail]:
Set the display of the sent mail to [All]/[Selected]/[Selected off]/[OFF]. To or not to display mail sent to a specific address only, select [Selected]/[Selected off] → [Select mail address] and set a mail address.

[Schedule]:
Set the display of the schedule to [All]/[OFF].

[Birthday]:
Set the display of the birthday to [All]/[OFF].

To restore the default settings
Press [clr] (Reset).

**4 Select the display for each item.**

**5 Press [i] (Complete).**

The LTC setting display appears.

**6 Set the time before the item to remember is automatically displayed at [Memory auto display].**

Select from [Fast], [Normal], [Slow], and [OFF].

To disable automatic display of the item to remember
Select [OFF].

**7 Select [Security data display] and press [■].**

The Security code screen appears.

**8 Enter the Security code and press [■] (OK).**

**9 Select [Display]/[OFF] and press [■].**

The LTC setting is set.

# Posting on a Blog

If you save a blog service, you can post on a blog using i-mode mail easily.

## Saving a Blog Service

You can save a blog service to which you post a blog. Up to 22 blog services can be saved.

Example: Saving a blog service manually

**1 From the Menu, select [Imaging] → [easy BlogUp] and press [■].**

The blog service list appears.




To use an easy BlogUp service information file
Connect to the blog service site you want to use by i-mode and download an easy BlogUp service information file (P.195).

- An easy BlogUp service information file can be downloaded when you connect to a site by i-mode. You cannot download it by Full Browser.

**2 Press ✉ (Func), select [Added], and press ■.**

The service setting display appears.

To edit a blog service

Move the cursor to a blog service and from the Function menu, select [Edit].

- When you set an easy BlogUp service information file, you can edit the service name and service details.

To delete a blog service

Move the cursor to a blog service and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes].

To check the information of a blog service

Move the cursor to a blog service and from the Function menu, select [Property].

- When you set an easy BlogUp service information file, you can check the version and user's ID of the service.

**3 Enter a service name at [Service].**

Enter a service name within 25 full-width or 50 half-width characters.

**4 Enter service details at [Service details].**

Enter service details within 25 full-width or 50 half-width characters.

**5 Enter a URL for i-mode connection at [i-mode URL].**

Enter a URL including "http://" within 512 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- If you have entered a URL before, the last entered URL is displayed.
- "http://" at the beginning of a URL is entered on the field automatically.

**6 Enter a URL for Full Browser connection at [Full Browser URL].**

Enter a URL including "http://" within 512 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

- If you have entered a URL before, the last entered URL is displayed.
- "http://" at the beginning of a URL is entered on the field automatically.

**7 Enter a mail address for posting at [Mail address].**

Enter a mail address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

**8 Select whether to post a still image/movie on a blog at [Attach picture]/[Attach movie].**

- Select whether to post a still image/movie depending on a type of contents which is supported by a blog service.

[Yes]:
Post a still image/movie.

[No]:
Do not post a still image/movie.

**9 Press ▮ (Complete).**

The blog service is set.

## Posting on a Blog

You can post a still image (JPEG) or movie (3GP) other than a text on a blog.

Example: Posting a still image in the Data Box and texts

**1 From the Menu, select [Imaging] → [esay BlogUp] and press ■.**

The blog service list appears.

- A type of contents which is supported by a blog service can be checked by the following icons or the combinations of them.

| Icon | Type |
|---|---|
| | Text supported |
| | Still image supported |
| | Movie supported |

**2 Select a blog service which supports both posting a still image and text, and press ■ (BlogUp).**

The screen for confirming whether to attach a file appears.

When you select a blog service which supports posting only texts

The Edit mail display appears. Go to step 5.

**3 Select [File attach] and press ■.**

To post texts only

Select [Input text]. Go to step 5.

**4 From the Data Box, select a category → a folder → a file and press ■.**

The Edit mail display appears.

For a still image recorded when the Auto orientation is set to [ON]

The screen for confirming whether to rotate the still image to align the display direction of the FOMA terminal appears. To post a rotated image, select [Matching&BlogUp]. When the image size exceeds [VGA(640×480)], the size of the image is automatically reduced to [VGA(H640×W480)] or [VGA(W640×H480)] depending on which orientation the original image is, landscape or portrait.

To post an image as is, select [Keeping&BlogUp].

For a still image exceeding [VGA(640×480)]

The screen for confirming whether to reduce the image size to [VGA(640×480)] appears. To post a reduced image, select [Reduces&BlogUp].

To post an image as is, select [Keeping&BlogUp].

- When you select a still image exceeding 2M bytes, the still image is not attached because of the size restriction of the mail attachment file.

For a movie exceeding 2M bytes

A movie is automatically clipped to be less than 2M bytes from the beginning.

To select a still image or movie in the microSD memory card

From the microSD category list, select a category → a file.

**5 Enter texts and press (Send).**

Mail is sent and it is posted on a blog.

- When 2in1 is set to the B mode, you cannot compose any i-mode mail.
- You cannot send i-mode mail using Address B.

## Browsing a Blog

Example: Browsing a blog using i-mode

- When a blog service has neither the i-mode URL nor the Full Browser URL specified, you cannot select the blog service.

**1 From the Menu, select [Imaging] → [easy BlogUp] and press ■.**

The blog service list appears.

**2 Select a blog service and press (i-mode).**

The screen for confirming whether to connect to i-mode appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected blog is displayed.

To browse a blog using Full Browser

Move the cursor to a blog service, press (Full Brs), and select [Yes].

## Starting the Alarm at a Specified Time <Alarm>

The alarm is activated for about one minute at a specified time. You can set up to 12 alarms to be activated.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Alarm] and press ■.**

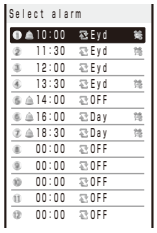



To set the operation of the alarm during power off

Select [Auto power on] → [ON]/[OFF].

- If you select [ON], when the alarm time comes during power off, the FOMA terminal is automatically powered on and the alarm works.

**2 Select [Select alarm] and press ■.**



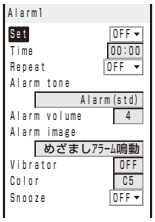

- The following icons show the setting status of the Alarm.

| | |
|---|---|
| | The Alarm is set |
| | The Snooze is set |

To switch between setting/canceling the Alarm

Move the cursor to the Alarm and press (Set)/ (Rel.).

### 3 Select an alarm to be set and press ■.




### 4 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Set].

[ON]:
Activate the alarm.

[OFF]:
Do not activate the alarm.

### 5 Enter a time to start the alarm at [Time].

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

### 6 Select the repeat type at [Repeat].

[OFF]:
Do not repeat the alarm.

[Eyd]:
Repeat the alarm every day.

[Day]:
Repeat the alarm on the same day of the week. Select a day of the week and press ● (OK).

### 7 Select an alarm tone from MUSIC/ i-motion/Melody of the Data Box at [Alarm tone].

- You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| MUSIC※ | AAC-LC/ HE-AAC | Max. 5M bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA(640×480)] |
| Melody | SMF/ MFi | Max. 350K bytes | — |

※ Some files may not be set.

When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC]
The screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone.

To mute the alarm tone
Select [Silent].

To check the alarm tone
Move the cursor to the alarm tone and press ch (Play).

### 8 Set the volume at [Alarm volume].

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 6].

To set the volume to [OFF]
Press ▼ at level 1.

### 9 Select an alarm image from My picture/ i-motion of the Data Box at [Alarm image].

- You can set the following files.

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| My picture | GIF/ JPEG | Max. 250K bytes | Max. [Stand-by (480×864)], Max. W480× H288 for GIF animation |
| | SWF | Max. 100K bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA(640×480)] |

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

To check an alarm image
Move the cursor to an alarm image and press ch (Play).

### 10 Select a vibration type at [Vibrator].

[Pattern1]:
Set short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2]:
Set long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody]:
Vibrates in accordance with the alarm tone. If you have set the alarm tone to [Silent] or to a melody that cannot be synchronized with the vibrator operation, the vibrator vibrates using [Pattern1].



Continued

[OFF]:
Do not set the vibrator.

To check the vibration
Move the cursor to the pattern and press [i] (Confirm).

### 11 Select an indicator color at [Color].

Select from 12 indicator colors or [C13:ALL] (indicator flashes in 12 colors in sequence).
When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

### 12 Select [ON]/[OFF] at [Snooze].

[ON]:
The alarm operates for about one minute and repeats operation up to six times every five minutes.

[OFF]:
Do not repeat the alarm operation.

### 13 Press [i] (Complete).

The Alarm is set and "⏰" appears in the stand-by display.

- When the Alarm and Schedule alarm are set simultaneously, "⏰" is displayed instead of "⏰".
- When the Alarm and Schedule alarm are set to start at the same time, the Schedule alarm has priority.
- When you set an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® for the alarm tone or set an i-motion for the alarm image, the settings may be changed in some cases.

## At the Alarm Time

The alarm tone sounds for about one minute with the indicator flashing.




To stop the alarm tone
Press any key.

When you do not stop the alarm tone
The display informing the release of the alarm appears. To turn off the display, press [⏻] or [CLR].

To stop the Snooze
Press [⏻].

- If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks to the alarm tone, a movie in the i-motion is displayed.
- If the alarm time comes during a voice call or PushTalk communication, the default alarm tone sounds and the default alarm image is displayed. The vibrator does not operate.
- The Alarm does not operate in the following cases.
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the Personal data lock is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - While updating the software
- If the alarm time comes in the following cases, the Alarm may operate when the status changes to during a call or stand-by.
  - While placing/receiving a voice/videophone call or originating/receiving a PushTalk call
  - During packet communication
  - During the infrared communication/while the infrared remote control is being used
  - During the iC communication
  - During data communication or while reading/writing data from/into a microSD memory card on a PC with the FOMA terminal connected using the USB cable
  - While recording a still image/movie
  - While the Schedule alarm is sounding
  - Beep while receiving Area Mail, while sounding Area Mail ring tone, or displaying Area Mail
- If another function is executed during the Alarm or Snooze operation, the alarm is stopped. The Snooze keeps operating within five times.
- When the PIN1 code setting and the Auto power on for the Alarm are set to [ON], the FOMA terminal is automatically powered on at the alarm time and the PIN1 code input screen appears after the Alarm operation. If you set any data for which the UIM operation restriction function is set to the alarm tone, the default melody sounds.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Alarm may not operate correctly.
- If you remove the battery pack and turn off the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal is not turned on automatically even if the Auto power on is set to [ON].

# Saving Schedules <Schedule>

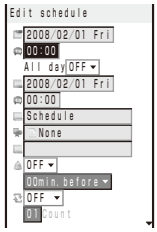
Up to 300 schedules, such as date and events/appointments can be saved for management. When a Schedule alarm is set, the FOMA terminal activates the alarm at the scheduled time.

- An entry is required at [ ] (Event).

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press ■.**

The calendar is displayed.

**2 Select a starting date and press (Create).**




The selected date is automatically entered.

To change the starting date

Select [ ] and change the date. Enter the date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

**3 Enter a starting time at [ ].**

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

To set the schedule period to all day

Select [ON] at [All day]. When it is set to [ON], you cannot set the starting time, ending date, ending time, and alarm.

**4 Enter an ending date at [ ].**

Enter from the starting date to 2050/12/31.

**5 Enter an ending time at [ ].**

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

**6 Enter the event at [ ].**

Enter the event within 128 full-width or 256 half-width characters.

**7 Select a category icon at [ ].**

**8 Enter an event outline at [ ].**

Enter an outline within 20 full-width or 40 half-width characters.

**9 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the alarm at [ ].**

[ON]:
Sound the alarm tone. Select how many minutes before the starting time of schedule the alarm should sound. Select [00min.before] if you want to sound the alarm at the same time as the starting time.

[OFF]:
Do not sound the alarm tone.

**10 Select the schedule repeat type at [ ].**

[OFF]:
Do not repeat the schedule. Go to step 12.

[Eyd]:
Repeat the schedule every day.

[Week]:
Repeat the schedule on the same day of the week.

[Month]:
Repeat the schedule every month on the same day.

[Year]:
Repeat the schedule every year on the same day of the same month.

When the schedule repeat type is set to other than [OFF]

Enter the repeat count within 01 to 99 times.

**11 Select [ON]/[OFF] of a holiday at [Holiday].**

[ON]:
The schedule repeats even on a holiday.

[OFF]:
The schedule does not repeat on a holiday, but it is included in the repeat count.

**12 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Secret at [ ].**

[ON]:
Save the schedule as Secret. Details of the schedule are masked with "✻" except for the time at the schedule alarm time.

[OFF]:
Do not save the schedule as Secret.

To display the data saved as Secret

Set the Secret display to [ON].



Continued

**13 Press [i] (Complete).**

The schedule is saved. When the Alarm is set to [ON], "" appears in the stand-by display.
The schedule dates are highlighted on the calendar.

- When you set [Create/Edit] at [Schedule] of the Edit slide setting, just opening the FOMA terminal in the calendar or schedule list allows you to save the schedule (P.354).
- When the Schedule alarm and Alarm are set simultaneously, "" is displayed instead of "".
- If the repeat type of the schedule set for the 31st is set to [Month], the schedule is set for the last day of the month for months with less than 31 days. It is also applied when the repeat type of the schedule set for the 29th of February in a leap year is set to [Year].
- When you set an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® for the alarm tone or set an i-motion for the alarm image, the settings may be changed in some cases.

### At the Schedule Alarm Time

The alarm sounds for about 30 seconds with the indicator flashing and the schedule data is displayed.
If there are several overlapping schedules with the same start time of the alarm, the number of schedules you have in addition is shown as "XXX" on the upper right of the display.




To stop the alarm tone
Press any key.

When you do not stop the alarm tone
The Schedule display appears. To turn off the Schedule display, press [■] (OK), [↩], or [CLR].

- If you set an i-motion with video and sound tracks to the alarm tone, a movie in the i-motion is displayed.
- If the alarm time comes during a voice call or PushTalk communication, the default alarm tone sounds and default alarm image is displayed. The vibrator does not operate.
- The Schedule alarm does not operate in the following cases.
  - When the FOMA terminal is powered off
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the Personal data lock is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - While updating the software
- If the alarm time comes in the following cases, the Schedule alarm may operate when the status changes to during a call or stand-by.
  - While placing/receiving a voice/videophone call or originating/receiving a PushTalk call
  - During packet communication
  - During the infrared communication/while the infrared remote control is being used
  - During the iC communication
  - During data communication or while reading/writing data from/into a microSD memory card on a PC with the FOMA terminal connected using the USB cable
  - While recording a still image/movie
  - Beep while receiving Area Mail, while sounding Area Mail ring tone, or displaying Area Mail
- If you leave the FOMA terminal with the battery pack removed or fully expended for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Schedule alarm may not operate correctly.

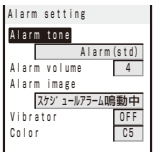
## Setting the Schedule Alarm Operations

You can set the details of the operations of the Schedule alarm.

**1 Press [✉] (Func) in the calendar.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Schedule setting] → [Schedule alarm] and press [■].**




**3 Select an alarm tone from MUSIC/ i-motion/Melody of the Data Box at [Alarm tone].**

- You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| MUSIC※ | AAC-LC/ HE-AAC | Max. 5M bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA(640×480)] |
| Melody | SMF/ MFi | Max. 350K bytes | — |

※ Some files may not be set.

When you select a Chaku-Uta Full® that has a choice of specified playback ranges from [MUSIC]
The screen for selecting a type of setting appears. If you select [Full song], the entire track of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone. If you select [Point], the specified playback range of Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the alarm tone.

To mute the alarm tone
Select [Silent].

To check the alarm tone
Move the cursor to the alarm tone and press [ｶﾒﾗ] (Play).

**4 Set the volume at [Alarm volume].**

Select from [OFF] and [1 to 6].

To set the volume to [OFF]
Press [▼] at level 1.

**5 Select an alarm image from My picture/ i-motion of the Data Box at [Alarm image].**

- You can set the following files.

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| My picture | GIF/ JPEG | Max. 250K bytes | Max. [Stand-by (480×864)], Max. W480× H288 for GIF animation |
| | SWF | Max. 100K bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA(640×480)] |

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

To check an alarm image
Move the cursor to an alarm image and press [ｶﾒﾗ] (Play).

**6 Select a vibration type at [Vibrator].**

[Pattern1]:
Set short intermittent vibration.

[Pattern2]:
Set long intermittent vibration.

[Link melody]:
Vibrates in accordance with the alarm tone. If you have set the alarm tone to [Silent] or to a melody that cannot be synchronized with the vibrator operation, the vibrator vibrates using [Pattern1].

[OFF]:
Do not set the vibrator.

To check the vibration
Move the cursor to the pattern and press [i] (Confirm).

**7 Select an indicator color at [Color].**

Select from 12 indicator colors or [C13:ALL] (indicator flashes in 12 colors in sequence).
When you move the cursor, the indicator flashes accordingly.

**8 Press [i] (Complete).**

The Schedule alarm operations are set.



Continued

## Displaying the Schedule

The saved schedule can be checked using the calendar.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press ■.**




The calendar is displayed.

- Use ※E▼ to display the calendar of the next month and ▲ｸﾘｱ to display the previous month.

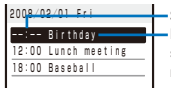
When the calendar is set for the stand-by display

Press ■ (Link) in the stand-by display and select the calendar to start the schedule.

To display the calendar for a specified date

From the Function menu, select [Select date] and enter the date. Enter the date within the range from 2000/01/01 to 2050/12/31.

**2 Select a date and press ■.**




The schedule list is displayed.

- Use ▶ to display the next day's schedule and ◀ to display the previous day's schedule.

**3 Select the schedule and press ■.**




The details of the schedule appear.

To edit the saved schedule

Press ｉ (Edit).

- When you set [Create/Edit] at [Schedule] of the Edit slide setting, just opening the FOMA terminal in the schedule list or Schedule detail display allows you to edit the schedule (P.354).
- If you set a repeat count beyond 2050/12/31, [To 2050/12/31] is displayed as the last day of the repeat when you display the schedule.

## Deleting a Schedule

You can delete schedules using the following five methods.

| | |
|---|---|
| Delete one | Delete a schedule. If you delete a schedule set to repeat, all its repeats are also deleted. |
| Select&delete | Delete the selected schedules. You can select up to 30 schedules over days at a time. If you delete a schedule set to repeat, all its repeats are also deleted. |
| Delete a day | Delete all schedules for the selected date. Schedules set to repeat cannot be deleted. |
| Del up to ysd | Delete all schedules before the selected date. Schedules set to repeat on and after the selected date cannot be deleted. |
| Delete all | Delete all schedules. |

Example: Deleting a schedule

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press ■.**

To delete all schedules
From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete all schedules before the selected date
Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Del up to ysd]. Enter the Security code and select [Yes].

To delete all schedules for the selected date
Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete a day] → [Yes].

**2 Select a date and press ■.**

To delete several schedules
From the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select schedules. Press ▮ (Complete) and select [Yes].

**3 Select a schedule and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**4 Select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected schedule is deleted.

## Setting Holiday

You can set a day or a day of the week as a holiday and cancel the holiday settings. A day set as a holiday is displayed in red.

| | |
|---|---|
| For today | Set a specific day as a holiday or cancel a holiday. Up to 1,000 days can be set or canceled. |
| Day of the week | Set a specific day of the week as a holiday or cancel a holiday of the week. |
| Rel up to yesterday | Cancel all holidays set by the For today before the selected date. |
| Release all | Cancel all holidays set by the For today and Day of the week. |
| Reset | Reset the holiday settings to the default settings. |

Example: Setting a specific day as a holiday or canceling the holiday setting of a day

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Schedule] and press ■.**

To set/cancel holidays by a day of the week
From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Day of the week]. Select the day of the week and press ▮ (Complete).

To cancel all holidays before the selected date
Move the cursor to the date and from the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Rel up to yesterday] → [Yes].

To cancel all holidays
From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Release all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To reset to the default settings
From the Function menu, select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] → [Reset], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a date and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**3 Select [Schedule setting] → [Set holidays] and press ■.**

The Set holidays display appears.

**4 Select [For today] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The selected day is set as a holiday or the holiday setting of the day is canceled.

● The public holidays are based on the "Law Partially Revising the National Holidays Law and the Old-Age Welfare Law" (Law No.59, 2001) and (Law No.43, 2005). Note that the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumn Equinox Day may fall on the dates other than those set on the FOMA terminal because they depend on the announcement by the official gazette on February 1st of the previous year (as of December 2007).
Perform the required setting when a holiday is changed or newly added.



Continued

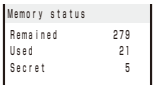
## Checking the Number of Schedules Saved

The number of schedules saved can be checked as well as the number of schedules still available to be saved or saved as Secret.

**1 Press [Func] (Func) in the calendar.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Memory status] and press [●].**




[Remained]:
Display the number of schedules still available to be saved.

[Used]:
Display the number of schedules saved (including schedules as Secret).

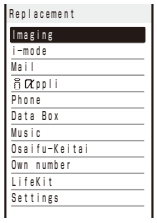
[Secret]:
Display the number of schedules saved as Secret (this data is displayed only when the Secret display is set to [ON]).

## Performing Frequently Used Functions Quickly <My Selection>

You can save frequently used functions in My Selection and select a saved function directly. Up to 12 functions can be added to My Selection.

- When the Menu displays the Kisekae menu or Standard menu, you need to set the Start menu setting to [My Selection] (P.123).

**1 Press [MENU] (MENU) in the stand-by display, select a function, and press [i] (Exchange).**




To delete the saved function
Press [MENU] (MENU) in the stand-by display, move the cursor to the function, press [C] (Delete), and select [Yes].

To reset My Selection to the default setting
Reset the settings (P.376).

**2 Select a function and press [i] (Save).**

The screen for confirming whether to replace My Selection appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press [●].**

The selected function replaces My Selection.

# Recording Recipient's or Your Own Voice <Voice memo>

Your own voice during stand-by and the recipient's voice during a voice call can be recorded.

Up to three voice memos of up to about 15 seconds each can be recorded.

- When you record a voice memo during a call in addition to the already recorded three voice memos, the oldest memo is automatically overwritten by the new one. When you record a voice memo during stand-by, the screen for confirming whether to overwrite the oldest voice memo appears.
- For information on playing back and deleting the voice memo, see P.74.

## Recording Your Own Voice during Stand-by

**1 Press (メモ▼) in the stand-by display, select [Rec voice memo] → [Yes] and press ■.**




The recording starts. When the recording ends, a beep sounds.

To stop the recording on the way

Press ■ (Stop).

● If there is an incoming call/mail or the Alarm/Schedule alarm time comes while recording a voice memo during stand-by, the recording stops and the voice memo recorded until then is saved.

## Recording Recipient's Voice during a Call

**1 Press (メモ▼) during a call.**

The recording starts. When the recording ends, a beep sounds.

To stop the recording on the way

Press ■ (Stop).

● When the FOMA terminal is closed while recording a voice memo during a call, the recording is stopped and the recorded voice memo is saved if the Setting when folded is set to [Holding] or [Disconnect] and the recording is continued if set to [Mute].

# Checking the Call Duration and Charge <Call duration/cost>

You can check the call duration and charge for the last and total voice and videophone calls.

- The call duration and charge displayed are estimated and may not be real values. The call charge does not include consumption tax.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] and press ■.**

The Call Cost/Duration display appears.

[Last call cost]:
Display the call charge for the last voice call at [Voice call] and the last videophone call/64K data communication at [Digital]. The call charge is counted only when you place a call.

[Last call duration]:
Display the call duration for the last voice call at [Voice call] and the last videophone call/64K data communication at [Digital]. The call duration is counted when you receive a call as well as place a call.

[Total calls cost]:
Display the total call charge from the last reset to the present time.

[Total calls duration]:
Display the total call duration from the last reset to the present time.

**2 Select the item and press ■.**

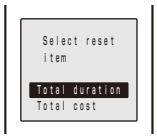
- When you place a call to a toll-free number such as NTT Free Dial or Directory Assistance (104), "0YEN" or "✱✱✱✱✱✱YEN" indicated for the call charge.
- The accumulated call charges are stored in the UIM. Therefore, if you switch the UIM, the accumulated total call charge (starting from December 2004) is displayed.
  ※FOMA terminals manufactured earlier than the 901i series are not capable of displaying the accumulated call charges stored in the UIM. (The charges, however, are stored in the UIM used by the older terminals.)
- The duration and charge for PushTalk, i-mode, and packet communication are not counted. For details on how to check charges for i-mode, etc., see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version" that you receive when you subscribe to i-mode.
- When the call duration for the last voice call or digital communication exceeds 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds or the total call duration for voice calls or digital communication exceeds 9,999 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds, "Over" is displayed.
- The ring time for incoming and outgoing calls are not counted.
- The transmission charge for Chaku-moji is not counted.
- When you use WORLD CALL, the international call charge is counted. When you use other international call services other than WORLD CALL, the call charge is not counted.
- When you switch between voice and videophone calls during a call, the call duration and call charge are counted separately for each call type and incremented at [Voice call] or [Digital] alternately every time you switch the call.
- When 2in1 is used, the total call duration and charge of both Number A and Number B are summed up and displayed.

## Resetting the Total Call Duration and Charge

The display of the total call duration and charge can be reset. The count starts from 0 after the reset.

Example: Resetting the total call duration

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Reset] and press ■.**




**2 Select [Total duration] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

To reset the total call charge

Select [Total cost], enter the PIN2 code, and select [Yes].

**3 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to reset appears.

**4 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The total call duration is reset and the reset date/time are updated.

## Automatically Resetting the Total Call Charge

You can set to automatically reset the total call charge at 00:00 a.m. on the first day of every month.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Auto reset] and press ■.**

The PIN2 code input screen appears.

**2 Enter the PIN2 code and press ■ (OK).**

The Auto reset display appears.

**3 Select [ON]/[OFF] and press ■.**

The Auto reset is set.

## Setting the Limit for Alert on the Total Call Charge <Cost limit notice>

You can set an upper limit amount of call charges to alert yourself with an icon or alarm tone when the total call charge exceeds this limit value.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Cost limit notice] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**




**3 Select [ON]/[OFF] for the Call limit notice at [Set].**

**4 Enter a value at [Limit].**

Enter from ¥10 to ¥100,000 (in increments of ¥10).

**5 Select a notification method at [Notification].**

[Alarm+Stand-by]:
Display the icon in the stand-by display and sound an alarm tone to alert you at the same time.

[Stand-by]:
Display the icon in the stand-by display to alert you.

**6 Press [i] (Complete).**

The Call cost limit is set.

### When the Call Charge Exceeds the Limit




When the upper limit value of the call charge you have set is exceeded during a call or data communication, the notification icon "⚠" (Exceed cost limit) appears in the stand-by display.
When you set the notification method to [Alarm+Stand-by], an alarm tone sounds when the stand-by display reappears.

To check the call charge
Press ■ (Link) in the stand-by display and select "⚠".

● The alarm for the Call cost limit is heard at the same volume level as set for the incoming call ring volume. It is heard at the volume level 2 when you set the volume of the ring tone to [3] or higher level, [STEP DOWN], or [STEP UP].

## Canceling the Icon for Limit Alert

Turn off the notification icon "⚠".

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Cost/Duration] → [Delete max cost icon] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to delete the maximum cost icon appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

"⚠" disappears.

## Using the Calculator <Calculator>

You can use the FOMA terminal to perform the four basic operations of arithmetic (+, −, ×, ÷) for up to nine digits.

Example: Calculating 64×5

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Calculator] and press ■.**




**2 Enter numbers and operators to display the result.**

Press 6, 4, ▲, 5, and # in this order.

| | |
|---|---|
| 0 to 9 | 0 to 9 |
| Add (+) | ▶ |
| Subtract (−) | ◀ |
| Multiply (×) | ▲ |
| Divide (÷) | ▼ |
| Decimal (.) | * |
| Calculate (=) | # or ■ |
| Clear (C)/Clear All (AC) | CLR |

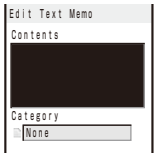
- If the number is indivisible or the result of the calculation contains a decimal point and proves to be 10 digits or more, 10th digit and any more digits than this are discarded for display from the rightmost digit.
- If the result of the calculation is 10 digits or more, or if you attempt an illegal calculation (e.g. division by 0), the error code "0E" appears.
- Minus numbers can be calculated only when you enter a minus number first.

## Using a Memo <Text Memo>

Necessary information can be saved in the Text Memo. Up to 10 text memos can be saved.

- When you enter [Contents] of a memo, i (Complete) appears and you can save the memo.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Text Memo], press ■, and press i (Create).**




**2 Enter a memo at [Contents].**

Enter a memo within 256 full-width or 512 half-width characters.

**3 Select a category icon at [Category].**

**4 Press i (Complete).**

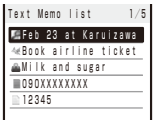
The memo is saved.

- When you set [Create/Edit] at [Memo(List/Detail)] of the Edit slide setting, just opening the FOMA terminal in the Text Memo list allows you to enter a text memo (P.354).

## Displaying a Memo

The contents of a saved memo can be checked.

**1 From the Menu, select [LifeKit] → [Text Memo] and press ■.**



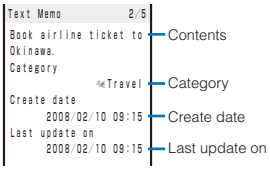

To copy [Contents] of a memo

Move the cursor to a memo and from the Function menu, select [Copy Text Memo] → [Yes].

To delete memos

Move the cursor to a memo and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several memos, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete], and select memos. Press [i] (Complete) and select [Yes]. To delete all memos, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a memo and press ■.**




The memo appears.

To edit the memo

Press [i] (Edit).

● When you set [Create/Edit] at [Memo(List/Detail)] of the Edit slide setting, just opening the FOMA terminal while displaying the text memo list allows you to edit the text memo (P.354).

## Displaying the Settings of Various Functions <Application>

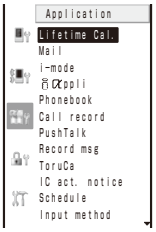
You can directly display the settings of each function and set each item. For more information about settings, see the relevant pages.

| Display | Setting data |
|---|---|
| Lifetime Cal. | Set the data to be displayed in the Lifetime Cal., set whether to automatically display the items to remember, or etc. (P.357). |
| Mail | Set the functions used for i-mode mail, SMS, and Area Mail (P.225, 233, 236, etc.). |
| i-mode | Set the functions used for i-mode (P.112, 197, etc.). |
| i αppli | Set automatic activation of software and software description display during a download (P.112, 239, 246). |
| Phonebook | Set the display style and font size of the Phonebook (P.102). |
| Call record | Set the Redial/Received record display ON/OFF (P.141). |
| PushTalk | Set the operation for originating/receiving a PushTalk call (P.89). |
| Record msg | Set ON/OFF and the answer time of the Record message and the answering/recording image of the Videophone message (P.73). |
| ToruCa | Set the operation to be performed when a ToruCa card is obtained (P.259). |
| IC act. notice | Set the operation for notifying you that the FOMA terminal comes within the FeliCa communication range (P.261). |
| Schedule | Set the operation of holidays and the Schedule alarm (P.365, 367). |
| Input method | Set the function for character input (P.384, 386, etc.). |



Continued

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] and press ■.**




**2 Select a function and press ■.**

The setting display of each function appears.

## Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Earphone/microphone with switch>

When you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc. to the Earphone/Microphone Jack, you can answer a voice, videophone, or PushTalk call, place a voice call by simply pressing its switch. You can also set Earphone/Microphone operation.

- Do not wind the cord of the Earphone/Microphone around the FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause the radio wave condition to be degraded.
- Placing the cord of the Earphone/Microphone close to the antenna may cause noise.

### Using the Switch to Place a Call

You can place a voice call to the first phone number saved as the Memory number (P.375) of the Phonebook using the switch on the Earphone/Microphone.

- When the Personal data lock is set, the call cannot be placed.

**1 Connect the Earphone/Microphone to the FOMA terminal.**

- Open the cover of the Earphone/Microphone Jack and insert the plug of the Earphone/Microphone into the jack.

**2 Press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second in the stand-by display.**

The beep sounds and the call is connected to the recipient. Talk when the recipient answers the call.

**3 Press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second to hang up.**

The beep sounds and the call is disconnected.

- If a Phonebook memory number that is saved as Secret is set for the Memory number, set the Secret display to [ON] if you want to use the switch on the Earphone/Microphone to place a call.
- When you use the MUSIC Player while the FOMA terminal is closed, you cannot use the switch to place a call.

### Using the Switch to Receive a Call

**1 When receiving a call, press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second.**

The beep sounds and the call is connected.

**2 Press the switch on the Earphone/Microphone for over a second to hang up.**

The beep sounds and the call is disconnected.

- When you answer a videophone call using the switch on the Earphone/Microphone, a substitute image is sent to the caller.
- You cannot end communication using the switch on the Earphone/Microphone during PushTalk communication. Press [end] to end communication.

## Setting the Operation of the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You can set whether to permit the switch on the Earphone/Microphone to place a voice call. You can also set a Phonebook memory number to be used for placing a voice call by pressing the switch on the Earphone/Microphone.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Headset setting] → [Headset sw. to call] and press [■].**




**2 Select [Voice call]/[OFF] of the switch on the Earphone/Microphone at [Set].**

[Voice call]:
Use the switch on the Earphone/Microphone to place a voice call.

[OFF]:
Do not use the switch on the Earphone/Microphone.

**3 Enter a memory number from the Phonebook used for placing a voice call at [Memory number].**

Enter from 000 to 999.

**4 Press [i] (Complete).**

The Headset sw. to call is set.

- If you delete phonebook data of the phone number that is set for the Memory number, the default Memory number setting 999 is restored.

## Receiving a Call Automatically with Earphone <Auto answer setting>

You can set to automatically answer a voice or videophone call when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc. is connected.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Headset setting] → [Auto answer setting] and press [■].**




**2 Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Auto answer setting at [Set].**

**3 Enter the time before receiving a call automatically at [To answer].**

Enter from 000 to 120 seconds.

**4 Press [i] (Complete).**

The Auto answer setting is set.

- When you receive a videophone call, a substitute image is sent to the caller.
- When the Record message, Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Auto answer setting are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Auto answer setting, set the time before starting the answering message for the Auto answer setting shorter than that for the Record message and the ring time for the Voice Mail and Call Forwarding Services.

## Setting Which Mic to Use

<Headset microphone>

You can set to use a microphone during a call when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc. is connected.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Call] → [Headset setting] → [Headset microphone] and press ■.**

[Valid main]:
Use the earpiece (microphone) of the FOMA terminal.

[Valid Headset]:
Use the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional).

**2 Select a microphone to be used and press ■.**

The Headset microphone is set.

## Resetting to the Default Settings

<Reset settings>

You can reset the settings of each function to the default settings. For the functions that are reset by the Reset settings and the default settings of these functions, see the list of reset items (P.378) and the list of menus (P.420).

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Reset] → [Reset settings] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

- The Reset display also appears by pressing 5 for over a second in the stand-by display. Select [Reset settings] and press ■.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to reset all settings appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The settings are reset.

## Deleting All Saved Data

<Reset all data&set>

You can delete saved data and reset the settings of each function to the default settings. For the functions to be reset by the Reset all data&set, see the list of reset items (P.378) and the list of menus (P.420).

- The following data is not deleted.
  - Preinstalled data in My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, My document, some Kisekae tools, and Chara-den of the Data Box
    (The [スーパーモンキーボール] in My picture is deleted by folder.)
  - Preinstalled Deco-mail templates
  - Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli
- The preinstalled i-αppli software “デコ絵つくーる”, “スーパーモンキーボールモバイル for SO”, “地図アプリ”, “Gガイド番組表リモコン”, “ｉアプリバンキング”, and “楽オク出品アプリ2” are deleted.
- Even if you delete a preinstalled Deco mail pict., MUSIC, My document, and Chara-den data files, they are restored if you execute the Reset all data&set.
- The preset folders are not deleted. The folder names at the time of purchase are restored, however.
- If you execute the Reset all data&set when 2in1 is used, the 2in1 is set to OFF.
- When 2in1 is set to ON, all data are deleted regardless of the 2in1 modes.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Reset] → [Reset all data&set] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

- The Reset display also appears by pressing 5 for over a second in the stand-by display. Select [Reset all data&set] and press ■.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to reset all data and settings appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The screen for confirming whether to execute restart operation appears.

**4 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The FOMA terminal is initialized and restarts.

# List of Reset Items

The items in which settings, that are made through the associated Function menus, etc., are reset by executing the Reset settings or Reset all data&set are as follows. For functions that can be accessed through the menu display, see the list of menus (P.420).

○: Items restored to their default settings ●: Items deleted

| Menu | | Default setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Standard menu | Menu guide display | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.33 |
| Phonebook | Group setting | — | | ○ | P.100 |
| PushTalk phonebook | Group setting | — | | ○ | P.85 |
| Data Box | Sort | Date (new → old) | | ○ | P.321 |
| My picture | Data security | — | | ○ | P.142 |
| | Mini-Photo creator | Not replicate | ○ | ○ | P.319 |
| | Change display | 6 images | ○ | ○ | P.322 |
| | Display quality | Normal | ○ | ○ | P.290 |
| | Music slide show | Repeat: OFF, Effect: Sweet, BGM: What Can U Do(Mashup Style)※, Change image quality: Normal, Volume adjustment: 25 | ○ | ○ | P.291 |
| i-motion | Data security | — | | ○ | P.142 |
| | Change display | 6 images | ○ | ○ | P.322 |
| | Display quality | Normal | ○ | ○ | P.296 |
| | Volume adjustment | 25 | ○ | ○ | |
| Melody | Volume adjustment | 4 | ○ | ○ | P.305 |
| Music&Video Channel | Change display | 6 images | ○ | ○ | P.322 |
| Kisekae Tool | Change display | 6 images | ○ | ○ | |
| | Display quality | Normal | ○ | ○ | P.290 |
| microSD (Same as described for the Data Box) | | | | | — |
| Music&Video Channel | Volume adjustment | 16 | ○ | ○ | P.340 |
| | Repeat | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | Reservation information | — | | ● | P.338 |
| MUSIC Player | Change display | Jacket display | ○ | ○ | P.347 |
| | Volume adjustment | 16 | ○ | ○ | P.346 |
| | Music settings | Play mode: Normal, Repeat/AVLS: OFF | ○ | ○ | P.349 |
| | Usage history | — | | ● | P.345 |
| Camera | Select size | Still image (Out-camera): Stby(480×864), Still image (In-camera): VGA(640×480), Movie: QCIF(176×144) | ○ | ○ | P.159 |
| | Face detection | ON | ○ | ○ | P.162 |
| | Set attach loc. info | Auto attach loc. info: OFF, Attach loc. info meth.: From act. camera | ○ | ○ | P.171 |
| | Auto Focus | Macro OFF | | | P.173 |
| | Multi focus | Multi AF | ○ | ○ | P.172 |
| | Flash | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.174 |
| | Select save to | Still image: [Camera] folder in My picture of the Data Box, Movie: [Camera] folder in i-motion of the Data Box | ○ | ○ | P.177 |

※ When you delete [What Can U Do(Mashup Style)] preinstalled at the time of purchase, [Silent] is used as the default setting if you perform the Reset settings or Reset all data&set.



Continued

| Menu | | Default setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Camera | Auto save | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.178 |
| | Mini-Photo creator | Not replic. | ○ | ○ | |
| | Image quality | Standard | ○ | ○ | |
| | Digital Zooming | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.179 |
| | Image stabilize | AUTO | ○ | ○ | P.180 |
| | Auto orientation | ON | ○ | ○ | P.179 |
| | Shutter sound | Sound1 | ○ | ○ | P.180 |
| | File size | Attach(L) | ○ | ○ | P.181 |
| | Shoot mode | Image+Sound | ○ | ○ | P.182 |
| Deco-Snap | Select size | QVGA(240×320) | | | P.164 |
| | Flash | OFF | | | |
| | Deco-Snap beep | Smile (Eng.) | ○ | ○ | |
| | Whitening mode | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| Mail | Mail security | — | | ○ | P.142 |
| Alarm | Alarm | Set: OFF, Time: 00:00, Repeat: OFF, Alarm tone: Alarm (std), Alarm volume: 4, Alarm image: めざましアラーム鳴動中, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5:Color 5, Snooze: OFF | ○ | ○ | P.360 |
| SW Update | Scheduled update time | — | | ● | P.460 |
| Public mode (Drive mode) | | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.69 |
| Input text | Learning data | — | | ● | P.389 |
| | Clipboard | — | | ● | P.387 |
| i αppli | Change display | Icon(L) | ○ | ○ | P.249 |

# Character Entry

For kuten codes, see the “Kuten Code List” (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM. You need Adobe® Reader® to read the “Kuten Code List” in the PDF format. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed on your PC, install it from the supplied CD-ROM, which also contains the Adobe® Reader® software.
For details on using Adobe® Reader®, see “Adobe Reader Help” that is installed with the software.

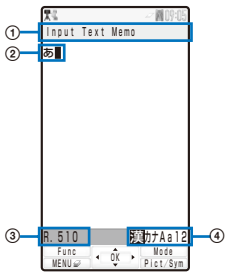

About Entering Text ..... 382
Entering Text ..... 383
Entering Common Phrases ..... 385
Entering Pictographs/Symbols ..... 386
Editing/Saving Common Phrases ..... <Edit common phrases> 386
Quoting Data from the Phonebook, etc. ..... 387
Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text ..... 387
Entering Text Using Kuten Codes ..... <Input kuten> 388
Saving the Frequently Used Kanji Words ..... <Save prediction/user> 388
Restoring the Default Settings ..... <Reset data> 389
Using the Downloaded Dictionary ..... <Download dictionary> 389

# About Entering Text

The overview of the text entry is described here.

- Characters including JIS level 1 and level 2, 6,355 kanji are available.
- Some complicated kanji characters are abridged or simplified in part.

## ■ Text input display




※ The screen shown is an image for explanatory purpose.

①The name of a function for which characters are input

②Entered characters

③Number of bytes of characters that can be entered
A half-width character is counted as one byte and a full-width character as two bytes. The number of characters is displayed for the SMS main body. While composing mail, it appears with a "−" (minus sign) when the number of entered characters exceeds the limit. The word "ap" (approximately) may appear.

④Character mode or pictograph/symbol mode

- The character mode or pictograph/symbol mode available varies depending on the contents to be edited.

| Character mode | |
|---|---|
| Half-width | Full-width |
| [漢]: Kanji/Hiragana ※ | [漢]: Kanji/Hiragana |
| [カナ]: Half-width katakana | [カ]: Full-width katakana |
| [Aa]: Half-width alphabet | [A]: Full-width alphabet |
| [12]: Half-width numeric | [１]: Full-width numeric |

※ Characters are always entered in full-width in the kanji/hiragana mode even if the character mode is set to half-width.

| Pictograph/Symbol mode | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ranking | Pictograph | Deco mail pict.※ | Symbols |

※ Deco mail pict. is a Deco-mail pictograph that can be entered in the Edit mail, Edit template display, and Edit signature displays.

## ■ Changing the character mode or pictograph/symbol mode

Character mode for half-width
Every time you press [i] (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] → [カナ] → [Aa] → [12].

Character mode for full-width
Every time you press [i] (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] → [カ] → [A] → [１].

Pictograph/symbol mode
Every time you press [絵] (Pict/Sym), the character mode changes in the order of [Ranking] → [Pict.] → [Pict-D] → [Symbol].

## ■ Changing the character mode between full-width and half-width

From the Function menu, select [Full/Half size].

## ■ Entering a character assigned to the same key twice or more in succession

After entering the first character, either press [▶] or wait for a while, and the cursor moves automatically.

## ■ Deleting a character

Move the cursor to the character and press [CLR].

- The character at the cursor is deleted by pressing [CLR] for less than a second. The last character is deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.
- All characters at and after the cursor position are deleted by pressing [CLR] for over a second. All characters are deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.

## ■ Inserting a character

Move the cursor to the position to insert a character and enter the character. The characters after the cursor position are shifted to the right of the inserted character.

## ■ If the matching kanji word does not appear

If you cannot get the desired conversion, change the block of characters to be converted. Moving the cursor with [◀] [▶] changes the matching words list/conversion target words displayed according to the cursor position.

■ Undoing text

If you have performed an incorrect operation, you can select, from the Function menu, [Undo] to cancel the last operation and restore the previous status.

- [Undo] is available for the following actions:
  - Confirming character entry (■)
  - [Undo]
  - Entering common phrases
  - Entering pictographs/symbols
  - Entering kuten codes (P.388)
  - Cutting or pasting (P.387)
  - Deleting characters (CLR)
  - Quoting data from Phonebook, My data, etc. (P.387)

# Entering Text

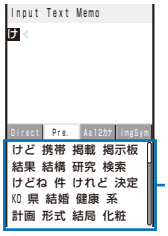
## Entering Text in the Prediction Conversion Mode

Example: Entering "健闘" (けんとう)

**1 Check the character mode in the text input display.**

Check that the kanji/hiragana mode is selected.

**2 Press 2 four times.**




The first character "け" is entered and the matching words list is displayed.

To return to the previous character

When passing the target character by pressing extra keys, press #. Every time you press it, the character returns to the previous one.

**3 Press 0 three times and press 4 five times.**




The characters "んと" are entered and the matching words list is displayed.

To set the User conversion mode temporarily

When you press ch (Convert), the conversion target words for the User conversion mode appear.

To change the matching words lists

Press ▮ (tab ＞). Every time you press ▮ (tab ＞), the matching words list changes in the order of "Aa12カナ" → "ImgSym" → "Direct" → "Pre.".

**4 Press ▼.**

The cursor moves to the matching words list.

**5 Press ▲ ▼ ◀ ▶ to select [健闘] and press ■.**




"健闘" is entered. A selection of words that are expected to succeed the word "健闘" appears in the matching words list.

**6 Press CLR.**

The matching words list closes and "健闘" is finalized.

- The selected words from the matching words list are displayed with priority over other words next time.
- When you enter too many words at once, "▲▼Convert" is displayed instead of displaying the matching words list. When you press ▼, the conversion target words for the User conversion mode appear. When you select a word, the word is displayed in the matching words list from the next time.



Continued

## Entering Text in the User Conversion Mode

Example: Entering “健闘” (けんとう)

**1 Change the conversion mode to [User conversion].**

- Follow the same steps as in “Changing the Conversion Mode” (P.384).

**2 Check the character mode in the text input display.**

Check that the kanji/hiragana mode is selected.

**3 Enter a text.**




Press 2 four times: け
Press 0 three times: ん
Press 4 five times: と
Press 1 three times: う

**4 Press ▼.**




The matching words list for “けんとう” is displayed.

To finalize this word
Press ■ (Select).

**5 Press ▼.**

The cursor is moved to the matching words list.

**6 Select [健闘] and press ■.**

“健闘” is finalized.

To cancel the conversion
Press ✉ (Cancel).

## Changing the Conversion Mode

Select the conversion mode from Prediction conversion or User conversion when the character mode is the kanji/hiragana mode.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Select conversion] and press ■.**

[Prediction]:
When entering characters, a selection of words predicted by the characters appears in the matching words list. This is a conversion mode that a look-ahead strategy is applied to by the FOMA terminal.

[User conversion]:
Enter the entire reading of the word before conversion.

**2 Select a conversion mode and press ■.**

The selected conversion mode is set.

● To change the conversion mode in the text input display, from the Function menu, select [Input method] → [Select conversion].

## Setting the Movement Method for the Cursor in the Matching Words List

You can select a movement method for the cursor in the matching words list.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Operation in item] and press ■.**

[4 directions/hor.]:
Use ▲ ▼ ◀ ▶ to move the cursor upward, downward, to the right, and to the left. When you scroll the JOG upward and downward, the cursor moves to the left and right.

[4 directions/vert.]:
Use ▲ ▼ ◀ ▶ to move the cursor upward, downward, to the right, and to the left. When you scroll the JOG upward and downward, the cursor moves upward and downward.

[hor./hor.]:
Use ▲ ▼ to move the cursor to the left and right. When you scroll the JOG upward and downward, the cursor moves to the left and right.

[hor./vert.]:
Use ▲ ▼ to move the cursor to the left and right. When you scroll the JOG upward and downward, the cursor moves upward and downward.

**2 Select a movement method for the cursor and press ■.**

The Operation in item is set.

## Setting the Cursor to Move Automatically

You can set the time before moving the cursor automatically after entering words.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Auto cursor] and press ■.**

**2 Select a time before moving the cursor automatically and press ■.**

Select from [1 to 5].

To set the cursor not to move automatically
Select [OFF].

# Entering Common Phrases

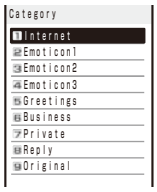
For common phrases, see P.434.

- Common phrases that are available vary depending on the contents to be edited. Unavailable categories are disabled for selection.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the text input display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Input phrases] → a category → a common phrase and press ■.**




The selected common phrase is entered.

To check a common phrase
Move the cursor to the common phrase and press ● (Confirm).

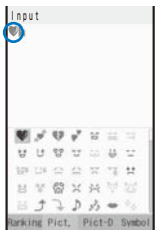
## Entering Pictographs/ Symbols

Pictographs and symbols, which displayed in the order of number of entering in the Pict/Sym ranking, you entered can be selected when you enter characters.
For pictographs and symbols, see P.431, 432.

**1 Press [ch] (Pict/Sym) in the text input display.**

Every time you press [ch] (Pict/Sym), the pictograph/ symbol mode changes in the order of [Ranking] → [Pict.] → [Pict-D] → [Symbol].

**2 Press [ch] (Pict/Sym), select a pictograph, and press [■].**




The selected pictograph is displayed on the top of the text input display. To select the next pictograph, move the cursor to the desired one and press [■].

To cancel the all selected pictographs
Press [CLR] for over a second.

**3 Press [✉] (Close).**

The selected pictographs are entered all at once.

- In the Edit mail, Edit template, and Edit signature displays, every time you select a pictograph, it is entered at a time. Press [✉] (Close) to end the pictograph/symbol mode.
- Deco mail pict. can be entered in the Edit mail, Edit template, and Edit signature displays. You can enter a Deco mail pict. to compose Deco-mail (P.208).

## Editing/Saving Common Phrases <Edit common phrases>

The preinstalled common phrases can be edited according to the intended use. Your own common phrases can also be added as new entries. For the list of common phrases, see P.434.

Example: Editing ".co.jp" saved in the "Internet" category

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Edit common phrases] and press [■].**

The Common phrases display appears.

**2 Select [Internet] → [.co.jp] and press [■].**

To reset the common phrase to the default setting
Move the cursor to the common phrase and from the Function menu, select [Reset] → [Reset one] → [Yes]. To restore the default set of common phrases in a category, from the Function menu, select [Reset] → [Reset all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes]. To restore the default set of common phrases in all categories, press [i] (Rset all) in the Common phrases display, enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To delete a common phrase
Move the cursor to the common phrase and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes].

**3 Press [i] (Edit) and edit the contents.**

Enter a common phrase within 64 full-width or 128 half-width characters.
Editing is completed.

## Quoting Data from the Phonebook, etc.

You can quote data saved in the Phonebook or Own number (My data) or characters scanned by the bar code reader to enter in the main body of mail or in the text input display while displaying a site.

Example: Quoting from the Phonebook

**1 Press [✉] (Func) in the text input display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Quote phonebook] and press [●].**

The Phonebook appears.

To quote the Own number
Select [Quote my data].

To quote texts using the bar code reader
Select [Bar code reader].

**3 Select a name → an item to be quoted and press [●].**

The selected item appears in the text input display.

- When the selected item contains more characters than the maximum number of characters that can be entered, the extra characters are deleted.

## Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text

The entered characters can be pasted to the other input display by cutting or copying.
The characters cut or copied are saved in the clipboard and pasted when the Paste function is selected. The contents of the clipboard can be pasted as many times as needed.

- The clipboard is a special memory area where cut or copied characters are temporarily saved. The clipboard can hold only one item and it is replaced with new data when copying or cutting next data to it.
- The characters in the clipboard are deleted when the FOMA terminal is powered off.
- A character that cannot be entered to the destination display is replaced with a half-width space when pasted. Any extra characters that exceed the maximum allowable number of characters are deleted.
- You cannot cut/copy and paste Deco mail pict. or images inserted in the Deco-mail main body.

### ■ Cutting

Cut the selected characters and save them in the clipboard (the selected characters are deleted from the source display).

| Function menu | Setting option |
|---|---|
| Cut | Cut the selected text. |

### ■ Copying

Copy the selected characters and save them in the clipboard (the selected characters are not deleted from the source display).

| Function menu | Setting option |
|---|---|
| Copy | Copy the selected text. |
| Attach No. | Copy a phone number. |
| Item copy | Copy a phone number, mail address, etc. item by item. |
| Copy Text Memo | Copy the contents of the text memo. |

### ■ Pasting

Paste the characters in the clipboard.

| Function menu | Setting option |
|---|---|
| Paste | Paste the copied or cut data. |



Continued

## Copying/Cutting Text

**1 Press (Func) in the text input display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Copy] and press ■.**

To cut

Select [Cut].

**3 Select the Start point and press ■.**

The first character to be copied is set.

To select all characters

Press (Sel. all).

**4 Select the End point and press ■.**

The range of characters to be copied is set and saved in the clipboard.

## Pasting Text

**1 Select the position to paste in the text input display and press (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Paste] and press ■.**

The copied/cut text is pasted.

# Entering Text Using Kuten Codes

<Input kuten>

You can enter characters, numbers and symbols using corresponding 4-digit kuten codes as listed in the Kuten code list.

- For kuten codes, see the "Kuten Code List" (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM.

**1 Press (Func) in the text input display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Input kuten] and press ■.**




**3 Enter a kuten code.**

The character corresponding to the entered kuten code is entered.

# Saving the Frequently Used Kanji Words

<Save prediction/user>

Frequently used Kanji words can be saved in the Prediction or User dictionary. Saved words are displayed in the matching words list/ conversion target words by priority when you convert characters.

| | |
|---|---|
| Prediction dictionary | Save words that you want to display in the matching words list by priority when you use the Prediction conversion. Up to 300 words can be saved. |
| User dictionary | Save words that you want to display in the conversion target words by priority when you use the User conversion. Up to 200 words can be saved. |

- The words saved in the User dictionary are automatically saved in the Prediction dictionary, but not vice versa.
- When you delete a saved word, delete it from the dictionary to which it is saved.

Example: Saving a word in the Prediction dictionary

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Edit prediction] and press ■.**

The Prediction dictionary display appears.

To add a word to the User dictionary

Select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Edit user dict].

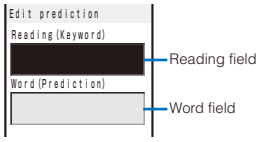
To delete a word

Move the cursor to the word and from the Function menu, select [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several words, from the Function menu, select [Select&delete] and select words, press (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all words, from the Function menu, select [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

To edit a word

Move the cursor to the word and press ■.

**2 Press (Create).**



**3 Enter the reading in the reading field.**

Enter a reading within 16 hiragana characters.

**4 Enter the word in the word field.**

Enter a word within 16 full-width or 32 half-width characters.

**5 Press [i] (Complete).**

The entered word is saved in the Prediction dictionary.

## Restoring the Default Settings <Reset data>

The FOMA terminal's dictionary has a data learning feature. The data leaning feature memorizes the frequency in which individual words are used and give priority to the frequently used words when displaying them in the matching words list/conversion target words.

If you reset the learning data, the order of priority is reset to the default setting.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Reset data] and press [■].**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press [■] (OK).**

The screen for confirming whether to reset the learning data appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press [■].**

The learning data is reset.

## Using the Downloaded Dictionary <Download dictionary>

Up to 20 dictionaries can be downloaded using i-mode for use with the FOMA terminal. When enabling a downloaded dictionary, words saved in it appear in the matching words list.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Application] → [Input method] → [Dictionaries] and press [■].**




To display the detailed information

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Information].

To change the name

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Edit name]. Enter a name within eight full-width or 17 half-width characters.

To delete a dictionary

Move the cursor to the dictionary and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete several dictionaries, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Select&delete] and select dictionaries, press [i] (Complete), and select [Yes]. To delete all dictionaries, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**2 Select a dictionary and press [■] (Set).**

The Valid/Invalid display appears.

**3 Select [Valid]/[Invalid] and press [■].**

When it is set to [Valid], the dictionary is enabled and "▯" (gray) changes to "▯" (green).

- If many dictionaries are enabled simultaneously, some words may not be displayed in the matching words list.
- The dictionary can be downloaded from "PlayNow by SO".
  [i Menu] → [メニュー/検索] (Menu/Search) → [ケータイ電話メーカー] (Mobile Phone Manufacturers) → [PlayNow by SO] (Japanese only)



Continued

## Sorting the Downloaded Dictionaries

When you download several dictionaries, you can change the order of the dictionaries in the list to display words of a frequently used dictionary by priority.

**1 Press ✉ (Func) in the Dictionary folder display.**

The Function menu appears.

**2 Select [Reorder] and press ●.**

**3 Select a dictionary and press ●.**

The Reorder display appears.

**4 Select a position to move to and press ● (Move).**

**5 Press i (Complete).**

The searching priority is set.

# Network Services

Available Network Services

You can use the following DoCoMo network services on the FOMA terminal.

For details on the outline and how to use each service, see the relevant pages indicated in the table below.

| Service name | Application | Monthly charge | Page |
|---|---|---|---|
| The Voice Mail Service | Required | Paid | P.392 |
| The Call Waiting Service | Required | Paid | P.393 |
| The Call Forwarding Service | Required | Free | P.393 |
| The Nuisance Call Blocking Service | Not required | Free | P.394 |
| Notify Caller ID | Not required | Free | P.45 |
| The Caller ID Display Request Service | Not required | Free | P.395 |
| The Dual Network Service | Required | Paid | P.395 |

| Service name | Application | Monthly charge | Page |
|---|---|---|---|
| The English Guidance Service | Not required | Free | P.395 |
| The Multi Number Service | Required | Paid | P.397 |
| 2in1 | Required | Paid | P.398 |
| OFFICEED | Required | Paid | P.402 |
| Public mode (Drive mode) | Not required | Free | P.69 |
| Public mode (Power off) | Not required | Free | P.70 |
| Melody Call | Required | Paid | P.115 |

- You cannot use the network services when you are outside of the service area or in a location without the radio wave.
- For details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide【Network services】”.
- For subscription and inquiry, call the “General Contact” on the backcover of this manual.
- “Deactivating the service” of the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, etc. does not cancel your subscription to the service itself.
- “OFFICEED” is a paid service that requires a subscription. For more information, see the DoCoMo’s website for business customers (http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/).


Using the Voice Mail Service ..... 392
Using the Call Waiting Service ..... 393
Using the Call Forwarding Service ..... 393
Using the Nuisance Call Blocking Service ..... 394
Using the Caller ID Display Request Service ..... 395
Using the Dual Network Service ..... 395
Using the English Guidance Service ..... 395
Using the Service Numbers ..... 396
Selecting an Operation for an Incoming Call during a Call .....<Arrival Call Act> 396
Setting Remote Control .....<Remote Control> 397
Using the Multi Number Service ..... 397
Using 2in1..... 398
Using OFFICEED .....<OFFICEED> 402
Saving a New Service to Use It .....<Additional service (USSD) registration> 402

# Using the Voice Mail Service

The Voice Mail Service takes messages for you, as long as it answers a call with the answering message, if there is an incoming voice or videophone call when you are in a location without the radio wave, while the FOMA terminal is powered off, or when you are in a situation where you cannot answer a call.

- When the Voice Mail Service and Record Message (P.72) are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Voice Mail Service, set the ring time for the Voice Mail Service shorter than the time before starting the answering message for the Record Message.
- When the Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate" and if you do not answer an incoming voice or videophone call, the call is saved in the Received record as a "Missed call" and the notification icon "" (Missed call) appears in the stand-by display.
- When the Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the Voice Mail Service is automatically deactivated.

## ■ Basic flow of the Voice Mail Service

Step 1 Activate the service.
Step 2 The caller leaves a message.
Step 3 Play back the Voice Mail message.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate※ | Select [Activate] → [Activate]/[Ring+Activate] (→ Enter the ring time) → [Yes].<br>● When you select [Ring+Activate], you can set the ring time (000 to 120 seconds) and activate the Voice Mail Service.<br>● When you select [Ring+Activate], the Voice Mail Service is activated by Number A.<br>● When 2in1 is set to the B mode, you cannot select the method of activating the Voice Mail Service. |
| Set ring time | Select [Set ring time] → Enter the ring time (000 to 120 seconds) → (Complete). |
| Deactivate※ | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes]. |
| Check setting | Select [Check setting].<br>● When 2in1 is set to either the B or Dual mode, the screen for selecting either Number A or Number B appears. |
| Play messages※ | Select [Play messages] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance.<br>● The displayed number is the number that the guidance announces when playing back new Voice Mail messages. Already saved Voice Mail messages are not included.<br>● You can also play back the record message by pressing ■ (Link) in the stand-by display and selecting "". |
| Voice Mail setting※ | Select [Voice Mail setting] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |
| Check messages | Select [Check messages].<br>● When a new message is stored at the Voice Mail Service Center, the notification icon "" (Voice Mail message) appears in the stand-by display. |
| Tone/Vibrate notice (Default: ON) | Set whether to alert you of a new message with the mail tone when it is received at the Voice Mail Service Center.<br>Select [Tone/Vibrate notice] → [ON]/[OFF]. |
| Delete VM icon | Select [Delete VM icon] → [Yes]. |
| Missed Call notice – Activate | Notify you of a new message by SMS when it is received while the FOMA terminal is powered off or outside of the service area.<br>Select [Missed Call notice] → [Activate] → [All calls]/[With Caller ID] → [Yes].<br>● Even if the caller is saved in the Phonebook, the caller ID of the caller is notified and the name saved in the Phonebook is not displayed. |
| Missed Call notice – Deactivate | Select [Missed Call notice] → [Deactivate] → [Yes]. |
| Missed Call notice – Check setting | Select [Missed Call notice] → [Check setting]. |

※ When 2in1 is set to the Dual mode, the screen for selecting either Number A or Number B appears.

Notes on the service for the videophone

- When the Voice Mail Service takes a videophone message for you, it is notified to you by SMS.
- To change the settings of the Voice Mail Service for videophone support, press 1 4 1 2 in the stand-by display and operate as instructed by the guidance.
- A videophone of AV32K type is disabled for connection to the Voice Mail Service Center.
- When you connect to the Voice Mail Service Center using Chara-den, the DTMF operation is not available. From the function menu, select [DTMF send mode] (P.75).

## Using the Call Waiting Service

When there is another incoming call while you are on a call, the in-call ring tone notifies you of the second call. You can answer the second call by putting the first call on hold. You can also put your current call on hold and place a call to another party.

- When you receive a videophone call during a voice call, you can answer the videophone call by disconnecting the voice call. You cannot answer a voice/videophone call that arrives during a videophone call. However, it is saved in the Received record.
- To use the Call Waiting Service, set the Arrival Call Act (P.396) to [Answer]. If it is set to other operation, you cannot answer a second voice call received while you are on a voice call even if the Call Waiting Service is activated.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Waiting] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate | Select [Activate] → [Yes]. |
| Deactivate | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes]. |
| Check setting | Select [Check setting]. |

- To put the current call on hold and answer an incoming call, press ■ (Call). When you put a call on hold, the message "Connecting" appears. Every time you press ■ (Switch), you can switch between the calls. To disconnect the put on hold call, from the Function menu, select [Release Hold Call].
- To disconnect the current call and answer an incoming call, press ⏻ and .

## Using the Call Forwarding Service

The Call Forwarding Service forwards a voice or videophone call to a preset forwarding number when you are in a location without the radio wave, the FOMA terminal is powered off, or you do not answer the call within the preset ring time.

- When the Call Forwarding Service and Record Message (P.72) are set simultaneously, and if you want to give priority to the Call Forwarding Service, set the ring time for the Call Forwarding Service shorter than the time before starting the answering message for the Record Message.
- When the Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate" and if you do not answer an incoming voice or videophone call, the call is saved in the Received record as a "Missed call" and the notification icon "" (Missed call) appears in the stand-by display.
- When you receive a videophone call, the call is disconnected if the forwarding number does not support a videophone feature compliant with 3G-324M.

### ■ Basic flow of the Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 Save the forwarding number.
Step 2 Activate the Call Forwarding Service.
Step 3 Receive a call on your FOMA terminal.
Step 4 If you do not answer the call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified forwarding number.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Forwarding] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate※ | Select [Activate] → [Activate]/[Set+Activate](→ Enter the forwarding number and ring time) → [Yes].<br>• When you select [Set+Activate], you can set the forwarding number (within 26 digits) and ring time (000 to 120 seconds) and activate the Call Forwarding Service.<br>• When 2in1 is set to the B mode, you cannot select the method of activating the Call Forwarding Service. |
| Deactivate※ | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes]. |
| Change FWD number | Select [Change FWD number] → Enter the forwarding number (within 26 digits) → Select [Set]/[Set+Activate].<br>• When 2in1 is set to the B mode, select [Change FWD number] → enter the forwarding number (within 26 digits) → select [Yes]. |
| If FWD number busy | Set whether to connect to the Voice Mail Service Center when the forwarding number is busy.<br>Select [If FWD number busy] → [Not connect]/[Connect]. |
| Check setting | Select [Check setting].<br>• When 2in1 is set to either the B or Dual mode, the screen for selecting either Number A or Number B appears. |

※When 2in1 is set to the Dual mode, the screen for selecting either Number A or Number B appears.

● To set on/off of the Call Forwarding guidance, press 1 4 2 9 ☎ in the stand-by display and operate as instructed by the guidance.

# Using the Nuisance Call Blocking Service

The Nuisance Call Blocking Service prevents receiving a "nuisance call" such as prank phone calls. When you set the Bar Nuisance Calls, further calls from registered nuisance call numbers are automatically rejected and the call rejection guidance is played back on the caller's phone.

- The ring tone does not sound when there is an incoming call from the saved phone number. The call is not saved in the Received record, either.
- When you receive a videophone call from a caller who is saved as a nuisance caller, it is disconnected after playing back the call rejection video guidance on the caller's phone.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Bar Nuisance Calls] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Register Caller | Save the phone number of the last received call.<br>Select [Register Caller] → [Yes]. |
| Reg. selected No. | Select [Reg. selected No.] → Enter the phone number (within 22 digits) → Select [Yes]. |
| Delete all entries | Select [Delete all entries] → [Yes]. |
| Delete last entry | Delete the last saved phone number. You can delete another phone number from the last saved one by repeating the same operation.<br>Select [Delete last entry] → [Yes]. |
| Check No. of entry | Select [Check No. of entry]. |

## Using the Caller ID Display Request Service

When you receive a voice or videophone call without a caller ID, the Caller ID Display Request Service answers the call with a guidance requesting the caller to send the caller ID and then automatically disconnects the call.

- When there is an incoming call from the caller who does not notify the phone number, the ring tone does not sound. The call is not saved in the Received record either.
- When you receive a videophone call without a caller ID, it is disconnected after playing back the caller ID display request video guidance on the caller's phone.
- When you receive a PushTalk call without a caller ID, the caller ID display request guidance is not played back on the caller's phone and the call is disconnected.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Caller ID Request] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate | Select [Activate] → [Yes]. |
| Deactivate | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes]. |
| Check setting | Select [Check setting]. |

## Using the Dual Network Service

The Dual Network Service enables you to use a Mova terminal using the phone number of the FOMA terminal you use at present. This service enables you to select and use both the FOMA and Mova service areas as required.

- You cannot use the FOMA and Mova terminals at the same time.
- Make sure to perform the operation for switching the Dual Network Service from the FOMA terminal not using the service.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Dual Network] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Switch Dual Network | Switch the Dual Network Service to enable using the FOMA terminal for this service.<br>Select [Switch Dual Network] → Enter the network security code → Select [Yes]. |
| Check setting | Select [Check setting]. |

## Using the English Guidance Service

You can set English voice guidance to be played during various network service settings such as the Voice Mail Service and when you are outside of the service area.
If a caller is also using this service, the settings of a call from this caller have priority over the settings on the recipient's phone.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [English Guidance] → [Guidance setting] and press ■.**

**2 Select a target for the English Guidance Service and press ■.**

[Call+Income]:
Set both the guidance that you hear when you place a call and that a recipient hears upon receiving your call.

[Call]:
Set the guidance that you hear when you place a call.

[Income]:
Set the guidance that a recipient hears upon receiving your call.

**3 Select a language for the guidance to be played during outgoing calls and press ■.**

**4 Select a language for the guidance played during incoming calls and press ■.**

[Japanese]:
Set the guidance to Japanese.

[Japanese+English]:
Set the guidance in the order of Japanese → English.

[English+Japanese]:
Set the guidance in the order of English → Japanese.

To check the settings
From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [English Guidance] → [Check setting].

## Using the Service Numbers

You can call DoCoMo General Inquiries, Contact for Repairs, etc.

- Depending on the UIM being used, the items to be displayed may be different or some items may not be displayed.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Service Numbers] and press ■.**

The Service Numbers display appears.

[ドコモ故障問合せ] (Contact for Repairs):
Call the DoCoMo representative of Contact for Repairs.

[ドコモ総合案内・受付] (General Inquiries):
Call the DoCoMo information desk of General Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center).

**2 Select a contact number → [Yes] and press ■.**

The call is connected to the contact number.

● When 2in1 is set to the Dual mode, the screen for selecting either Number A or Number B appears.

## Selecting an Operation for an Incoming Call during a Call <Arrival Call Act>

If you are subscribing to the Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, or Call Waiting Service, you can set the operation you want to perform when you receive the second voice or videophone call during a call.

- If you do not subscribed to the Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, or Call Waiting Service, you cannot answer a second incoming call received while you are on a current call.
- To use the Arrival Call Act function, set the In-call arrival act to "Activate".

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Arrival Call Act] and press ■.**

[Answer]:
You can answer a call or forward it manually to the Voice Mail Service Center or a forwarding number.

[Voice Mail]:
An incoming call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.

[Call Forwarding]:
An incoming call is forwarded to a saved forwarding number.

[Call Rejection]:
An incoming call is rejected.

**2 Select an operation for an incoming call and press ■.**

The operation for an incoming call during a call is set.

## Starting/Stopping the In-call Arrival Act

You can start or stop the operation you have selected for the Arrival Call Act.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [In-call arrival act] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate | Select [Activate] → [Yes]. |
| Deactivate | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes]. |
| Check setting | Select [Check setting]. |

# Setting Remote Control

<Remote Control>

You can set to be able to operate the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, etc. from a general push-button telephone, public phone, DoCoMo mobile phones, etc.

- To use the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service overseas, the Remote Control function must be set in advance.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Remote Control] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate | Select [Activate] → [Yes]. |
| Deactivate | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes]. |
| Check setting | Select [Check setting]. |

# Using the Multi Number Service

The Multi Number Service enables you to add up to two numbers, Additional No.1 and Additional No.2 in addition to the Basic Number, as your FOMA terminal phone numbers.

- You cannot use the Multi Number Service and 2in1 simultaneously.

## Setting Phone Number Details

- You cannot change the phone number displayed under "Basic Number". However, you can set the ring tone/incoming image using the Incoming set, etc.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Multi Number] → [Number Setting] and press ■.**




**2 Set each item.**

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| Multi Number call | Select [ON]/[OFF] of the Multi Number call.<br>[ON] : Enable to select a phone number to be used for placing a call from the Option call display.<br>[OFF] : You cannot select a phone number when you place a call. |
| NAME | Enter a name within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters. |
| 1 / 2 | Enter a phone number within 26 digits. |
| ♪ | Select a ring tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box.<br>● You can set the following files. You can select a Chaku-Uta® from [i-motion].<br>※ Some files may not be set.<br>● To mute the ring tone, select [Silent]. |

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| MUSIC※ | AAC-LC/ HE-AAC | Max. 5M bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA (640×480)] |
| Melody | SMF/ MFi | Max. 350K bytes | — |



Continued

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| | Select an incoming image from My picture/i-motion of the Data Box.<br>• You can set the following files. |

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| My picture | GIF/JPEG | Max. 250K bytes | Max. [Stby (480×864)], Max. W480×H288 for GIF animation |
| | SWF | Max. 100K bytes | — |
| i-motion※ | MP4 | Max. 10M bytes | Max. [VGA (640×480)] |

※ Some i-motion may not be set.

**3 Press [i] (Complete).**

The details of a phone number are set.

- If you do not yet subscribe to the Multi Number Service, use the FOMA terminal with the Multi Number call set to [OFF].
- If the Multi Number call is set to [ON], a phone number and name associated with the Multi Number (Basic Number/Additional No.1/Additional No.2) selected in the Option call display are displayed while placing a call.




- When you receive a call, a phone number and name associated with the used Multi Number (Basic Number/Additional No.1/Additional No.2) being used are displayed.




- When you place a call from the Redial or Received record, the Multi Number previously used for placing/receiving a call is displayed and the call is placed using this number.

## Setting an Originating Phone Number

You can select a phone number to be used when you place a call.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Multi Number] → [Set Multi Number] and press [■].**

**2 Select an originating phone number → [Yes] and press [■].**

The phone number you use for placing a call is set.

To check the phone number you use for placing a call

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Multi Number] → [Check Multi Number].

- You can select a phone number manually in the Option call display when you place a call (P.60).

# Using 2in1

You can separately use two phone numbers, two mail addresses, and exclusive modes for each on your FOMA terminal as if you have two terminals.

For the default settings, see the List of menus (P.420).

| Mode | Description |
|---|---|
| A mode | You can dial with your phone number (Number A), send i-mode mail with Address A, and browse related data. |
| B mode | You can dial with 2in1 phone number (Number B), access to sites where WEB mail is available with Address B, and browse related data. |
| Dual mode | The mode that supports both functions of A and B modes. |

- Sending/receiving mail for Address B is performed on the specified WEB mail site.
- Packet communication in B mode is available while subscribing to the i-mode service.
- For details on 2in1, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【2in1】".

- When you replace the UIM (From 2in1 subscriber to 2in1 subscriber) while 2in1 is used, to obtain a correct Number B, you need to perform the 2in1 function OFF (P.400) first, and then set the 2in1 to ON again.
  When you replace the UIM (From 2in1 subscriber to 2in1 non-subscriber), perform the 2in1 function OFF.
- When placing a voice/videophone call or originating 64K data communication from an external device, if 2in1 is set to either the A mode or Dual mode, it is done by Number A. When the B mode is set, it is done by Number B.

## Setting 2in1

You can set the operations such as the Stand-by display and Receive avoid. setting by setting the ON for 2in1.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [2in1 setting] and press ■.**

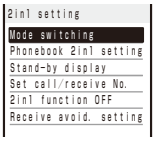
The Security code screen appears.

- The 2in1 setting display also appears by pressing 8 for over a second in the stand-by display.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

When 2in1 is already set to ON
The 2in1 setting display appears.

**3 Select [Yes] and press ■.**




2in1 is set to ON and the 2in1 setting display appears.

**4 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Mode switching | Switch the 2in1 modes.<br>Select [Mode switching] → [A mode]/[B mode]/[Dual mode]. |
| Phonebook 2in1 setting | Change the 2in1 settings saved for the Phonebook.<br>• When an entry is saved in the Phonebook, the Phonebook 2in1 setting compatible with the 2in1 mode is automatically saved.<br>● Set each entry<br>Select [Phonebook 2in1 setting] → phonebook data → i (Set) → Select [A]/[B]/[Common].<br>● Set for a group<br>Select [Phonebook 2in1 setting] → ✉ (Func) → Select [Set all groups] → a group → i (Set) → Select [A]/[B]/[Common]. |
| Stand-by display | Set the stand-by display for the B and Dual modes.<br>Select [Stand-by display] → [B mode]/[Dual mode] → an image from My picture of the Data Box.<br>• You can set the following files. |

| Category | File format | File size | Image size |
|---|---|---|---|
| My picture | GIF/JPEG | Max. 250K bytes | Max. [Stby (480×864)], Max. W480×H288 for GIF animation |
| | SWF | Max. 100K bytes | — |

• To specify no image, select [None].



Continued

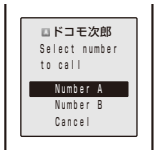
<table>
<tr><th>Menu item</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>Set call/receive No.</td><td>To identify the call placed or received using Number B, set the font color and ring tone of the incoming/receiving call display.<br>● Set the font color<br>Select [Set call/receive No.] → [Disp. call/rcv. No.] → [dark]/[light].<br>● Set the ring tone<br>Select [Set call/receive No.] → [Ringtone for Number B] → [Incoming call]/[Incoming V.phone] → a ring tone from MUSIC/i-motion/Melody of the Data Box.<br>• You can set the following files.<br><table><tr><th>Category</th><th>File format</th><th>File size</th><th>Image size</th></tr><tr><td>MUSIC※</td><td>AAC-LC/HE-AAC</td><td>Max. 5M bytes</td><td>—</td></tr><tr><td>i-motion※</td><td>MP4</td><td>Max. 10M bytes</td><td>Max. [VGA (640×480)]</td></tr><tr><td>Melody</td><td>SMF/MFi</td><td>Max. 350K bytes</td><td>—</td></tr></table>※ Some files may not be set.<br>• If you select [ON] at [Link incoming call], the ring tone for the Incoming V.phone follows the setting for the Incoming call.<br>• When you receive a call without the caller ID, the ring tone follows the setting of [Ringtone for Number B].</td></tr>
<tr><td>2in1 function OFF</td><td>Quit using the 2in1 functions.<br>Select [2in1 function OFF] → [Yes].</td></tr>
<tr><td>Receive avoid. setting</td><td>Set the restriction for incoming call of Number A and Number B.<br>● Set the restriction for incoming call for Number A and Number B individually<br>Select [Receive avoid. setting] → [Change receive avoid.] → [Rcv. avoid. (Number A)]/[Rcv. avoid. (Number B)] → [Receive]/[Avoid]/[Unchange] → (Complete).<br>● Check the current setting<br>Select [Receive avoid. setting] → [Check receive avoid.] → [Yes].<br>● Activate/deactivate the Mode link<br>When the A mode is used, allow to receive a call only for Number A. When the B mode is used, allow to receive a call only for Number B. When the Dual mode is used, allow to receive a call for both Number A and Number B.<br>Select [Receive avoid. setting] → [Mode link setting] → [Yes].<br>• When the Mode link setting is set to “Activate”, you cannot change the mode while the FOMA is outside of the service area.<br>● Set the Receive avoid. setting from overseas<br>Select [Receive avoid. setting] → [Rcv. avoid. set(Int.)] → Operate as instructed by the guidance.</td></tr>
</table>

## Selecting a Phone Number When Placing a Call

When the Dual mode is set, you can select a phone number to place a call.

**1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display and press .**

To place a videophone call
Press (V.phone).




**2 Select [Number A]/[Number B] and press .**

Place a call from the selected phone number.

● When you place a call using the Redial/Received record, the phone number which was used to receive/place a call previously is displayed and the call is placed using this phone number.

## Functions Available for Each Mode

The funcions which only differ from each mode are listed (the functions which are common with the A mode are excluded).

| Service | | | A mode | B mode | Dual mode |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Voice/ videophone call | Call | | Number A | Number B | Selectable when placing a call ※1 |
| | Receive | | All | | |
| Phonebook | Display | | A/Common | B/Common | All |
| | Change name※2 | | A/Common | B/Common | All |
| | Phonebook 2in1 setting when saving new data | | A | B | A |
| | Receive all from Infrared/iC communication/microSD memory card※3 | | Copy the Phonebook 2in1 setting of the sender※4 | | |
| | Receive one from Infared/iC communication/microSD memory card※3 | | A | B | A |
| | UIM phonebook | Copy from FOMA terminal to UIM | Common | | |
| | | Copy from UIM to FOMA terminal | A | B | A |
| Redial record | Display | | Call from Number A | Call from Number B | All |
| Received record | Display | | Call for Number A | Call for Number B | All |
| Mail/SMS | Display | | • Mail sent for/from Address A<br>• SMS sent for/from Number A | FOMA terminal<br>• Received mail sent for Address B saved in the FOMA terminal (at the WEB mail site, mail set to [端末に保存] (save to the FOMA terminal)), newly arrived notification mail, or alarm notification mail<br>• SMS sent for Number B<br>WEB mail site<br>• Mail sent for/from Address B | FOMA terminal<br>• Mail sent for/from Address A, received mail sent for Address B saved in the FOMA terminal, newly arrived notification mail, or alarm notification mail<br>• SMS sent for/from Address A<br>• SMS sent for Number B<br>WEB mail site<br>• Mail sent for/from Address B |
| | Send | | • Mail from Address A<br>• SMS from Number A | FOMA terminal<br>• Cannot send mail/SMS<br>WEB mail site<br>• Mail from Address B | FOMA terminal<br>• Mail from Address A※5<br>• SMS from Number A<br>WEB mail site<br>• Mail from Address B |
| | Receive | | • Mail for Address A/SMS for Number A (with sound)<br>• Received mail sent for Address B saved in the FOMA terminal, newly arrived notification mail, or alarm notification mail/SMS sent for Number B (without sound) | • Mail for Address A/SMS for Number A (without sound)<br>• Received mail sent for Address B saved in the FOMA terminal, newly arrived notification mail, or alarm notification mail/SMS sent for Number B (with sound) | • Mail for Address A/SMS for Number A (with sound)<br>• Received mail sent for Address B saved in the FOMA terminal, newly arrived notification mail, or alarm notification mail/SMS sent for Number B (with sound) |
| | Receive all from Infrared/iC communication/microSD memory card※3 | | Copy mail/SMS following the sender status※4 | | |
| | Receive one from Infared/iC communication/microSD memory card※3 | | A | | |
| | SMS in UIM | Copy from FOMA terminal to UIM | A | | |
| | | Copy from UIM to FOMA terminal | A | | |
| PushTalk | Originate | | Number A | Not available | Number A |
| | Receive | | Number A | | |
| | PushTalk phonebook | | Display | Cannot display | Display |
| i-αppli | | | Available all | Available※6 | Available※7 |
| Own number | | | Number A/Address A | Number B/Address B | Number A/B/Address A/B |



Continued

※1 To place a call, Number A is the default setting for the Phonebook of the A/Common setting, and Number B is the one for the Phonebook of the B setting.

※2 When the phone number of placing/receiving a call or sending/receiving SMS and mail address of receiving/sending mail are saved in the Phonebook, after comparing them with the phonebook data, the name saved in the Phonebook of each phone number and mail address is displayed.

※3 When you save the phonebook entries or mail from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, you can save them based on each file in the microSD memory card.

※4 When the sender's mobile phone is not compatible with the 2in1 functions, Number A is applied.

※5 When you compose new mail in the Dual mode, you can select a mail address from the Phonebook of the B mode setting but note that mail is sent from Address A.

※6 Except i-αppli with mail, i-αppli using mail, and i-αppli stand-by display.

※7 Except i-αppli stand-by display.

## Using OFFICEED <OFFICEED>

"OFFICEED" is a fixed-rate service within a group provided by IMCS (Indoor Mobile Communication System). You may need to apply separately to use this service.

- For more information (provided only in Japanese), see the DoCoMo's website for business customers (http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/).

## Saving a New Service to Use It <Additional service (USSD) registration>

When DoCoMo adds a new network service, you can save the service in the Menu and use it.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Additional service] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Register USSD | [Register USSD] → [Unregistered] → i (Edit) → Enter a name of the service at [Service] (within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters) → Enter a USSD command at [USSD] (within 20 digits) → i (Complete).<br>● To use a service<br>Select [Register USSD] → a service.<br>● To delete a service<br>[Register USSD] → Move the cursor to a service and press ✉ (Func) → Select [Delete one] (to delete all services, select [Delete all] → enter the Security code) → Select [Yes]. |
| Register ans word | [Register ans word] → [Unregistered] → i (Edit) → Enter an answering message at [Answer wording] (within 10 full-width or 20 half-width characters) → Enter a USSD command at [USSD] (within 20 digits) → i (Complete).<br>● To delete an answering message<br>[Register ans word] → Move the cursor to an answering message and press ✉ (Func) → Select [Delete one] (to delete all answering messages, select [Delete all] → enter the Security code) → Select [Yes]. |

# PC Connection

For detailed information on Data Communication, see the “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM or available on the DoCoMo’s website. You need Adobe® Reader® to read the “Manual for PC connection setting” in the PDF format. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed on your PC, install it from the supplied CD-ROM, which also contains the Adobe® Reader® software.
For details on using Adobe® Reader®, see “Adobe Reader Help” that is installed with the software.

About Data Communication ..... 404
Before Using Data Communication ..... 406
Preparations and Flow of Data Transfer (OBEX™ Communication) ..... 407
Preparations and Flow of Data Communication ..... 407
AT Commands ..... 408
About the Supplied CD-ROM ..... 408
Introduction of DoCoMo keitai datalink ..... 408

# About Data Communication

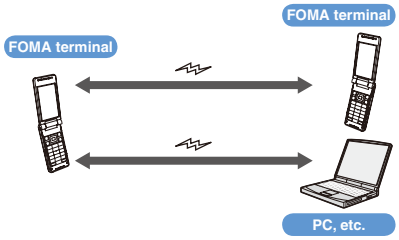
You can use the FOMA terminal for three types of data communication, packet communication, 64K data communication, and data transfer (OBEX™ communication).

- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication.
- If you are going to connect the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's "sigmarion Ⅱ"/"sigmarion Ⅲ"/"musea" PDA to perform data communication, you should update "sigmarion Ⅱ"/"musea". For details about updating, see the DoCoMo's website.
- 64K data communication to be performed by connecting to a PC is not available overseas. When you originate the packet communication, use the IP connection to communicate (the PPP connection cannot originate the packet communication).

## Data Transfer (OBEX™ Communication)

Data such as an image, music, Phonebook, or mail can be sent and received between the FOMA terminal and other FOMA terminal or device such as a PC.

■ Infrared communication (P.329, 330)/iC communication (P.332, 333)




■ FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) (P.314, 344)/microSD memory card (P.306)/DoCoMo keitai datalink (P.408)




## Packet Communication

A charge applies to this type of communication based on the volume of exchanged data (maximum reception speed 3.6Mbps, maximum transmission speed 384kbps).
You can perform packet communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA packet communication-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera". You can also exchange data by accessing an in-house LAN connected to the FOMA network.

- Note that packet communication could be expensive if you exchange large volumes of data such as viewing sites or Internet home pages that contain images or downloading files.
- The maximum transmission/reception speed is 384kbps outside of the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- When you use DoCoMo's "sigmarion Ⅲ"/"sigmarion Ⅱ"/"musea" PDA to perform packet communication, the maximum transmission/reception speed is 384kbps. It does not support the high-speed communication compatible with HIGH-SPEED Area.

## 64K Data Communication

A charge applies to this type of communication based on the duration of a communication.
You can perform 64K data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) and making the necessary settings. Use a FOMA 64K data communication-compliant access point such as DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera" or ISDN synchronous 64K access points.

- Note that 64K data communication could be expensive if it is performed for a long period of time.

## Precautions on Use

### Usage Fee of Internet Service Provider

When you use the Internet, a usage fee is required for your Internet service provider. This usage fee, which is separate from the FOMA service charges, must be paid directly to the Internet service provider. For details about usage fees, contact your Internet service provider.

You can use DoCoMo's Internet connection service "mopera U"/"mopera".

To use "mopera U", you need to subscribe to this service (paid service). No monthly charge is required to use "mopera" and you do not need to subscribe to it.

### Setting a Host (Such as an Internet Service Provider)

The host for packet communication is different from the host for 64K data communication. To use packet communication, use a packet communication-compliant host; to use 64K data communication, use a FOMA 64K data communication-compliant host or ISDN synchronous 64K-compliant host.

- You cannot connect to a DoPa access point.

### User Authentication for Network Access

User authentication (ID and password) may be required when connecting to some hosts. If user authentication is required, enter your ID and password on the communication software (dial-up network) for connecting to the host. The Internet service provider or network administrator of the host assigns an ID and password. For details, contact your Internet service provider or network administrator of the host.

### Access Authentication for the Use of a Browser

When a FirstPass-compatible site that you access through the Internet browser on your PC requires the FirstPass (user certificate) as an access authentication, install the FirstPass PC software from the supplied CD-ROM and perform necessary settings. For details, see "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the [FirstPassPCSoft] folder on the CD-ROM. You need Adobe® Reader® (Version 6.0 or later is recommended) to read "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If Adobe® Reader® is not installed on your PC, install it from the same CD-ROM, which also contains the Adobe® Reader® software.

For details on using Adobe® Reader®, see "Adobe Reader Help" that is installed with the software.

### Conditions of Packet and 64K Data Communication

The following conditions are necessary to perform communication using the FOMA terminal (for using in Japan).

- The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) can be used on your PC.
- Your PDA must have FOMA packet and 64K data communication support.
- You must be inside of the FOMA's service area.
- The host for packet communication must have FOMA packet communication support.
- The host for 64K data communication must have FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronous 64K data communication support.

Note, however, that even if you comply with the above conditions, you may not be able to perform communication if the base station is congested or radio wave condition is poor.

# Before Using Data Communication

## About the Operating Environment

Operating environment of a PC to be used for data communication is as follows.

| Item | Required environment |
|---|---|
| PC main unit | • PC/AT compatible machine with a built-in or removable CD-ROM drive<br>• USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1 compliant) |
| OS※1 | Windows 2000 Professional,<br>Windows XP,<br>Windows Vista (Japanese version) |
| Required memory※2 | Windows 2000 Professional: 64MB or more<br>Windows XP: 128MB or more<br>Windows Vista: 512MB or more |
| Hard drive capacity※2 | 5MB or more free space |
| Display | High color (65,536 colors) and high resolution (800×600 dots) or over (recommended) |

※1 Operation on a PC running upgraded OS is not guaranteed.

※2 The required memory and hard drive capacity may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

## Other Necessary Items

Other than the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are necessary.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Supplied CD-ROM “FOMA SO906i CD-ROM”

- This manual assumes that you use the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).
- Use the exclusive “FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02” or “FOMA USB Cable”. A generic USB cable for a PC connection cannot be used because it has a different connector shape.
- If you use USB HUB, it may not work properly.

### ■ Definition of terms

**● Administrator**

An administrator is authorized access to all Windows XP, Windows 2000 Professional, and Windows Vista systems. At least one user with Administrator privilege is set for each PC. Normally, a user without Administrator privilege cannot install the FOMA communication configuration files. For more information on Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or a representative of Microsoft Corporation.

**● APN (Access Point Name)**

A character string used for identifying the Internet service provider host or in-house LAN for packet communication. For example, the APN of “mopera U” is “mopera.net”.

**● cid (Context Identifier)**

A registration number available when you save a packet communication host (APN) in the FOMA terminal. You can save up to 10 numbers from one to 10 for the FOMA terminal.

Default cid of the FOMA terminal

| Registration number (cid) | Host (APN) |
|---|---|
| 1 | mopera.ne.jp (mopera) |
| 2 | Undefined |
| 3 | mopera.net (mopera U) |
| 4-10 | Undefined |

**● DNS (Domain Name System)**

DNS is a system that converts a domain name (example: nttdocomo.co.jp) into an IP address, which is used by a PC.

**● QoS (Quality of Service)**

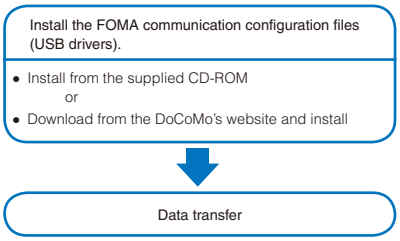
Service quality technology that enables the user to use a communication line in accordance with requirements. If you are using the FOMA terminal, you can set the communication speed for connection.

**● 通信設定最適化 (Optimizing the communication settings)**

“通信設定最適化” is a “TCP parameter setting” tool that makes optimal use of TCP/IP transmission capabilities for packet communication on the FOMA network. To make the most of the communication performance of the FOMA terminal, you need to configure the communication settings using this software.

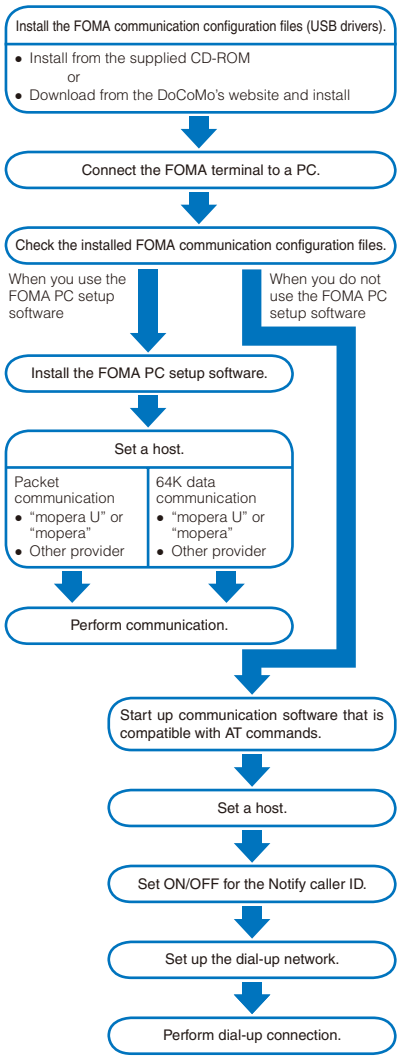
## Preparations and Flow of Data Transfer (OBEX™ Communication)

To use the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional), install the FOMA communication configuration files.




## Preparations and Flow of Data Communication

The preparations required for performing packet and 64K data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are given below.



## AT Commands

AT commands are the commands (instructions) that are executed on a PC for setting and changing the functions of the FOMA terminal. For more information on the AT commands, see the “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF format) included in the supplied CD-ROM.

## About the Supplied CD-ROM

The supplied CD-ROM contains the software required for data communication using the FOMA terminal and the “Manual for PC connection setting”/“Kuten Code List” operation instructions (PDF format). For details, see the supplied CD-ROM.

<Software/PDF>

- FOMA communication configuration files
- FOMA PC setup software
- FOMA byte counter
- General information about DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PC software
- General information about mopera U (mopera U start up tool/mopera U connection & setting tool/mopera U requesting original data/FOMA byte counter)
- General information about Napster®
- “Manual for PC connection setting” in PDF format
- “Kuten Code List” in PDF format
- Adobe® Reader®
- Picture Motion Browser Ver.2.2.01
- Declaration of Conformity (DoC)

● When you set the supplied CD-ROM in the PC, a warning window as shown below may appear. This warning appears because of the security setting on the Internet Explorer, however, causing no problem for use.
Click [はい].

※ The window example assumes that Windows XP is used as an operating system. The actual window that appears may differ depending on your PC environment.




## Introduction of DoCoMo keitai datalink

“DoCoMo keitai datalink” software is used to make backup files of the Phonebook and mail, etc. to a PC from your FOMA terminal and edit the data on the PC. This software is provided on the DoCoMo’s website. For more information about this software and how to download this software, see the following website. You can also access the following website from the supplied CD-ROM. (Japanese only)

http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/

For more details about the downloading method, data that can be transferred, supporting OS, operating environment, installation method, operation method, and restrictions, see the above website.
For the operation procedure after installing the software, see the Help of the software.
A FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required to use the DoCoMo keitai datalink software.

# Overseas Use


Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING) ..... 410
Services Available Overseas ..... 410
Before Using the FOMA Terminal Overseas ..... 411
Placing a Call from Your Overseas Location ..... 414
Receiving a Call ..... 414
Setting the Network to be Used..... <3G/GSM setting> 415
Setting the Carrier Search Method ..... <Network search mode> 415
Setting the Higher-priority Carrier for Connection ..... <PLMN setting> 416
Setting the Display for International Roaming ..... <Operator name display> 416
Checking the Communication Status ..... <Check service area> 417
Starting the Roaming Guidance Service ..... <Roaming Guidance> 417
Rejecting an Incoming Call during Roaming ..... <Bar Incoming call> 417
Using the Network Services during Roaming ..... <Oversea service> 418

# Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

The international roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that enables you to use the same phone number and mail address as used in Japan to have phone conversations or communicate using the networks of overseas carriers even if you are abroad.

For more information on available communication services while the international roaming service is used, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【International services】". Also, at the DoCoMo's "International service website", you can check the latest information of international services as well as download the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide【International services】".

http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/service/world/

- The FOMA terminal works in a 3G Roaming Area and GSM/GPRS service area.
- The FOMA terminal is set to automatically change a network at the time of purchase (P.415).

## Subscribing to WORLD WING

- If you subscribed to the FOMA services after September 1, 2005, you already have "WORLD WING" and no application is required. If you declined to use "WORLD WING" when you subscribed to the FOMA services or canceled the "WORLD WING" service halfway, you need to make a separate application.
- If you subscribed to the FOMA services before August 31, 2005 and have not yet made an application to "WORLD WING", you need to make an application.
- This service is not available in some service charge plans.

### ■ Country codes for major countries

When you use an international call or set to the Int'l dial assist, use the following country codes (as of December 2007).

| Area | Country code | Area | Country code |
|---|---|---|---|
| Australia | 61 | Malaysia | 60 |
| Austria | 43 | Maldives | 960 |
| Belgium | 32 | Netherlands | 31 |
| Brazil | 55 | New Caledonia | 687 |
| Canada | 1 | New Zealand | 64 |
| China | 86 | Norway | 47 |
| Czech Republic | 420 | Peru | 51 |
| Egypt | 20 | Philippines | 63 |
| Fiji | 679 | Russia | 7 |
| Finland | 358 | Singapore | 65 |
| France | 33 | Spain | 34 |
| Germany | 49 | Sweden | 46 |
| Greece | 30 | Switzerland | 41 |
| Hong Kong | 852 | Tahiti (French Polynesia) | 689 |
| Hungary | 36 | | |
| India | 91 | Taiwan | 886 |
| Indonesia | 62 | Thailand | 66 |
| Italy | 39 | Turkey | 90 |
| Japan | 81 | United Kingdom | 44 |
| Korea | 82 | USA | 1 |
| Macau | 853 | Vietnam | 84 |

● For other country codes and details, see the DoCoMo's "International service website".

# Services Available Overseas

Communication services that you can use overseas are described in the following table.

- Some of the communication services may not be available depending on the carrier or network to which you connect. For the communication services that can be used during international roaming, see DoCoMo's "International service website".

| Communication service | 3G | GSM | GPRS |
|---|---|---|---|
| Voice call※1<br>You can use the same mobile phone number as used in Japan even from an overseas location to place international calls to Japan and other countries as well as ordinary calls in your country of stay. | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Videophone call※1<br>You can place international videophone calls to specific 3G carrier users overseas and to FOMA users. | ○ | × | × |
| i-mode<br>You can use i-mode even from an overseas location. | ○ | × | ○ |
| i-mode mail<br>You can use the same mail address as used in Japan even overseas and send/receive i-mode mail. | ○ | × | ○ |
| SMS※2<br>You can use the same mobile phone number as used in Japan even from an overseas location to send/receive SMS messages. | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| i-Channel※3 | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Data communication (Packet communication)※4 | ○ | × | ○ |

※1 When 2in1 is used, you cannot place a call from Number B.

※2 You can send and receive SMS to/from a user who uses the FOMA terminal in Japan and overseas and a user who is using an overseas carrier, even if you are using the international roaming service.

- When you send SMS to the recipient who uses an overseas carrier, enter "+" and the recipient's country code before entering the phone number of the recipient as his address. Make sure to omit the first "0" when you enter the phone number, if it starts with "0".
- If you include characters in your SMS message that are not supported by the recipient's terminal, those characters may not be displayed correctly when you send this SMS message to a recipient who is using an overseas carrier. For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【International services】" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide【Network services】".

※3 Auto update is automatically and temporarily canceled when you connect to an overseas carrier. To restart the Auto update of i-Channel overseas, you need to perform the i-Channel setting again. Note that there is a communication charge every time you receive i-Channel while you are overseas (domestic free-of-charge communication is not applicable overseas).

※4 64K data communication to be performed by connecting to a PC is not available overseas. When you originate the packet communication, use the IP connection to communicate (the PPP connection cannot originate the packet communication).

● The GPS function is not available overseas. Also, if you access to the site for performing settings to use the GPS service, the display informing an error appears but packet communication charge is required.

# Before Using the FOMA Terminal Overseas

You must check the following items before departure, during your stay overseas, and after returning to Japan.

- The overseas communication charge is included in your monthly charge. In some cases, however, the overseas communication charge is included in the charge of the following month depending on the system used by the carriers in the country of your stay. Also note that in some cases the charge is not included in the relevant month even if you use the FOMA terminal overseas during the same billing target period.

## Checks before Departure

To use the FOMA terminal overseas, please check the following items in Japan.

- When you use the network services from an overseas location, set the Remote Control to "Activate" before leaving Japan (P.397).

### ■ About charging the battery

About charging the battery, see the followings.

- Precautions on handling the AC adapter (P.20)
- How to charge with the AC adapter (P.40, 41)

### ■ About i-mode

To view sites using i-mode overseas, perform "海外利用設定" (the settings for using i-mode overseas) accessible from i Menu.

- For details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【i-mode】FOMA version".

■ About setting the network services

When you are subscribing to the network services, you can perform the network service setting/cancellation from overseas, except for some functions.

- You may not be able even to use the network services that you are supposed to be able to set/cancel, depending on the overseas carrier you use. Also, some of the network services can be performed only in Japan.
  To use the network services overseas, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide【International services】" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide【Network services】" before departure.

| Menu name | Description |
|---|---|
| Voice Mail (P.392) | You may not be able to set the services in some service areas. |
| Call Waiting (P.393) | |
| Call Forwarding (P.393) | |
| Bar Nuisance Calls (P.394) | |
| Notify Caller ID (P.45) | You may not be able to set the service in some service areas. Also, a caller ID may not be notified correctly in some cases. |
| Caller ID Request (P.395) | You may not be able to set the service in some service areas. |
| Dual Network (P.395) | You cannot set this service. |
| English Guidance (P.395) | You may not be able to set the service in some service areas. |
| Multi Number (P.397) | You may not be able to set the service in some service areas. Note also that you cannot place a call from your additional number. You can receive an incoming call to your additional number, but you may not be able to identify the number being used for receiving the call. |
| 2in1 (P.398) | You cannot place a call from Number B. |
| Chaku-moji (P.58) | You can set the service, but you cannot use it. |
| Roaming Guidance (P.417) | You may not be able to set the service in some service areas. |
| Bar Incoming call (P.417) | You may not be able to set the service in some service areas. |
| Public mode (Drive mode) (P.69) | You can set the service, but you cannot use it. Cancel the setting overseas. |

## Checks in the Location of Stay

The FOMA terminal works in a 3G Roaming Area and GSM/GPRS service area.

The FOMA terminal is set by default to automatically search the network and connect to the local carrier when you power it on in an overseas location.

### About inquiries

For inquiries about loss, theft, the charge settlement, and repairs overseas, see "For Loss, Theft, and Charge Settlement for Overseas" or "About Troubles and Repairs for Services Overseas" on the backcover of this manual. Note that you are still liable for the call and communication charge incurred after the loss or theft occurred.

- For the latest information on the international access number and international prefix number for the universal number, see the DoCoMo's "International service website".

■ International access number for major countries (Table1)

The international access number for major countries is as follows (as of August 2007).

| Area | Number | Area | Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Australia | 0011 | Malaysia | 00 |
| Belgium | 00 | Monaco | 00 |
| Brazil | 0041/0014 | Netherlands | 00 |
| Canada | 011 | New Zealand | 00 |
| China | 00 | Norway | 00 |
| Czech Republic | 00 | Philippines | 00 |
| Denmark | 00 | Poland | 00 |
| Finland | 00 | Portugal | 00 |
| France | 00 | Russia | 810 |
| Germany | 00 | Singapore | 001 |
| Greece | 00 | Spain | 00 |
| Hong Kong | 001 | Sweden | 00 |
| Hungary | 00 | Switzerland | 00 |
| India | 00 | Taiwan | 002 |
| Indonesia | 001 | Thailand | 001 |
| Ireland | 00 | Turkey | 00 |
| Italy | 00 | United Arab Emirates | 00 |
| Korea | 001 | United Kingdom | 00 |
| Luxembourg | 00 | USA | 011 |
| Macau | 00 | Vietnam | 00 |

■International prefix number for the universal number (Table2)

The international prefix number for the universal number of each country is as follows (as of August 2007).

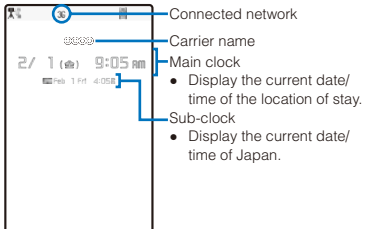
| Area | Number | Area | Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Argentina | 00 | Korea | 001 |
| Australia | 0011 | Luxembourg | 00 |
| Austria | 00 | Malaysia | 00 |
| Belgium | 00 | Netherlands | 00 |
| Brazil | 0021 | New Zealand | 00 |
| Bulgaria | 00 | Norway | 00 |
| Canada | 011 | Peru | 00 |
| China | 00 | Philippines | 00 |
| Colombia | 009 | Portugal | 00 |
| Denmark | 00 | Singapore | 001 |
| Finland | 990 | South Africa | 09 |
| France | 00 | Spain | 00 |
| Germany | 00 | Sweden | 00 |
| Hong Kong | 001 | Switzerland | 00 |
| Hungary | 00 | Taiwan | 00 |
| Ireland | 00 | Thailand | 001 |
| Israel | 014 | United Kingdom | 00 |
| Italy | 00 | USA | 011 |

- Some of them may not be used.
- The universal number is available only for countries listed on the table above.
- When you place a call from a hotel, the hotel may charge the phone call (it is liable for you to pay). Before placing a call, make sure to check with the hotel.
- Please note that, in many cases, the universal number may not be available when you place a call from a mobile phone, public phone, hotel, or other places.

## Display to Be Shown Overseas

While you use the FOMA terminal overseas, the name of the connected network carrier appears in the stand-by display.

- You can also set the FOMA terminal not to display the name of the carrier (P.416).
- To display the current date/time of the location of stay on the main clock and additionally to display the sub-clock, set the Auto time adjust to [ON] (P.44). However, the time may not be corrected in some networks overseas.




- The following icons show the current network connection.

| Icon | Network you can use |
|---|---|
| 3G (Blue) | 3G network (supported packet communication) |
| 3G (Red) | 3G network (not supported packet communication) |
| | GSM network |
| | GPRS network |

## Checks after Returning to Japan

When you power on the FOMA terminal after returning to Japan, it is set by default to automatically search the network and connect to the FOMA network (NTT DoCoMo, Inc).

- If the Network search mode is set to [Manual], manually switch to the FOMA network (NTT DoCoMo, Inc) or change the setting to [Auto].
- You need to set to [Auto] or [3G] at the 3G/GSM setting.

# Placing a Call from Your Overseas Location

You can use the international roaming service and place a call from an overseas location.

## Placing a Call to Another Country (Including Japan) from Your Overseas Location

You can place a call to Japan or another country from your country of stay.

- You can easily place an international call if you save the country codes of frequently dialed countries using the Country code of the Int'l dial assist setting (P.62).

**1 Press "+" (press [0] for over a second) in the stand-by display. Enter a country code, area code, and a recipient's phone number, in that order.**

- If an area code begins with "0", omit the "0" when dialing (excepting when calling ordinary phones, etc. in Italy).
- To place an international call to Japan, enter the country code "81".

To place a call to a country saved using the Country code

Enter a phone number in the stand-by display, press [✉] (Option), select [Call method] → [Voice call]/[Videophone] → [Country code] → a country code, and press [i] (Call).

To place a call to a recipient saved in the Phonebook

Select a recipient form the Phonebook and press [📞]. To place a videophone call, select a recipient, press [■], and press [ｶﾒﾗ] (V.phone). The first digit of the phone number "0" is converted into a country code automatically added by the Int'l dial assist before the call is dialed.

To place a call from the Redial/Received record

Select a recipient from the Redial/Received record and press [📞] or [ｶﾒﾗ] (V.phone).

**2 Press [📞].**

The international call is dialed.

To place a videophone call

Press [ｶﾒﾗ] (V.phone).

## Placing a Local Call in Your Overseas Location

You can place calls in your country of stay in the same way you do in Japan.

**1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display.**

Make sure to include the area code, even for a local call.
If a recipient uses "WORLD WING", place a call to the recipient as an international call to Japan.

**2 Press [📞].**

The call is dialed.

To place a videophone call

Press [ｶﾒﾗ] (V.phone).

● If both you and the recipient of your videophone call are using a carrier that supports FOMA videophone calls, you can perform an international videophone call by first using the international call dialing method and then placing a videophone call.

※ For information about countries and carriers you can connect to, see DoCoMo's "International service website".

※ The videophone image displayed on the FOMA terminal may be distorted or the videophone call may not be connected depending on the terminal being used by the other party for the international videophone call.

## Placing a Call to a WORLD WING Overseas User

If the recipient is a "WORLD WING" overseas user, enter the country code "81" and place the call as an international call to Japan regardless of the current location at home and abroad.

# Receiving a Call

You can receive a call using the international roaming service when you are overseas.

**1 When receiving a call, press [📞].**

You can talk to a caller.

When you receive a videophone call

Press [📞] or [ｶﾒﾗ] (V.phone). To answer a call with a substitute image, press [■] (Sub).

● If you receive a call during international roaming, the call is forwarded to the country of your stay from Japan. There is a communication charge to the caller for the call to Japan and an international call forwarding charge to the recipient.

## Procedure for a Caller Who Wants to Call You

■ When the caller places a call from Japan

Ask the caller to dial only your phone number in the same manner as it is done in Japan.

090–XXXX–XXXX
or
080–XXXX–XXXX

■ When the caller places a call from countries other than Japan

Ask the caller to dial the international access number and country code of Japan "81" and then your phone number without the first "0" and place the call as an international call to Japan regardless of your country of stay.

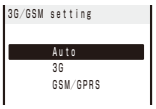
International access number–81–90–XXXX–XXXX
or
International access number–81–80–XXXX–XXXX

## Setting the Network to be Used <3G/GSM setting>

You can set a communication method to be supported in an area or by a carrier you use.

- The default setting is set to [Auto].

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [3G/GSM setting] and press ■.**




[Auto]:
Search all networks that can be connected to.
[3G]:
Search only 3G-compatible networks.
[GSM/GPRS]:
Search only GSM- or GPRS-compatible networks.

**2 Select [Auto]/[3G]/[GSM/GPRS] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The network communication method is set.

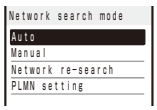
● When the 3G/GSM setting is set to [Auto] and the Network search mode is set to [Auto], if you search a carrier that supports both the 3G and GSM/GPRS networks, the terminal is automatically connected to the 3G network.
● In Japan or 3G network compatible areas, it is recommended to set the 3G/GSM setting to [3G] to suppress the consumption of the battery.
● Even if you are in the GSM network, you cannot perform the packet communication if the network does not support GPRS.

## Setting the Carrier Search Method <Network search mode>

You can set whether to search the network automatically and connect to another carrier when the network currently used falls outside of the service area.

Example: Changing a carrier for manual connection

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Network search mode] and press ■.**




[Auto]:
Automatically connect to another carrier.
[Manual]:
Manually select a carrier.
[Network re-search]:
Search the carrier to be connected again.
[PLMN setting]:
Set a carrier with the higher-priority for connection (P.416).

**2 Select [Manual] and press ■.**

The menu for selecting a network appears.



Continued

**3 Select a carrier and press ■.**

The carrier to be connected is changed.

- You may not be able to set this function depending on the radio wave condition or network restrictions.
- As of December 2007, you cannot select a carrier other than NTT DoCoMo in Japan.
- If "圏外" appears in the display after you return to Japan, check if the Network search mode is set to [Auto].

## Setting the Higher-priority Carrier for Connection <PLMN setting>

You can set a priority for the carriers to be automatically connected when the Network search mode is set to [Auto]. You can save a priority setting for up to 20 carriers.

Example: Saving a carrier from the carrier list

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Network search mode] and press ■.**

The Network search mode display appears.

**2 Select [PLMN setting] and press ■.**

The PLMN setting display appears.

**3 Select [Unregistered] and press ✉ (Func).**

The Function menu appears.

Entering a carrier manually

From the Function menu, select [PLMN manual sel.], enter a country code (MCC) and network number (MNC), press i (Complete), and select a network communication method → [Yes].

To save the carrier being connected

From the Function menu, select [VPLMN to PLMN] → [Yes].

To change the priority

From the Function menu, select [Change priority] → a carrier → a desired position, press i (Complete), and select [Yes].

To display detailed information

Move the cursor to the carrier and from the Function menu, select [Detail info].

To delete a carrier

Move the cursor to the carrier and from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete one] → [Yes]. To delete all carriers, from the Function menu, select [Delete] → [Delete all], enter the Security code, and select [Yes].

**4 Select [Select from List] and press ■.**

The PLMN slct from List display appears.

To search for a carrier by country name

Press i (Search) and select a country name.

**5 Select a carrier and press ■.**

The screen for selecting 3G/GSM appears.

[3G/GSM/GPRS]:
Set as the 3G and GSM/GPRS compatible carrier.

[3G]:
Set as the 3G compatible carrier.

[GSM/GPRS]:
Set as the GSM/GPRS compatible carrier.

**6 Select a network communication method → [Yes] and press ■.**

A carrier with the higher-priority for connection is set.

## Setting the Display for International Roaming <Operator name display>

You can set whether to display the name of the connected carrier in the stand-by display while you are using the international roaming service.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Operator name display] and press ■.**

The display of the Operator name display appears.

**2 Select [Display on]/[Display off] and press ■.**

The carrier name display is set.

- Even if you set the Operator name display to [Display on], the carrier name is not displayed when you are using the "DoCoMo" network or you are outside of the service area.

## Checking the Communication Status <Check service area>

You can check the available network services in your overseas location.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Check serv. area] and press ■.**

The available network services appear.

## Starting the Roaming Guidance Service <Roaming Guidance>

If you receive a call during international roaming, you can inform a caller that you are using the international roaming service by playing back the guidance.

- The guidance may be played back in a foreign language depending on the conditions of the overseas carrier.
- You need to set the service in Japan.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Roaming Guidance] and press ■.**

The Roaming Guidance display appears.

To cancel the roaming guidance
Select [Deactivate] → [Yes]. A caller hears the ring tone set by the overseas carrier.

To check the setting
Select [Request Status] → [Yes].

**2 Select [Activate] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The roaming guidance service is activated.

## Rejecting an Incoming Call during Roaming <Bar Incoming call>

You can set whether to reject incoming calls during roaming. You can select whether to reject either all incoming calls or only incoming videophone calls.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Bar Incoming call] and press ■.**

The Bar Incoming call display appears.

To cancel the Bar Incoming call service
Select [Deactivate barring], enter the network security code, and select [Yes].

To check the setting
Select [Request Status].

**2 Select [Activate barring] and press ■.**

The Activate barring display appears.

[Bar all incm call]:
Reject all incoming calls.

[Bar. V.phone/64K]※:
Reject incoming videophone calls.

※64K data communication cannot be used overseas.

**3 Select the type of call to be rejected and press ■.**

The network security code screen appears.

**4 Enter a network security code.**

**5 Select [Yes] and press ■.**

The Bar Incoming call is activated.

● You may not be able to set it depending on the overseas carrier you use.

# Using the Network Services during Roaming <Oversea service>

You can use network services such as the Voice Mail and Call Forwarding Services from an overseas location.

- To use the network services overseas, set the Remote Control to "Activate" (P.397).
- An international call charge applies in the country where you use the service when you operate the FOMA terminal overseas.

## Operating the Voice Mail Service from Your Overseas Location

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Voice Mail(Int.)] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate | Select [Activate] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |
| Deactivate | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |
| Play messages | Select [Play messages] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |
| Voice Mail setting | Select [Voice Mail setting] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |
| Set ring time | Select [Set ring time] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |

## Operating the Call Forwarding Service from Your Overseas Location

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Call FWD(Int.)] and press ■.**

**2 Set each item.**

| Menu item | Operation |
|---|---|
| Activate | Select [Activate] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |
| Deactivate | Select [Deactivate] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |
| Call FWD settings | Select [Call FWD settings] → [Yes] → Operate as instructed by the guidance. |

## Operating the Roaming Guidance Service from Your Overseas Location

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Roaming guide(Int.)] → [Yes] and press ■.**

Perform the setting as instructed by the guidance after this process.

## Setting the Remote Control from Your Overseas Location

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Remote access(Int.)] → [Yes] and press ■.**

Perform the setting as instructed by the guidance after this process.

## Operating the Caller ID Display Request Service from Your Overseas Location

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Caller ID req(Int.)] → [Yes] and press ■.**

Perform the setting as instructed by the guidance after this process.

# Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting


List of Menus ..... 420
Characters Assigned to Keys ..... 430
Special Symbols ..... 431
Pictographs ..... 432
Emoticons ..... 433
Common Phrases ..... 434
Multiaccess Combinations ..... 435
Multitask Combinations ..... 437
Services Available on the FOMA Terminal ..... 438
Optional and Related Devices ..... 439

**■External Device Interface**

Introduction of Movie Player Software ..... 440
Enjoying with Picture Motion Browser ..... 440

**■Troubleshooting**

Troubleshooting ..... 444
Error Messages ..... 446
Warranty and After Sales Services ..... 454
ｉモード故障診断 (i-mode Trouble Diagnosis) Site ..... 456
Updating the Software ..... <Software update> 456
Protecting Your Mobile Phone from Harmful Data ..... <Scan function> 462
Specifications ..... 465
Number of Saved and Protected Data Items ..... 466
About the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones, etc. ..... 467
Export Controls and Regulations ..... 475

# List of Menus

- You can press a key on the keypad of the number or symbol next to some menu names listed below in the menu display to execute the associated function.

## ■Standard menu

○: The default setting/s is/are restored.　　●: Items deleted

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| My Selection [1] | Receive Ir data, Bar code reader, Select alarm, Full Browser, Jog setting, Stand-by display, Incoming set | | | – | ○ | ○ | P.368 |
| Imaging [2] | Camera [21] | | | – | | | P.155 |
| | Movie [22] | | | – | | | P.170 |
| | easy BlogUp [23] | | | – | | ● | P.358 |
| | Music slide show [24] | | | – | | | P.291 |
| | Stand-by pictures [25] | Frame | | Bulletin Board(↑) | ○ | ○ | P.119 |
| | | Screen update | | Every 1hours | ○ | ○ | P.120 |
| | | Select folder | | Folder①: Camera, Folder②-⑤: OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Update image | | – | | | |
| i mode [3] | i Menu [31] | | | – | | | P.186 |
| | Bookmark [32] | | | – | | ● | P.191 |
| | Screen Memo [33] | | | – | | ● | P.193 |
| | Last accessed URL [34] | | | – | | ● | P.187 |
| | Go to location [35] | Enter URL | | – | | ● | P.191 |
| | | URL history | | – | | ● | |
| | i-Channel [36] | Channel list | | – | | ● | P.202 |
| | | Ticker | Stand-by | Std | ○ | ○ | P.203 |
| | | Reset i-Channel | | – | | | |
| | Message [37] | | | – | | ● | P.231 |
| | Check new message [38] | | | – | | | P.216, 231 |
| | i-mode setting [39] | Common setting | Melody auto play | ON | ○ | ○ | P.228 |
| | | | i-mode inquiry set | Mail/MessageR/MessageF: Valid | ○ | ○ | P.227 |
| | | | Connection timeout | 60sec | ○ | ○ | P.197 |
| | | | Host selection | i-mode (UIM) | ○ | ○※1 | |
| | | | Dur multi task disp | Prefer alarm | ○ | ○ | P.229 |
| | | | Auto-display | Prefer msgR | ○ | ○ | P.230 |
| | | Font size(Brs Com.) | | M | ○ | ○ | P.127 |
| | | Display img | | ON | ○ | ○ | P.198 |
| | | Auto detect | | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Use phone info | | Yes | ○ | ○ | |
| | | i-motion auto replay | | ON | ○ | ○ | P.201 |
| | | Sound effect | | 4 | ○ | ○ | P.112 |
| | | i-mode arrival act | | Prefer PushTalk | ○ | ○ | P.90 |
| | | SSL list | CA cert. | Valid | ○ | ○ | P.198 |
| | | | DoCoMo cert.1 | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | DoCoMo cert.2 | – | | | |
| | | User certificate | | – | | | P.199 |
| | | Select host | | ドコモ | ○ | ○※1 | P.200 |

※1 Hosts you added are deleted.

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| i mode [3] | Full Browser [30] | Home | | — | | | P.280 |
| | | Bookmark | | — | | ● | P.286 |
| | | Go to location | Enter URL | — | | ● | P.280 |
| | | | URL history | — | | ● | P.283 |
| | | Last accessed URL | | — | | ● | P.280 |
| | | Full Browser setting | Home URL | http://www.google.co.jp | ○ | ○ | P.286 |
| | | | Cookie setting | Valid | ○ | ○※2 | |
| | | | Script setting | Valid(Confirm) | ○ | ○ | P.287 |
| | | | Display mode setting | PC mode | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Display img | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Display magnification | 100% | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | PagePilot setting | Invalid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Pointer speed setting | 4 | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Window Open Guard | Invalid | ○ | ○ | P.288 |
| | | | Referer setting | Send | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Access setting | No | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Check settings | — | | | |
| | | | Reset settings | — | | | |
| Mail [4] | Inbox [41] | | | — | | ● | P.219 |
| | Outbox [42] | | | — | | ● | |
| | Draft [43] | | | — | | ● | |
| | Compose message [44] | | | — | | | P.207 |
| | WEB mail [45] | | | — | | | P.206 |
| | Compose SMS [46] | | | — | | | P.234 |
| | Templates [47] | | | — | | ●※3 | P.211 |
| | Check new message [48] | | | — | | | P.216, 231 |
| | Check new SMS [49] | | | — | | | P.236 |
| | Receive option [40] | | | — | | | P.215 |
| | Mail setting [4✕] | Common setting (See [i mode] → [i-mode setting] → [Common setting]) | | | | | — |
| | | Mail list setting | | 2lines+body | ○ | ○ | P.225 |
| | | Edit signature | | — | | ● | P.227 |
| | | Signature | | Auto | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Mail list | | List: List 0-9, Member list: None | | ● | P.228 |
| | | Font size | | M | ○ | ○ | P.127 |
| | | Sort inbox | | Sorting criteria/Select folder to: None | | ● | P.226 |
| | | Sort outbox | | Sorting criteria/Select folder to: None | | ● | |
| | | SMS setting | Language | JPN | | | P.236 |
| | | | SMS report | Invalid | | | |
| | | | Validity | 3days | | | |
| | | | SMSC | DoCoMo | | | |
| | | | Type of Number | International | | | |
| | | | Address | 81903101652 | | | |

※2 The Cookie files you add are deleted.

※3 Preinstalled data is not deleted.



Continued

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mail [4] | Mail setting [4✱] | Area Mail setting | Receive setting | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.233 |
| | | | Receive entry | Area Mail name: Emergency information, Message ID:A000～A3FF | | ○※4 | P.234 |
| | | | Beep setting | Permission | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Beep time | 10sec | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Recv option setting | | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.227 |
| | | Attached file pref. | Image | Valid | ○ | ○ | P.229 |
| | | | Melody | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | i-motion | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | ToruCa | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | PDF | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Tool data | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Others | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Clear Recv ranking | | — | | ● | |
| | | Clear Send ranking | | — | | ● | |
| i appli [5] | i αppli list | | | — | | ●※5 | P.239 |
| | i αppli setting | Auto-start | | Yes | ○ | ○ | P.246 |
| | | SW description | | No | ○ | ○ | P.239 |
| | | Volume setting | | 4 | ○ | ○ | P.112 |
| | | Pref. i αppli sound | | unpreference | ○ | ○ | P.113 |
| | i αppli history | Stand-by err hist | | — | | ● | P.250 |
| | | Security err. Hist. | | — | | ● | |
| | | Trace result | | — | | ● | |
| | | Auto-start err hist | | — | | ● | |
| | i αppli(microSD) | | | — | | | |
| Phone [6] | Phonebook [61] | | | — | | ● | P.101 |
| | Call record [62] | | | — | | ● | P.55 |
| | PushTalk phonebook [63] | | | — | | ● | P.85 |
| | Record message [64] | Play rec msg | | — | | ● | P.74 |
| | | Play Vphone msg | | — | | ● | |
| | | Set rec msg | Set | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.73 |
| | | | To answer | 13sec | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Answer img(V.phone) | テレビ電話動作中 | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Record img(V.phone) | テレビ電話動作中 | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Rec voice memo | | — | | | P.369 |
| | | Play voice memo | | — | | ● | P.74 |
| Data Box [7] | My picture | | | — | | ●※3 | P.290 |
| | MUSIC | | | — | | ●※3 | P.303 |
| | Music&Video Channel | | | — | | ● | P.342 |
| | i-motion | | | — | | ●※3 | P.295 |
| | Melody | | | — | | ●※3 | P.304 |
| | My document | | | — | | ●※3 | P.333 |
| | Kisekae Tool | | | — | | ●※6 | P.305 |
| | Chara-den | | | — | | ●※3 | P.302 |

※3 Preinstalled data is not deleted.
※4 Receive entries you added are deleted.
※5 Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli is not deleted.
※6 [Manual Custom] preinstalled at the time of purchase is not deleted.

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Music [8] | MUSIC Player [81] | | | — | | | P.342 |
| | Music&Video Channel [82] | | | — | | | P.338 |
| Osaifu-Keitai [9] | IC card content [91] | | | — | | | P.255 |
| | DCMX [92] | | | — | | | P.245 |
| | ToruCa [93] | | | — | | ● | P.257 |
| | Settings [94] | IC card lock | IC card lock | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.262 |
| | | | IC lock(power-off) | Last status | ○ | ○ | |
| | | IC act. notice | By vibrator | ON | ○ | ○ | P.261 |
| | | | By LED | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | ToruCa setting | ToruCa receive | Yes | ○ | ○ | P.259 |
| | | | Sort folder | — | | ● | P.260 |
| | | | Auto recognition | ON | ○ | ○ | P.261 |
| | | | Duplication check | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | Search by i-mode [95] | | | — | | | P.255 |
| Own number [0] | | | | — | | ○ | P.45 |
| LifeKit [✳] | Bar code reader [✳1] | Scan code | | — | | | P.183 |
| | | Send data | | — | | ● | P.184 |
| | Receive Ir data [✳2] | Receive | | — | | | P.329 |
| | | Receive all | | — | | | |
| | microSD [✳3] | | | — | | | P.306 |
| | Camera [✳4] | | | — | | | P.155 |
| | Movie [✳5] | | | — | | | P.170 |
| | Lifetime Calendar [✳6] | | | — | | | P.355 |
| | Alarm [✳7] | Select alarm | | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.360 |
| | | Auto power on | | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | Schedule [✳8] | | | — | | ● | P.363 |
| | Text Memo [✳9] | | | — | | ● | P.372 |
| | Calculator [✳0] | | | — | | | |
| | Data Security Service [✳✳] | Connect to Center | | — | | | P.105 |
| | | Exchanging history | | — | | ● | |
| | | Service setting | Send phonebook img | Unsend | ○ | ○ | |
| | GPS [✳#] | Position location | | — | | | P.264 |
| | | Location notice | | — | | | P.274 |
| | | i appli | | — | | | P.265 |
| | | Location history | | — | | ● | P.276 |
| | | GPS settings | GPS button setting | Read a Map | ○ | ○ | P.278 |
| | | | Reg. service client | Loc. serv. client/Service client ID/Phone number: — | | ● | P.275 |
| | | | | Auto Notice setting: Confirm | ○ | ○ | P.276 |
| | | | Loc. request menu | Location request: OFF, Host setting: Initial host, Service settings: — | ○ | ○※1 | P.271 |

※1 Hosts you added are deleted.



Continued

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| LifeKit [✳] | GPS [✳#] | GPS settings | Sound/Color setting | Position location:<br>Volume: OFF, Vibrator: OFF, Color: ON<br>Location notice:<br>Volume: 4, Vibrator: OFF, Color: ON<br>Loc. provide/accept/Loc. provide/check:<br>Volume: 4, Vibrator: OFF | ○ | ○ | P.113 |
| | | | Positioning mode | Position location/Location notice/Location provision: Standard mode | ○ | ○ | P.278 |
| Settings [#] | Display | Stand-by display | Stand-by | Image: Kisekae tool※7<br>Stand-by pictures:<br>Frame: Bulletin Board(↑),<br>Screen update: Every 1hours<br>Select folder:<br>Folder①: Camera, Folder②-⑤: OFF | ○ | ○ | P.117 |
| | | | Image quality | Sharp | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Calendar/Clock | Calendar: OFF, Cal. font color: Blk, Clock: Digital clock5, Clock style: 12h | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Soft key | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Camera in key locking | Not activate | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Backlight | Auto setting | ON | ○ | ○ | P.121 |
| | | | Adjust light | 3 | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Keypad light | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Backlight always on | Charging/Internet: OFF, Videophone/Pict. shoot/Movie shoot/Movie play: ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Power saver | | 1min | ○ | ○ | P.122 |
| | | Menu setting | Start menu setting | Kisekae menu | ○ | ○ | P.123 |
| | | | Icon setting | My selection/Imaging/i-mode/Mail/iαppli/Phone/Data Box/MUSIC/Osaifu-Keitai/Own number/LifeKit/Settings: None specified | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Kisekae setting | Kisekae Tool | Kisekae tool※8 | ○ | ○ | P.124 |
| | | | Color theme setting | Main body color “SILVER”: Black, Main body color “WHITE”: White & Gold, Main body color “PINK”: Pink | ○ | ○ | |

※7 The setting varies depending on the main body color of the FOMA terminal. When you perform the Reset settings or Reset all data&set, the image of [Cyber-shot Logo] preinstalled at the time of purchase is used as the default setting.

※8 The setting varies depending on the main body color of the FOMA terminal. When you perform the Reset settings or Reset all data&set, the setting of [Manual Custom] is used as the default setting.

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Settings [#] | Display | Animation | Calling | Kisekae tool※9 | ○ | ○ | P.120 |
| | | | V.phone calling img | | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Mail sending img | | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Check new message | | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Font size | All font size setting | Standard disp. | | | P.127 |
| | | | Individual font size | Phonebook/Call record/ Mail/Internet/Input text: M | ○ | ○ | |
| | Call | Incoming set | Incoming call | Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 4, Incoming image: Kisekae tool※9, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9 | ○ | ○ | P.108 |
| | | | Incoming V.phone | Link incoming call: OFF, Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 4, Incoming image: Kisekae tool※9, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9 | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | PushTalk | Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 4, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9:Color9 | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Mail | Receiving img: Kisekae tool※9, Received image: Kisekae tool※9, Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 4, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9: Color9<br>Ring time setting:<br>Set: ON, Ring time: 4sec | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | MessageR | Link receive mail: ON, Receiving img: Kisekae tool※9, Received image: Kisekae tool※9, Ring tone: 着信音1, Ring volume: 4, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C9: Color9<br>Ring time setting:<br>Set: ON, Ring time: 4sec | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | MessageF | | | | |
| | | Missed call | | ON | ○ | ○ | P.126 |
| | | Videophone setting | Display setting | Main-Other side | ○ | ○ | P.76 |
| | | | Set outgoing image | Camera image: ON, Substitute image: アイアイ | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Visual preference | Normal | ○ | ○ | P.77 |
| | | | Auto redial(voice) | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Hands-free | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | V.ph while packet | Prefer V.phone | ○ | ○ | P.78 |
| | | Call display | Phonebook image | ON | ○ | ○ | P.121 |
| | | | Name | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Disp. call/receive No. | None specified | ○ | ○ | |

※9 The setting varies depending on the main body color of the FOMA terminal. When you perform the Reset settings or Reset all data&set, one of the images from the [Preinstall] folder in My picture of the Data Box is used as the default setting.



Continued

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Settings [#] | Call | Call assist | Sub-address | ON | ○ | ○ | P.63 |
| | | | Prefix setting | — | | ○ | P.61 |
| | | | Any key ans | ON | ○ | ○ | P.67 |
| | | | Set ring start time | Set: OFF, Start time: 4sec, Missed call display: OFF | ○ | ○ | P.145 |
| | | Call setting | Volume | 4 | ○ | ○ | P.112 |
| | | | Recnct ALM | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.64 |
| | | Call quality | Quality alarm | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.114 |
| | | | Reduce noise | ON | ○ | ○ | P.64 |
| | | Headset setting | Auto answer setting | Set: OFF, To answer: 5sec | ○ | ○ | P.375 |
| | | | Headset usage setting | Headset+speaker | ○ | ○ | P.114 |
| | | | Headset sw. to call | Set: OFF, Memory number: 999 | ○ | ○ | P.375 |
| | | | Headset microphone | Valid Headset | ○ | ○ | P.376 |
| | | Self mode | | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.137 |
| | | Melody Call | | — | | | P.115 |
| | Application | Lifetime Cal. | Display setting | Photo: Disp: All, Select folder: i-mode<br>Received mail/Sent mail: Disp: All, Select mail address: None<br>Schedule/Birthday: Disp: All | ○ | ○ | P.358 |
| | | | Memory auto display | Normal | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Security data display | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Mail (See [Mail] → [Mail setting]) | | | | | — |
| | | i-mode (See [i mode] → [i-mode setting]) | | | | | — |
| | | i αppli (See [i appli] → [i αppli setting]) | | | | | — |
| | | Phonebook | Which PB to use | Phonebook | ○ | ○ | P.102 |
| | | | Font size | M | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Set image display | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Save/attach image | Valid | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Call record | Record display | ON | ○ | ○ | P.141 |
| | | | Font size | M | ○ | ○ | P.127 |
| | | PushTalk | Auto answer setting | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.89 |
| | | | Set ring time | 30sec | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | i-mode arrival act | Prefer PushTalk | ○ | ○ | P.90 |
| | | | P-Talk arrival act | Answer | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Hands-free | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Record msg (See [Phone] → [Record message] → [Set rec msg]) | | | | | — |
| | | ToruCa (See [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [ToruCa setting]) | | | | | — |
| | | IC act. notice (See [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [IC act. notice]) | | | | | — |
| | | Schedule | Set holidays | For today: Annual holidays established by the Japanese National Holidays Law, Day of the week: Sun | ○ | ○ | P.367 |

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Settings [#] | Application | Schedule | Schedule alarm | Alarm tone: Alarm(std), Alarm volume: 4, Alarm image: スケジュールアラーム鳴動中, Vibrator: OFF, Color: C5:Color5 | ○ | ○ | P.365 |
| | | Input method | Edit user dict | — | | ● | P.388 |
| | | | Edit prediction | — | | ● | |
| | | | Dictionaries | — | | ● | P.389 |
| | | | Select conversion | Prediction | ○ | ○ | P.384 |
| | | | Edit common phrases | See Common Phrases (P.434) | ○ | ○ | P.386 |
| | | | Auto cursor | 1(Slow) | ○ | ○ | P.385 |
| | | | Font size | M | ○ | ○ | P.127 |
| | | | Operation in item | 4 directions/hor. | ○ | ○ | P.385 |
| | | | Reset data | — | | | P.389 |
| | Lock/ Security | Lock all | | OFF | | | P.135 |
| | | IC card lock (See [Osaifu-Keitai] → [Settings] → [IC card lock]) | | | | | — |
| | | Pers. data lock | | OFF | | | P.137 |
| | | Secret display | | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.141 |
| | | Key dial lock | | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.139 |
| | | Acpt/Rjct call | Set | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.143 |
| | | | Phone No. | — | | ● | |
| | | | Group list | — | | ● | |
| | | Reject unknown | | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.146 |
| | | Denied no ID | User Unset | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.144 |
| | | | PublicPhone | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Not supported | OFF | ○ | ○ | |
| | Management | NW Services | Voice Mail | Tone/Vibrate notice: ON | ○ | ○ | P.392 |
| | | | Call Waiting | — | | | P.393 |
| | | | Call Forwarding | — | | | |
| | | | Bar Nuisance Calls | — | | | P.394 |
| | | | Notify Caller ID | — | | | P.45 |
| | | | Caller ID Request | — | | | P.395 |
| | | | Call Cost/Duration | — | | | P.369 |
| | | | 2in1 setting | Mode switching: Dual mode, Stand-by display:<br>B mode: Bモード待受画面<br>Dual mode: デュアルモード待受画面<br>Set call/receive No.:<br>Disp. call/receive No.: dark<br>Ringtone for Number B:<br>Incoming call: Ring tone: 着信音2<br>Incoming V.phone: Link incoming call: OFF, Ring tone: 着信音2<br>Receive avoid. Setting:<br>Mode link setting: OFF | ○ | ○ | P.399 |
| | | | Chaku-moji | Create message: — | | ● | P.58 |
| | | | | Set Message display: Only calls w/ID | ○ | ○ | |



Continued

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Settings [#] | Management | NW Services | In-call arrival act | — | | | P.396 |
| | | | Arrival Call Act | Answer | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Remote Control | — | | | P.397 |
| | | | Dual Network | — | | | P.395 |
| | | | English Guidance | — | | | |
| | | | Service Numbers | — | | | P.396 |
| | | | Additional service | Register USSD:<br>Service: Unregistered<br>USSD: —<br>Register ans word:<br>Answer word: Unregistered<br>USSD: — | | ○ | P.402 |
| | | | Multi Number | Number Setting:<br>Multi Number call: OFF<br>Basic Number:<br>Name: 基本契約番号<br>Additional No.1:<br>Name: 付加番号1,<br>Phone number: —,<br>Ring tone: 着信音1,<br>Incoming image: 付加番号1着信画像<br>Additional No.2:<br>Name: 付加番号2,<br>Phone number: —,<br>Ring tone: 着信音1,<br>Incoming image: 付加番号2着信画像 | ○※10 | ○ | P.397 |
| | | | Roaming Guidance | — | | | P.417 |
| | | | Int'l roaming | Network search mode: Auto, 3G/GSM setting: Auto | | | P.415 |
| | | | | Operator name display: Display on | ○ | ○ | P.416 |
| | | | Int'l dial assist | Auto conversion: ON | ○ | ○ | P.62 |
| | | | | Int'l prefix: ①World Call 009130010, Country code: See P.410. | | ○ | |
| | | | V.ph switch notice | — | | | P.78 |
| | | Date/time | Auto time adjust | ON | ○ | ○ | P.44 |
| | | | Manual clock set | Date: ----/--/-- ---, Time: --:-- | | ○ | |
| | | | | Time zone: GMT+9 | | ○ | |
| | | Select language | | Japanese | | | P.128 |
| | | Manner mode | Set | OFF | ○ | ○ | P.116 |
| | | | Mode | Manner | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Original manner | Vibrator: OFF, Phone volume: SD (STEP DOWN), Mail volume/Alarm volume: 4, Keypad sound: 1, Keyguard release tone/Charge sound/Battery ALM: ON, Whisper mode: OFF | ○ | ○ | P.117 |

※10 Only the settings of the Multi Number call, ring tones/incoming images of the Additional No.1 and Additional No.2 are reset.

| Menu | | | | Default Setting | Reset settings | Reset all data&set | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Settings [#] | Management | Set basic tone | Keypad sound | 1 | ○ | ○ | P.111 |
| | | | Keyguard release tone | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Stereo&3D | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Charge sound | ON | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Jog setting | Rotate set | ON | ○ | ○ | P.376 |
| | | | Mail view | Medium | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | i-mode | Medium | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Full Browser | Medium | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Upward rotation | Data Box | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Downward rotation | Phonebook | ○ | ○ | |
| | | Slide setting | Auto key lock/rel | ON | ○ | ○ | P.141 |
| | | | Slide open setting | Answer | ○ | ○ | P.67 |
| | | | Setting when folded | Voice call/V.phone/ PushTalk: Continuous call | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Edit slide setting | Inbox(List/Detail): Quote reply, Outbox(List/Detail)/ Draft(List): Edit, Schedule/ Memo(List/Detail): Create/ Edit | ○ | ○ | P.354 |
| | | Change code | | 0000 | | ○ | P.132 |
| | | UIM setting | PIN1 code setting | OFF | | | P.133 |
| | | | Change PIN1 code | — | | | |
| | | | Change PIN2 code | — | | | |
| | | Scan function | Update | — | | | P.463 |
| | | | Set auto-update | — | | | |
| | | | Set scan | Scan function/Message scan: Valid | ○ | ○ | P.462 |
| | | | Version | — | | | P.464 |
| | | SW Update | Update | — | | | P.459 |
| | | | Set auto-update | Set: Auto-update, Day: None specified, Time: 03:00 | ○ | ○ | P.458 |
| | | Check serv. area | | — | | | P.417 |
| | | Battery level | | — | | | P.42 |
| | | Storage info | | — | | | P.326 |
| | | USB mode setting | | Communication mode | ○ | ○ | P.314 |
| | | Reset | Reset menu log | — | | ● | P.126 |
| | | | Reset menu screen | — | | | P.124 |
| | | | Reset display/sound | — | | | P.125 |
| | | | Reset settings | — | | | P.376 |
| | | | Reset all data&set | — | | | P.377 |
| | | Initial setting | Date/time | — | | | P.43 |
| | | | Change code | Yet (0000) | | ○ | |
| | | | Keypad sound | 1 | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | Location request | Yet (OFF) | ○ | ○ | |
| | | | All font size setting | Yet (Standard disp.) | ○ | ○ | |

# Characters Assigned to Keys

| Character mode / Keys | Kanji/Hiragana mode ※ | Katakana mode ※ | Alphabetic mode ※ | Numeric mode |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | あいうえお<br>ぁぃぅぇぉ | アイウエオ<br>ァィゥェォ | . @ ／ : ー ～ ¯ 1 | 1 |
| 2 | かきくけこ | カキクケコ カ ケ | ABCabc2 | 2 |
| 3 | さしすせそ | サシスセソ | DEFdef3 | 3 |
| 4 | たちつてとっ | タチツテトッ | GHIghi4 | 4 |
| 5 | なにぬねの | ナニヌネノ | JKLjkl5 | 5 |
| 6 | はひふへほ | ハヒフヘホ | MNOmno6 | 6 |
| 7 | まみむめも | マミムメモ | PQRSpqrs7 | 7 |
| 8 | やゆよゃゅょ | ヤユヨャュョ | TUVtuv8 | 8 |
| 9 | らりるれろ | ラリルレロ | WXYZwxyz9 | 9 |
| 0 | わをんゎ□、<br>。ー・！？ | ワヲンヮ□、。<br>ー・！？「」 | □！？－，’ ；（）<br>” _ ～ ¯ ＆ ￥ 0 | 0 |
| * | 、。ー・゛゜！？ | ゛゜、。ー・！？「」 | ！？－，’ ；（）”<br>_ ～ ¯ ＆ ￥ | * |
| # | Display character assignments in the reverse order (before acceptance of characters)/Line feed (after acceptance of characters) | | | # |
| ◀ | Move cursor left | | | |
| ▶ | Move cursor right/Insert half-width space (blank) (only when there is no character after the cursor) | | | |

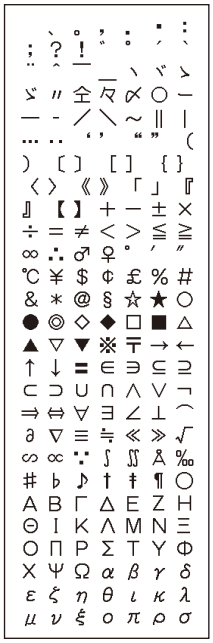
※ If you press a key for over a second, the assigned characters are switched one after another.

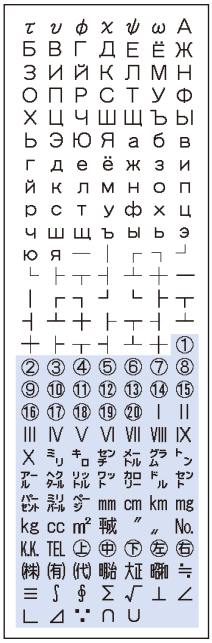
- □ indicates a space (blank). A space (blank) is provided in two sizes: a full-width and half-width sizes and counted as one full-width or half-width character.
- Characters marked with ■ appear in the full-width character mode only.
- Blue colored characters appear in the half-width character mode only.
- Every time you press a key, the characters change to the next one that is assigned to that key. If you press and hold the key, the characters change continuously.
- Press # after finalizing a character to start a new line. “↵” appears to indicate it. A new line is counted as a full-width character.
- Press * before finalizing a character to insert a voice or semivoice sound symbol. Press ☎ to change its case from upper to lower case or vice versa. Press # to change the character assigned to a key in the reverse order.
- In the Alphabetic mode, the case attribute of the character entered last or converted by pressing ☎ is inherited to the next character.

# Special Symbols

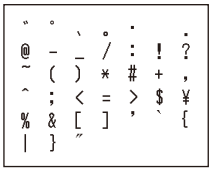
- Symbols marked with ■ may not be displayed correctly when sending to i-mode non-compatible mobile phones or PCs.

## ■Full-width symbols





## ■Half-width symbols



# Pictographs

- Pictographs may not be displayed correctly when sending to i-mode non-compatible mobile phones or PCs.
- Some pictographs may not be displayed correctly depending on the type of recipient's i-mode compatible mobile phone.
- For SMS, pictographs other than "", "", or "" are replaced with a half-width space (blank).

## ■Pictographs







# Emoticons

When you enter the following words in the kanji/hiragana mode, emoticons are entered.

- Some of the following emoticons may be different from those actually displayed.
- Emoticons may be displayed in the ImgSym tab rather than in the Pre. tab.

| Word | Emoticon | Word | Emoticons | Word | Emoticon | Word | Emoticon | Word | Emoticon | Word | Emoticon |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| あいたっ | (>_<) | がーん | (;□;)!! | かお | (￣ω￣) | すみません | m(_ _)m | にこにこ | (^!^) | ぺこり | _(._.)_ |
| あくび | ＼(^o^)／ | | (￣□￣;)!! | | (●^o^●) | たのしい | (*^.^*) | | =^ェ^= | | _(_^_)_ |
| | ＼(ΘoΘ)／ | | (●д●) | | )^o^( | | (^-^) | にやり | (￣ー￣) | | m(_ _)m |
| あせ | (-_-; | かお | (*_*) | | >^_^< | | (^-^;) | ねてる | (-_-)zzz | ほーい | (^0^) |
| | (;^_^A | | (+_+) | | ^/^ | | (^^) | はーい | (^-^)/ | | (^0^)/ |
| | (^^; | | (-.-) | | ^^; | | (^o^) | ばいばい | (*^o^*)/~ | ほし | (☆o☆) |
| | (^_^;) | | (-_-) | | ^_^; | たら | (-o-; | | (;_;)/~~~ | ぽりぽり | (^^ゞ |
| | ^_^; | | (-_-;) | | _(._.)_ | ちゅっ | (^・^)Chu♪ | | (^.^)/~~~ | | f^_^; |
| あら | (/--)/ | | (. .) | | m(_ _)m | | (^ε^) | | (^^)/~~~ | おにゃおにゃ | (￣～￣)ξ |
| いっぷく | (-.-)y-~ | | (._.) | | o(^-^)o | | Chu!(^3^)-☆ | | (^_^)/~ | めがね | (@_@) |
| | (>.<)y-~ | | (._.)_ | かんぱい | (^^)／▽☆▽＼(^^) | つっこみ | ヾ(^_^) | はずかしい | (*^^*) | めもめも | φ(. .) |
| | (￣^￣)y-~~ | | (;_;) | きす | :-* | てれ | (*^^*) | | (o^-^o) | よしよし | (T_T)＼(-_-) |
| うぃんく | (^_-) | | (>_<) | きゃー | (o≧▽≦)o | どきっ | (◎o◎) | ばちばち | (^o^)//"""""""" | らじゃ | (^^ゞ |
| うーん | (#+_+) | | (>ε<) | | o(≧▽≦o) | どてっ | (o_ _)o | ばんざい | ＼(^o^)／ | | (≧▽≦)ゞ |
| うひょひょ | (o｀∀´o) | | (>д<) | きゃはは | (≧▽≦)/ | ながれぼし | ★彡 | | ＼(^o^)／ | りょうかい | (^^ゞ |
| | (｀▽´) | | (@_@) | ぐー | (^-^)b | なく | (;_;) | びくっ | (*_*) | | (≧▽≦)ゞ |
| うん | (---)(_ _) | | (T_T) | | (o^-' )b | | (T_T) | | (*_*; | わーい | (*ﾟ□ﾟ*) |
| えーん | (ToT) | | (ToT) | ぐーぐー | (-.-)Zzz | | (T^T) | | (+_+) | | (*´▽｀*) |
| えっ | (@_@;) | | (^.^) | くすん | (;_ | | (T_T) | | (@_@) | | (^0^) |
| | (@д@) | | (^0^) | くたばる | (*_*) | なぜ | (?_?) | ひやあせ | (^-^; | | (^o^) |
| えと | (+o+) | | (^0_0^) | | (+_+) | | (?д?) | | (^-^;) | | (^u^) |
| えへへ | (o^v^o) | | (^^) | | (>_<) | にげろー | ε=ε=┌(;￣▽￣)┘ | | (^.^; | | (^v^) |
| おいおい | ヾ(^_^) | | (^^ゞ | さあ | ┐(´～｀;)┌ | にこにこ | (#^.^#) | | (^o^; | | (^O^) |
| おお | (ノ°0°)ノ | | (^_-) | さかな | ()<< | | (*^_^*) | ふぁいと | p(^-^)q | | (^◇^) |
| おーい | (^0^)/ | | (^_^) | さざえ | 8(*^^*)8 | | (*^o^*) | | p(^^)q | | (●^o^●) |
| | (^^)/ | | (^_^;) | じーっ | (;￣_￣) | | (*^▽^*) | ぶい | (^0^)v | | )^o^( |
| | (^_^)/ | | (^o^) | しくしく | ('_`) | | (=^_^=) | | (^^)v | | o(^ワ^)o |
| | (^o^)/ | | (_ _) | | (/_;) | | (^.^) | | (^_^)v | | ヽ(´▽｀)ノ |
| おこる | (-_-#) | | (o^-^o) | | (:_;) | | (^_^) | | (￣▽￣)v | | ＼(^0^)／ |
| | (-_-メ) | | (o・v・o) | | (:0:) | | (^o^) | | v(^-^)v | | ♪d(⌒O⌒)b♪ |
| | (>_<) | | (x_x;) | | (;_;) | | (o^-^o) | | v(^^)v | わーん | o(TロT)o |
| | (｀ε´) | | (° _ ° ) | | (:_; | | 8-> | ふっ | ヽ(´ー｀)ノ | わくわく | o(^-^)o |
| おねがい | (>人<) | | (´・ω・`) | | (:_;) | | :) | ぶんぶん | :-< | | o(^^)o |
| おりゃ | (ノ>д<)ノ | | (´Д`) | | (T_T) | | :-) | ぺこり | (_ _) | | o(^o^)o |
| | (ノ°0°)ノ | | (￣▽￣) | じと | (-.-) | | :-> | | <m(_ _)m> | わたしかな | σ(^_^;)? |

# Common Phrases

| Category | Common phrase | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 Internet | 1 .co.jp | 6 .go.jp |
| | 2 .ne.jp | 7 @docomo.ne.jp |
| | 3 .com | 8 http:// |
| | 4 .or.jp | 9 https:// |
| | 5 .ac.jp | 0 www. |
| 2 Emoticon1 | 1 ^^; | 6 (>_<) |
| | 2 (^.^) | 7 (^^ゞ |
| | 3 >^_^< | 8 (@_@) |
| | 4 (;_;) | 9 m(__)m |
| | 5 (+_+) | 0 (^-^)ノ~~ |
| 3 Emoticon2 | 1 o(^ワ^)o | 6 *￣0￣)ノ |
| | 2 (o^-')b | 7 (￣^￣)y-~~ |
| | 3 ＼(~δ~)／ | 8 (o`∀´o) |
| | 4 (ρ_—)o | 9 (`□´) |
| | 5 (￣▽￣)v | 0 (¥△¥;) |
| 4 Emoticon3 | 1 (≧ε≦) | 6 (^･^)Chu♪ |
| | 2 (≧▽≦)ゞ | 7 ι(◎д◎)ノヾ |
| | 3 (;□;)!! | 8 ε=┌(;￣▽￣)┘ |
| | 4 (u_u)o〃 | 9 ♪d(⌒O⌒)b♪ |
| | 5 =^ェ^= | 0 へ(^-^)ㄨ(^o^)ノ |
| 5 Greetings | 1 おはようございます | 6 お疲れさまでした |
| | 2 おやすみなさい | 7 お世話になっております |
| | 3 昨日は、どうもありがとうございました | 8 こんにちは |
| | 4 行ってきます | 9 こんばんは |
| | 5 いってらっしゃい | 0 よろしくお願い致します |
| 6 Business | 1 直行します | 6 本日の会議は中止となりました |
| | 2 直帰します | 7 出欠をご連絡ください |
| | 3 休暇をとります | 8 次の指示を待ってください |
| | 4 半休します | 9 携帯の電源を切ります |
| | 5 電車遅延のため、遅れます | 0 メールで連絡してください |
| 7 Private | 1 遊びに行こう | 6 先に行きます |
| | 2 飲みにいきませんか? | 7 先に帰ります |
| | 3 遅れます | 8 時間です |
| | 4 変更します | 9 何してるの? |
| | 5 中止です | 0 どこにいるの? |
| 8 Reply | 1 OKです | 6 今忙しい |
| | 2 NGです | 7 後で連絡を入れます |
| | 3 ありがとう | 8 保留です |
| | 4 ごめんなさい | 9 キャンセルです |
| | 5 待ってて! | 0 時間がありません |
| 9 Original | | |

# Multiaccess Combinations

The table below indicates whether another event or task is available for each task in progress.

- The FOMA terminal may not operate as indicated in the table below depending on its condition.

○: Available ×: Unavailable △: Available depending on the conditions

| Current status | Another event or task | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Voice call | | V.phone call | | PushTalk | | i-mode | Full Browser | i-mode mail | | SMS | | 64K data comm. | | Packet comm. (Data comm.) | | Software update | | Comm. for scanning | Data Security Service | | Music&Video Channel Download |
| | Call | Rcv | Call | Rcv | Orig | Rcv | | | Send | Rcv | Send | Rcv | Call | Rcv | Call | Rcv | Now | Rsv | | Send | Rcv | |
| During a voice call | △※1 | △※2 | × | × | × | ×※4 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | ×※4 | ○ | ○ | × | ○ | × | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| During a videophone call | × | ×※4 | × | ×※4, 5 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| During PushTalk communication | × | ○※6 | × | ×※4 | ×※7 | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| During i-mode connection | ○ | ○ | ○※3 | ○※8 | ○※3 | ○※9 | × | △※13 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ×※10 | ×※4 | ×※10 | × | × | × | × | ○ | ○ | × |
| Full Browser | ○ | ○ | ○※3 | ○※8 | ○※3 | ○※9 | × | × | ○※3 | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | ○※3 | ○ | × |
| During sending/ receiving i-mode mail | ○ | ○ | ○※3 | ○※8 | ○※3 | ○※9 | ○ | ○※14 | × | ○※11 | ○※11 | ○※11 | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | ○ | ○ | × |
| During sending/ receiving SMS | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○※11 | ○※11 | ○※11 | ○※11 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | × | × | × | × | ○ |
| During 64K data communication | × | ×※4 | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| During packet comm. (Data comm.) | ○※15 | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | ○ | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| Updating software | × | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | ×※12 | × | × | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| Communication for scanning | × | ○※3 | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | ×※12 | × | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| During Data Security Service communication | ○ | ○ | ○※3 | ○※8 | ○※3 | ○※9 | ○ | ○※14 | × | × | × | × | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| During downloading Music&Video Channel | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○※8 | ○ | ○※9 | ○ | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | ×※4 | × | × | × | × | × | × | ○ | × |



Continued

※1 If you subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can place a call to another recipient while you already have a call in progress.

※2 If you subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can receive another call while you already have a call in progress. If you do not yet subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, you can receive another call after you disconnect the first call.

※3 You can place a voice or videophone call or originate a PushTalk call after disconnecting the current communication.

※4 The FOMA terminal does not perform the receiving operation and a received call is saved in the Received record as a missed call.

※5 If you do not yet subscribe to the Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service, a received call is not saved in the Received record.

※6 In either of the following cases, the FOMA terminal notifies you of an incoming voice call and you can select either to "answer a voice call" or to "continue with PushTalk call". (The one that was not selected is terminated.)

- When the P-Talk arrival act is set to [Answer]
- When the P-Talk arrival act is set to [Voice Mail] or [Call Forwarding] and you do not subscribe to these services

※7 If you originate a PushTalk call, you can place another call to add a member.

※8 The FOMA terminal performs the operation set by the V.ph while packet.

- When the V.ph while packet is set to [Prefer packet] or when the V.ph while packet is set to [V.ph voicemail] or [Call forwarding] and you do not subscribe to these services, the packet communication is continued.
- When the V.ph while packet is set to [Prefer V.phone], packet communication is disconnected and you can receive a videophone call.

※9 The FOMA terminal performs the operation set by the i-mode arrival act.

- When set to [Prefer i-mode], i-mode communication is continued.
- When set to [Prefer PushTalk], i-mode communication is disconnected and you can receive a PushTalk call.

※10 While you are performing i-mode communication using i-αppli, you can send data after disconnecting the i-mode communication in progress.

※11 A combination of the same communication direction, either sending or receiving, is not available.

※12 When you set the Host selection to [i-mode(UIM)], "" appears.

※13 After the current communication is terminated, the Full Browser communication is started.

※14 When switching from i-mode to Full Browser, after the i-mode communication is terminated, the Full Browser communication is started.

※15 You can only place a call by entering a phone number directly in the stand-by display.

## Multitask Combinations

The table below indicates whether another function is available for each function from the menu display.

- The FOMA terminal may not operate as indicated in the table below depending on the status of each function.
- Some functions may pause temporarily when they are not displayed in the display even if already activated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable —: Unavailable from the menu display

| Function to be activated / Currently activated function | Voice call | PushTalk | Videophone call/64K data comm./Packet comm. | Call record/ Phonebook | ToruCa/Alarm/Schedule/ Text Memo/Calculator | Mail/SMS | i-mode/Full Browser | i-αppli | Data Box/Lifetime Calendar | Camera/Movie | MUSIC Player | GPS | Settings/NW Services/ Receive Ir data |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| During a voice call | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | × | × | × | ○ | × |
| During PushTalk comm. | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | × | × | × | ○ | × |
| During a videophone call/ during 64K data comm./ during packet comm. | — | — | — | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| Call record/ Phonebook | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| ToruCa/Alarm/ Schedule/Text Memo/ Calculator | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| Mail/SMS | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| i-mode/Full Browser | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| i-αppli | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| Data Box/Lifetime Calendar | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| Camera/Movie | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | ○ | × |
| MUSIC Player | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | ○ | × |
| GPS | — | — | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | × |
| Settings/NW Services/ Receive Ir data | — | — | — | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × | × |

## Services Available on the FOMA Terminal

| Service | Phone number |
|---|---|
| Number guide service (paid: service charge + call charge) (Phone numbers of customers who declined to disclose their number information cannot be guided.) | (no area code) 104 |
| Telegram service (paid: telegram fee) | (no area code) 115 |
| Time (paid) | (no area code) 117 |
| Weather (paid) | Area code of the area you want to hear the weather forecast for + 177 |
| Emergency call to Police | (no area code) 110 |
| Emergency call to Fire/Ambulance | (no area code) 119 |
| Emergency call to Maritime rescue | (no area code) 118 |
| Disaster Message Board Service (paid) | (no area code) 171 |
| Collect Call (paid: service charge + call charge) | (no area code) 106 |

- When placing a Collect Call through 106, the recipient pays for the call charge and a handling fee of 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) per call (as of December 2007).
- When calling the Directory Assistance at 104, you are required to pay a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen including tax) besides the call charge (as of December 2007). Note that Operator Services are free to the people with impairment in the vision or upper limbs. For more details, contact 116 (NTT Sales Office) from an ordinary phone.
- If you have an ordinary phone with subscription to the Call Forwarding Service and you designate your mobile phone number to forward your calls to, the caller may hear a ringing sound even if the mobile phone is busy, outside of the service area, in the Self mode, or powered off, etc. depending on the settings of the ordinary phone/mobile phone.
- Note that 116 (NTT Sales Office), Dial Q2, Message Dial, Credit calls cannot be called from the FOMA terminal (note that Automatic Credit Calls may be used when calling from ordinary phones to the FOMA terminal).
- This FOMA terminal supports “Emergency call location information”.
  If you use the FOMA terminal to place a call to emergency numbers such as 110, 119, or 118, the information of a location where you are calling from (location information) is automatically notified to the Emergency call acceptance organization such as the Police Station. The Emergency call acceptance organization may not be able to figure out your exact location depending on the location where you place a call or radio wave condition. If you notify your current location information, the name of the notified Emergency call acceptance organization appears in the stand-by display.
  If you place a call without the caller ID, such as by entering a phone number with “184” for each call, the location information and phone number are not notified. However, the Emergency call acceptance organization may decide to obtain the location information and phone number regardless of your settings when they consider it is necessary for lifesaving, etc.
  Note that the areas/time for which the “Emergency call location information” is ready to be used vary depending on the preparatory state of each Emergency call acceptance organization.
- When you call the Police (110), Fire/Ambulance (119), or Maritime rescue (118) from the FOMA terminal, clearly indicate that you are calling from a mobile phone, then give your present location and mobile phone number, since the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you. Also, make a point to call in a stationary position to prevent the call from being dropped. Do not power off the FOMA terminal for at least 10 minutes after the emergency call just in case the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you.
- Note that you may not connect to the local Fire Department or Police Station depending on where you are calling from. In this case, try to call from a public phone or an ordinary phone in the neighborhood.

## Optional and Related Devices

A variety of commercially available optional devices allows you to expand the FOMA terminal's capabilities by supporting a wide range of applications, including personal and business uses. Some accessories are only available in some areas. For details, please contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.). For details on optional devices, see the user's manual of each device.

- Battery Pack SO02
- Back Cover SO09
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 ※1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use ※2
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder SO10
- In-Car Holder 01
- Carry Case L 01
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 ※3
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 ※4
- FOMA USB Cable ※4
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna ※5
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type) ※5
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001/002 ※6
- Stereo Earphone Set P001 ※6
- Earphone Terminal P001 ※6
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver

※1 For information on charging the AC adapter, see P.40 and P.41.

※2 For use overseas, a plug adapter that fits the electrical outlets in the country you stay is needed.

※3 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA SO906i using USB or charge FOMA SO906i.

※4 If you use USB HUB, it may not work properly.

※5 Use it only in Japan.

※6 The Earphone Plug Adapter is required.

## Introduction of Movie Player Software

To play back a movie (MP4 format file) on a PC, you need QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) from Apple Computer, Inc.
You can download QuickTime from the following website.
http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- To download this software, you need a PC connected to the Internet. A separate communication charge is also required for downloading.
- Check the above website for details about the operating environment, downloading method, operation method, and other information.

# Troubleshooting

First, check if the software update is necessary for the FOMA terminal. If necessary, perform the software update (P.456).

| Trouble | Cause and Remedy |
|---|---|
| Cannot power on the FOMA terminal. (The FOMA terminal cannot be used.) | • Check if the battery pack is attached properly (P.39).<br>• Check if the battery pack is not run out (P.42). |
| The FOMA terminal cannot be used | • Check if the Lock key is set (P.140). |
| The warning tone sounds and does not stop even when you press the Power key, and the FOMA terminal is powered off. | • The battery is running out. Charge the battery (P.41). |
| The busy tone sounds and the call is not connected, even if you dial up. | • Check if "圏外" appears (P.30).<br>• Check if you enter the area code (P.51).<br>• Check if you dial up in a hurry without hearing the ringing tone (P.51). |
| "圏外" is displayed and the busy tone sounds. | • Check if you are outside of the service area or in a location with weak radio wave condition (P.30). |
| Cannot place a call even if you press the keypad. | • Check if the Self mode is set (P.137).<br>• Check if the Key dial lock is set (P.139).<br>• Check if the Lock key is set (P.140). |
| The dark display appears and cannot operate anything. | • Check if the FOMA terminal is powered on (P.43).<br>• Check if the Lock key is set (P.140). |
| is displayed and cannot operate anything. | • The Lock key is set. Cancel the Lock key and retry the operation (P.140). |
| The set stand-by display does not appear and the dark display appears. | • Check if the Power saver mode is set (P.122). |
| Text is displayed in Japanese. | • Check if the Select language is set to [Japanese] (P.128). |
| Cannot receive a call or the ring tone does not sound. | • Check if the Public mode (Drive mode) is set (P.69).<br>• Check if the Ring volume is set to [OFF] (P.109).<br>• Check if the Manner mode is set (P.116).<br>• Check if the Self mode is set (P.137).<br>• Check if the Accept/Reject call is set (P.143).<br>• Check if the Denied no ID is set (P.144).<br>• Check if the Set ring start time is set (P.145).<br>• Check if the Reject unknown is set (P.146).<br>• Check if the ring time of the Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 seconds (P.392, 393).<br>• Check if the Caller ID Request is set (P.395).<br>• Check if the Mova terminal is enabled for the Dual Network Service (P.395). |
| The mail and alarm tones sound but the ring tone for an incoming call does not sound. | • Check if the Ring volume is set to [OFF] (P.109).<br>• Check if a longer interval (such as 99 sec) is set at [Start time] of the Set ring start time. Set it to a shorter interval (P.145). |
| The mail tone sounds but there is no incoming mail. | • Check if the Tone/Vibrate notice of the Voice Mail Service is set to [ON]. If it is ON, you are notified of the increase in the number of record messages by the mail tone (P.392). |



Continued

| Trouble | Cause and Remedy |
|---|---|
| An image other than that you set is displayed for an incoming call. | • If multiple images are set for the incoming image for voice/videophone call, the image is displayed in the following order of priority (P.96, 100, 108).<br>1. Des call display set in the Phonebook<br>2. Des call display set in the Group setting<br>3. Incoming image set in the Incoming set<br>When an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone or an i-motion is set for the incoming image, however, the order of priority may vary. |
| A ring tone other than that you set sounds for an incoming call. | • If multiple ring tones are set for voice/videophone call, the ring tone sounds in the following order of priority (P.97, 100, 109, 397, 400).<br>1. Ring tone set in the Number Setting (when a call is placed to an Additional No. for the Multi Number)<br>2. Des phone tone set in the Phonebook<br>3. Des phone tone set in the Group setting<br>4. Ring tone of the Ringtone for Number B of 2in1<br>5. Ring tone set in the Incoming set<br>When an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone or an i-motion is set for the incoming image, however, the order of priority may vary. |
| A ring tone other than that you set sounds for an incoming mail. | • If multiple ring tones are set for mail, the ring tone sounds in the following order of priority (P.97, 100, 109).<br>1. Des mail tone set in the Phonebook<br>2. Des mail tone set in the Group setting<br>3. Ring tone set in the Incoming set<br>When an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is set for the ring tone, however, the order of priority may vary. |
| The incoming indicator in the color other than that you set lights for an incoming call or mail. | • If multiple incoming indicators are set for voice call/videophone call/mail, the incoming indicator flashes in the following order of priority (P.97, 100, 110).<br>1. Select phone/mail Illum. set in the Phonebook<br>2. Select phone/mail Illum. set in the Group setting<br>3. Indicator color set in the Incoming set |
| The incoming indicator flashes in certain cycle. | • Check if the Missed call is set to [ON] (P.126). |
| The charge indicator stays lit. | • Check if [Charging] of the Backlight always on is set to [ON] (P.122). In this setting, it may take time to complete charging, but this is not a malfunction.<br>• Check if you use a function such as the videophone, data communication, and i-αppli while charging the battery. In this case, it may take time to complete charging, but this is not a malfunction. |
| The keypad sound is not heard. | • Check if the Keypad sound volume is set to [OFF] (P.111).<br>• Check if the Manner mode is set (P.116). |
| The display is slow to react on pressing a key. | • This may occur when a large amount of data is stored in the FOMA terminal. |
| The Total calls cost does not increment. | • It does not increment if the counter reaches the upper limit value (about ¥16,770,000) of total calls cost of UIM. Reset the counter to ¥0 (P.370). |
| Data communication does not start. | • Check if you use USB HUB. If you use USB HUB, it may not work properly. |

# Error Messages

- In some cases, a 3-digit number may be displayed together with a message. This is a DoCoMo own code that DoCoMo displays on the FOMA terminal.

## A

**A mail address is unregistered**

- No mail address for posting is saved for the selected blog service. Save a mail address (P.358).

**Accessing IC card. Cannot delete**

- Failed to delete the software because data in the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli IC card is being accessed.

**Address is not valid (451)**

- Failed to send the mail because of unknown mail address. Enter the correct mail address and send it again.

**Another function is active. Cannot activate this at the same time**

- Another function that cannot be run simultaneously by multitask-ing is active. Quit the function, if it is not being used, and then retry the operation (P.353).

**Authentication failed**

- Failed in verifying the authentication password. Set the password so that it matches the one of the other device and then retry the operation (P.329, 330, 332, 333).
- The authentication type (one/all) does not match the one set for the other device. Set the same authentication type (one/all) on both party to exchange data using the infrared or iC communication (P.329, 330, 332, 333).

**Authentication type is not supported (401)**

- Failed to connect to the site or website, etc. because of the unsupported authentication type.

## C

**Camera function error. Quit the application**

- The Camera mode is terminated because of an error occurrence. To continue to use the camera, restart the Camera mode.

**Camera function error. Save the data and quit the application**

- The Camera mode is terminated after the image is saved because of an error occurrence. To continue to use the camera, restart the Camera mode.

**Camera function error. Switch to Substitute image**

- The videophone image is switched to the substitute image because of an error occurrence. Switch it again to the camera image (P.51).

**Cannot execute because of memory shortage**

- Failed to execute the function because of insufficient memory.

**Cannot move. Not enough memory**

- The remaining memory in the microSD memory card is insufficient. Delete unnecessary data (P.103, 193, 194, 223, 258, 321, 366, 373).

**Cannot read. You need to format**

- The microSD memory card is not formatted correctly. Format it using the FOMA terminal (P.313).

**Cannot support content**

- Data that is not supported by the FOMA terminal is contained in the contents.

**Cannot switch mode**

- Failed to set to the microSD or MTP mode because of a communication using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) in progress.

**Certificate is rejected (tampered)**

- There are some problems with the certificate.

**Check address**

- The SMS address exceeds 21 digits or 186/184 is entered at the beginning of the address. Enter the correct address and send it again (P.234).

**Check SMS Center setting**

- The incorrect host is set at the SMSC. Restore the host to “DoCoMo”, the default setting at the time of purchase (P.236).

**Connection failed**

- The host number set for the Host selection is incorrect. Restore the host number to “iモード”, the default setting at the time of purchase (P.197).
- Failed to connect because of weak radio wave condition. Retry to connect from a place with better radio wave condition.
- Failed to connect to a line due to a network problem. Retry to connect after a while.
- Failed to connect to a line for some reason when placing a videophone call.

**Connection failed (403)**

- Failed to connect to i-mode for some reason. Retry to connect (P.186).

**Connection failed (503)**

- Failed to connect to a line due to a network problem. Retry to connect after a while.



Continued

**Connection failed (562)**

- Failed to connect to the i-mode center. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and then retry the operation.

**Connection interrupted**

- The communication is interrupted because of an error occurrence during data communication.

**Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

**Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.

**Continue using iαppli and transmit data?**

- This message appears when the number of times of communication performed while an i-αppli software is used has increased significantly for a certain period of time. To continue using the i-αppli software, select [Yes]. To continue using the i-αppli software after the communication is terminated, select [No]. To quit the i-αppli software, select [Terminate].

**Could not move**

- Failed to move data because of an error occurrence.

**Could not save**

- Failed to save the image, music data, or i-αppli software.
- Failed to save to the microSD memory card.
- Failed to receive data during the infrared/iC communication or data communication with a PC.
- Failed to save the image or melody scanned by the bar code reader.
- Failed to save the i-motion because the size exceeded 10M bytes. You can set a Chaku-Uta Full® with up to 10M bytes of i-motion for the ring tone/Alarm using [Point].

## D

**Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?**

- Failed to download the data because the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli IC card is full of data. When you select [Yes], the names of the Osaifu-Keitai services on the card appear. Select a service name and delete its Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software and data from the IC card.

**Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?**

- This message appears when the number of times of communication performed while an i-αppli software is used has increased significantly for a certain period of time. To continue using the i-αppli software, select [Yes]. To continue using the i-αppli software after the communication is terminated, select [No]. To quit the i-αppli software, select [Terminate].

**Deleted invalid text**

- Characters other than digits cannot be accepted for the postal code. They are discarded.

**Download failed**

- Failed to download because of an error occurrence.

**Draft is full. Cannot create**

- The number of saved mail has reached 50 or there is not enough memory. Delete unnecessary saved mail (P.223).

## E

**Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software**

- Failed to delete the software because data in the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli IC card contains an error.

**Error in image. Does not work correctly**

- The Flash movie cannot be played back correctly due to some errors in the Flash movie.

**Error in the dictionary**

- There are some words or phrases that have failed to be saved because of an error in part of the dictionary data (words or phrases that have been saved successfully can be used as dictionary data).

**Exceeds max number of simultaneous call**

- This message appears when you originate a PushTalk call to more than four members. Reduce the number of members you select to four or less and originate the call again.

## F

**Final number exists. Cannot shoot**

- The microSD memory card contains a file with the maximum number (999-9999), so no more files can be saved in it. Delete the image files from the largest file numbers (P.321).

## I

**iαppli stand-by display terminated due to security error**

- The i-αppli stand-by display was canceled since it has attempted an unauthorized operation. Check the security error history (P.250).

**iαppli To function is not set**

- The i-αppli To is set to [No]. Set the i-αppli To to [Yes] and then retry the operation (P.241).

**IC card is locked**

- The IC card lock is set. Cancel the IC card lock and then retry the operation (P.262).

**Image display setting OFF. Cannot download**

- Failed to download the image because the Display img is set to [OFF]. Set the Display img to [ON] and then retry the operation.

**i-mode mail service is busy. Please try again later (553)**

- The line is extremely congested. Wait for a while and then retry the operation.

**Input error (205)**

- Incorrect input data. Check the input contents.

**Insert UIM**

- The UIM is not inserted. Insert the UIM and then retry the operation (P.36).

**Invalid data (XXX)**

- You tried to connect to the site or website, etc. not supporting i-mode.
- The URL you entered may be invalid.
- Failed to display because of an error in the received data.

**Invalid data. Connection cannot be established (400)**

- The host number you set for the Host selection is incorrect. Restore the host number to "iモード", the default setting at the time of purchase (P.197).
- Failed to connect to i-mode for some reason. Retry to connect (P.186).

**Invalid data. Data size is not supported (XXX)**

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.
- The URL you entered may be invalid.
- Failed to display because of an error in the received data.

**Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start**

- Failed to start the i-αppli software due to the function for restricting UIM operation. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file and then retry the operation (P.36).

**Invalid UIM. Delete not possible**

- Unable to delete software because the information on a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal and its corresponding information on the IC card are different. Use the UIM that was inserted in the FOMA terminal when you downloaded and activated the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for the first time.

**Invalid UIM. Download failed**

- Unable to download software because the information on a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal and its corresponding information on the IC card are different. Use the UIM that was inserted in the FOMA terminal when you downloaded and activated the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for the first time.

**Invalid UIM. Requested service not available**

- Failed to perform the operation due to the function for restricting UIM operation. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file and then retry the operation (P.36).

**Invalid UIM. Start failed**

- Unable to start software because the information on a UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal and its corresponding information on the IC card are different. Use the UIM that was inserted in the FOMA terminal when you downloaded and activated the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli for the first time.

**Invalid URL**

- When you entered a URL, you did not enter "http://" or "https://", or entered it incorrectly. Enter the correct URL and then retry the operation (P.191).
- Failed to display a link because the URL contains an error.

## K

**Key dial locked**

- The Key dial lock is set. Cancel the Key dial lock and then retry the operation (P.139).

## L

**Lock all**

- The Lock all is set. Cancel the Lock all and then retry the operation (P.135).

**Low battery. Cannot update data information**

- When the battery level is very low, you cannot add an i bookmark/mark in the PDF data saved in [Movable contents] of My document in the microSD memory card.

## M

**Mail security is set**

- The Mail security is set. Cancel the Mail security and then retry the operation (P.142).

**以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした(561) Mails could not be sent to following address**

○○@△△△.ne.jp

※Mail addresses vary depending on each recipient.

- Failed to send mails to some mail addresses. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and then send them again.

**Main memory shortage**

- The remaining memory on the FOMA terminal is insufficient. Change the image quality or image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.159, 178, 321).

**Main memory shortage. May not save**

- An image you edit may not be saved because of insufficient memory on the FOMA terminal. Delete unnecessary images or move some images to the microSD memory card (P.312, 321).



Continued

**MainMenu cannot be activated now**

- Failed to display the menu because a function that does not support menu display is executed.

**Manner mode is set**

- Failed to adjust the volume because the Manner mode is set. Cancel the Manner mode and then retry the operation (P.116).

**Memory shortage**

- The operation is interrupted because of insufficient memory. If the message is frequently displayed, power off the FOMA terminal once and then power it on again.

**Memory shortage. Cancel operation**

- The operation is discontinued because of insufficient memory.

**Message rejected and cannot be received**

- Failed to send SMS because the recipient rejects receiving SMS.

**Message rejected and cannot be sent**

- Failed to send SMS because sending SMS is rejected.

**microSD error**

- Failed to access the microSD memory card (loading error, etc.). Remove the microSD memory card once and insert it again (P.307). If this message appears again, the microSD memory card may be damaged.

## N

**No content is available (204)**

- The site or website you specified contains no display data.

**No files**

- For the Music slide show, only JPEG images can be displayed. Either save a JPEG image or specify other folder where JPEG images are saved.
- The UIM operation restriction is set to the image. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the image was obtained, and retry the operation (P.36).

**No memory space**

- The number of entries saved in the Phonebook has reached 1,000. Delete unnecessary entries in the Phonebook (P.103).
- The number of saved schedules has reached 300. Delete unnecessary schedules (P.366).
- Failed to save the data. This message appears if there is not enough memory when you attempt to exchange data using the infrared or iC communication.
- There is not enough memory to save new data. Delete unnecessary data (P.326).

**No more file number. Please reset**

- The file number which is attached to an image saved in the microSD memory card and incremented with the number of saved images has reached the maximum number (999-9999). Perform the Reset file No. (P.181).

**No requested software**

- The i-αppli software to be started from the site or mail, or by the infrared communication is not stored in the FOMA terminal.

**No response**

- Failed to identify a recipient of iC communication. Check if both FeliCa marks "" are opposed correctly with each other or the other device operates properly (P.331).
- Failed to recognize the other device for the infrared communication. Check if the infrared data ports are pointed at each other correctly or if the other device operates properly (P.327).

**No response (408)**

- The communication is interrupted because there is no response from the site or website. Retry the operation after a while.

**No space in main memory**

- Another image recorded by the camera cannot be saved because of no memory to save it on the FOMA terminal. Change the image quality or image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.159, 178, 321).
- The remaining memory on the FOMA terminal is insufficient. Delete unnecessary data (P.103, 193, 194, 223, 258, 321, 366, 373).

**No space to attach signature**

- Failed to attach the signature because the total number of characters in the mail main body and signature exceeds 5,000 full-width or 10,000 half-width characters. Decrease the number of characters in the mail main body or send mail with no signature attached (P.207, 227).

**Not enough space in microSD**

- Another image recorded by the camera cannot be saved because of no vacant space to save it in the microSD memory card. Change the image quality or image size, or delete unnecessary images (P.159, 178, 321).

**Not supported by this Reader/Writer**

- The recipient's terminal does not support the iC communication.

## O

**Omakase Lock activated**

- The Omakase Lock is set. While the Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for answering an incoming voice or videophone call and powering on/off (P.136).

**Out of service area**

- The i-mode services are not available since you are outside of the service area or in a location without the radio wave. Move to a location where "圏外" disappears (P.30).

## P

**Page is not found (404)**

- The site, website, etc. cannot be located. Check if the URL you entered is correct.

**Personal data locked**

- The Personal data lock is set. Cancel the Personal data lock and then retry the operation (P.137).

**Please wait for a while**

- Voice line/packet communication system failure or very high congestion in voice line/packet communication network. Retry after a while. However, you can still place a call to 110, 119, or 118, with some exceptions depending on the situation.

**Please wait for a while (packet)**

- Packet communication system failure or very high congestion in packet communication network. Retry the operation after a while.

**Positioning failed**

- Failed to position the current location. Move to a location with better radio wave condition and then try it again.

**Public mode (Drive mode)**

- The Public mode is set. Cancel the Public mode and then retry the operation (P.69).

**PUK blocked**

- The PUK code is locked. Contact the nearest DoCoMo shop (P.131).

## R

**Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.
- Failed to retrieve the data because its file size has exceeded 10M bytes while playing back a streaming type i-motion.

**Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion**

- Failed to retrieve the data because its volume has exceeded the maximum size.
- Failed to retrieve the data because its file size has exceeded 500K bytes while playing back a standard type i-motion.

**Registration is in progress (554)**

- User registration of i-mode is in progress. Retry the operation after a while.

**Remotely Controllable services denied**

- You currently do not yet subscribe to services such as the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service that can be operated by remote control. To use the remote control, subscribe to services.

**Replay period has expired**

- This file is provided with an expiry date or time limit on playback. It cannot be played back because the term permitted for playback has expired. Check the expiry date in the Detail info display (P.322).

**Replay period has not yet started**

- This file is provided with a time limit on playback. It cannot be played back because the term permitted for playback has not yet started. Check the starting date of the term in the Detail info display (P.322).

**Requested software unavailable**

- Failed to start the i-αppli software stored in the FOMA terminal from a site or mail, or by infrared communication.

**Retention period has expired (492)**

- The time for storage of the pull-type file attachment has expired. It cannot be obtained.

**Root certificate has expired. Connect?**

- The certificate of the FOMA terminal is not yet valid or has expired. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect. This message may also appear when the current date and time are set wrong. Set them correctly (P.44).

**Root certificate is not valid**

- The SSL list is set to [Invalid]. Set the SSL list to [Valid] (P.198).

**Run software and delete data on IC card. Then delete software**

- Failed to delete the Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli software because of some data being contained in the IC card. Delete the saved data after starting the software and then retry the operation (P.255).

## S

**Same ToruCa exists. Unable to receive ToruCa**

- You cannot obtain a ToruCa card that already exists when the Duplication check is set (P.261).

**Server is busy**

- The software update is not available because the server is busy. Wait for a while and then retry the operation (P.459).

**Server is full (551)**

- When the number of mail held for the recipient at the i-mode center reaches the maximum number, no more mail sent to the recipient is accepted by the i-mode center. Try to send mail after the recipient makes space for new mail at the i-mode center (P.213).

**Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download. Delete a service?**

- Downloading/upgrading is unavailable because software using the same service has been already downloaded.

**Service not provided**

- SMS is not provided.

**Service not registered**

- You do not have a subscription for the i-mode service. To use i-mode, subscribe to i-mode.
- If you signed up for i-mode after starting to use the FOMA terminal, power off the FOMA terminal once and then power it on again.

**Services are full. MUSIC of overwritten service is unable to play. Overwrite?**

- The maximum number of music services (members only) which can be saved has been exceeded. If you select [Yes], the new service overwrites the service which has the oldest time limit on playback. Also, you cannot play back music downloaded from the service which is overwritten.

**Setting keyguard**

- The Lock key is set. Cancel the Lock key and then retry the operation (P.140).

**Setting self mode**

- The Self mode is set. Cancel the Self mode and then retry the operation (P.137).

**Setting unknown reject**

- The Reject unknown is set. Cancel the Reject unknown and then retry the operation (P.146).

**Software already updated**

- No update is available for the i-αppli software because it has been already updated to the latest.

**Software terminated due to security error**

- The i-αppli software was terminated since it has attempted an unauthorized operation. Check the security error history (P.250).

**SSL session failed**

- Failed to connect to the server because of a server authentication error.

**SSL session was terminated**

- The SSL communication is disconnected because there is a problem with the certificate of the site.

**Syntax error (XXX)**

- Failed to display because of an error in the received data.

## T

**Text volume exceeds. Cannot send**

- The number of characters in the mail main body has exceeded the limit and mail cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters.

**There is no corresponding service**

- No blog service that supports a service you want to use is saved. Save an appropriate blog service (P.358).

**This certificate has expired. Connect?**

- The certificate of the site is not yet valid or has expired. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

**This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?**

- The CN-Name (server name) of the certificate of the site does not match the actual server name. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

**This data can no longer be replayed**

- This file is provided with a limitation on the number of times of playback. It cannot be played back because the number of times permitted for playback has been exceeded. Check the permitted number of times in the Detail info display (P.322).

**This data may not be replayed**

- You may not be able to play back this i-motion data because it is invalid.

**This function is unavailable**

- The function you selected cannot be used concurrently with the function that is currently executed (P.353).

**This site is not certified. Connect?**

- The certificate of the site is not supported by the FOMA terminal. Select [Yes] to connect or [No] to cancel to connect.

**This software contains an error**

- Failed to download or upgrade because information required for it is not set on the i-αppli software.

**This software contains an error. Unable to download**

- Failed to download because of an error in the software data.

**This software is currently unavailable for use**

- IP (information service providers) stopped the use of the i-αppli software. Contact IP.

**This software is not supported by this phone**

- The software you want to download or upgrade does not support the FOMA terminal.

This UIM cannot be recognized

- Make sure that the correct UIM is inserted (P.36).
- The UIM contains an error. Contact our service counter (DoCoMo shop, etc.).

Time out

- Failed to connect within the time set for the Connection timeout. Change the setting or retry to connect after a while (P.197).

Too many active functions. Cannot activate

- You cannot execute the selected function because of too many functions being executed by multitasking. Quit a currently executed function and then retry the operation (P.353).

Too many active functions. Cannot execute. Quit other function and retry

- You cannot execute a selected function because of insufficient memory. Quit a currently executed function and then retry the operation (P.353).

Too much data was entered

- Failed to send because of too many characters. Reduce the number of characters and try to send again.

Transmission failed

- An error occured while sending mail. Make sure that "圏外" is not displayed and send it again. If the message appears again, retry to send after a while (P.213).
- The address of SMS is incorrect. Enter the correct address (phone number) and send again (P.234).

Transmission failed (552)

- Failed to connect to a line due to a problem at the i-mode or SMS center. Retry to connect after a while.

## U

UIM is full

- The number of SMS saved in the UIM has reached the maximum number. Delete unnecessary SMS (P.223).

UIM is not inserted. Content is unavailable

- Failed to operate because the UIM is not inserted. Insert the UIM that was used when you retrieved the data or file and then retry the operation (P.36).

Unable to display this program guide

- When 2in1 is set to the B mode, you cannot run the program guide i-αppli with mail or using mail.

Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error

- Failed to obtain the file because of an error in the playback restriction data.

Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)

- Failed to connect to the site or website for some reason. Retry to connect.

Unable to run this software

- When 2in1 is set to the B mode, you cannot run i-αppli with mail or i-αppli using mail.

Unable to update pattern definitions

- Failed to update pattern definitions because of error occurrence.

Unable to use in My Data B

- You cannot originate a PushTalk call from the Own number display of the B mode.

Unsupported microSD

- A non-compatible microSD memory card is installed in the FOMA terminal. Install a FOMA terminal-compatible microSD memory card (P.307).

URL is too long to register

- Failed to save the site as a bookmark because the URL exceeds 256 half-width characters (P.191).

Usage is currently restricted. Try again later

- Users of the flat-rate i-mode packet service may not be able to connect during certain hours because of sharp increase in communication traffic. In this case, wait for a while until you can use i-mode.

Use ToruCa automatic reading func through the reader/writer?

- Auto recognition is set to [OFF] (P.260).

## Y

Your HTTP version is not supported (505)

- You tried to connect to the site, etc. not supporting i-mode.

## Symbol

αerror

- An error occurred while running the i-αppli software. Start to run again or check the error history (P.250).

"○△□.ne.jp"宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません(555) (Failed to send mail to "○△□.ne.jp" because the line is congested)

※Domain names vary depending on each recipient.

- The line is extremely congested. Wait for a while and then retry the operation.

# Warranty and After Sales Services

## Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty is received with the FOMA terminal upon purchase.
  Check to be sure that the name of the retailer, date of purchase, and other items have been filled out on the warranty before storing it in a safe place. If any necessary information is not provided, immediately contact the retailer and request to complete the warranty. The FOMA terminal comes with a year's free warranty starting from the date of purchase.
- Specifications of this product and its accessories are subject to change for improvement without prior notice.
- Data saved in the Phonebook or other memory locations may be changed/lost due to the trouble/repairs or handling of the FOMA terminal. Note down the data in the Phonebook or other memory locations on a separate memo and keep it safely to prevent such problems. When the FOMA terminal is replaced due to trouble, the information downloaded using i-mode and i-αppli are not transferred to the repaired FOMA terminal because of copyright laws, with some exceptions.
  ※ This FOMA terminal allows you to save data, such as the Phonebook, in the microSD memory card.
  ※ This FOMA terminal allows you to save i-motion files and data that is used by i-αppli software in the microSD memory card.
  ※ This FOMA terminal allows you to use the Data Security Service (a paid service that requires a subscription) to store data, such as the Phonebook, at the Data Security Service Center.
  ※ If you have a PC, you can use the DoCoMo keitai datalink (P.408) and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer data saved in the Phonebook and other memory from the FOMA terminal to the PC and save data in the PC.

## After Sales Services

### ◎If you have problems with the FOMA terminal

Before requesting for repairs, refer to "Troubleshooting" of this manual to see if the problem can be remedied (P.444).
If the FOMA terminal still malfunctions, call the "Contact for Repairs" on the backcover of this manual.

### ◎If repair is required resultingly

Bring the FOMA terminal to the DoCoMo repair handling service counter. However, it must be taken during business hours of the DoCoMo repair handling service counter. Make sure to bring a warranty card with the product when you visit the shop.

### ◎Within the warranty period

- We repair the FOMA terminal free of charge based on the terms documented in the warranty.
- When requesting a repair, make sure to bring the warranty card with the FOMA terminal. Repair requests that are not accompanied by the warranty or that involve malfunction and damage due to incorrect handling by the owner will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- Malfunction due to use of devices and consumable parts other than those specified by DoCoMo will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- Damages on the liquid-crystal screen, connecter, or other parts occurred after the purchase will be repaired at the owner's expense.

### ◎Note that repair may be refused in the following cases.

We may not repair the FOMA terminal if the water leak seal is reacted or if the FOMA terminal has corrosion due to water leakage, condensation, perspiration, etc. or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed. Even if repair is possible, it will be done at the owner's expense, as this type of corrosion or damage is not covered by the warranty.

◎If the warranty period expires

We will repair the FOMA terminal at the owner's expense.

◎Parts stock period

The functional parts necessary to repair the FOMA terminal will be basically available for a minimum of six years after the manufacture is discontinued. However, depending on the defective portion, repair may not be possible because of a shortage of repair parts.
Note that repair may still be possible depending on the defective portion even if the stock period has expired. Call the "Contact for Repairs" on the backcover of this manual.

◎Precautions

- Never modify the FOMA terminal or accessories.
  - Doing so may result in fire, injuries or malfunctions.
  - The modified FOMA terminal may be repaired only if the owner agrees on that all the modified parts are restored to the original conditions. However, repairs may be refused depending on the modifications.
    The following cases may be considered as modifications.
    - Put a seal on portions such as of the liquid-crystal screen or keypad.
    - Glued decorations on the FOMA terminal using adhesion bond, etc.
    - Change the parts such as exterior to other than DoCoMo Standard Parts.
  - Malfunction and damage due to modifications will be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- The model plate must not be removed from the FOMA terminal.
  The model plate certifies that the FOMA terminal satisfies technical standards. It should be noted that if the plate is removed or is replaced with a different plate, and the original model plate cannot be verified, it may disqualify the unit from repairs due to not being able to determine the technical standards of that particular phone.
- Note that the settings, total call duration, and other information may be reset (cleared) as a result of malfunction, repair or other handling. In this case, make the settings again.
- A material that generates a magnetic field is used in the following parts of the FOMA terminal. Do not hold an object that is easily affected by magnetism, such as a cash card, close to the FOMA terminal. You may not be able to use the card any more.
  Where it is used: Earpiece, speaker, upper side of the back of the lens cover, both sides of the JOG
- If the FOMA terminal has gotten wet or moist, immediately power off the terminal and remove the battery pack from it, and then bring it to the DoCoMo repair handling service counter as soon as possible. However, note that we may not repair the FOMA terminal depending on the extent of the damage.

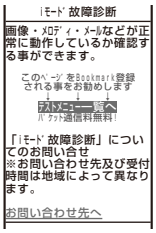
## Precautions on Memory Dial (Phonebook Function) and Downloaded Data

- It is strictly recommended to back up all the data you have saved in the FOMA terminal or other recording media. DoCoMo shall have no liability for any change or loss of the data.
- Note that data you created or data you retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your FOMA terminal may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Under some circumstances, DoCoMo may replace your FOMA terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it.
  Only when the FOMA terminal is replaced, the images/melodies for incoming calls that you downloaded to your FOMA terminal and user-defined data are transferred to a new terminal. (However, depending on the data and seriousness of the trouble, data cannot be transferred to a new terminal.)
  ※ Depending on the volume of data saved in the FOMA terminal, it may take time or it may not be possible to transfer data to a new terminal.

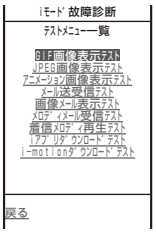
# i モード故障診断 (i-mode Trouble Diagnosis) Site

This website allows you to check by yourself whether some operations, such as sending/receiving mail and downloading images and melodies, are performed normally on your FOMA terminal.

Top page
(Only in Japanese)




List of test menus page
(Only in Japanese)




●Access to the “ i モード故障診断” (i-mode trouble diagnosis) site

i-mode site : [i Menu] → [お知らせ] (Information) → [サービス・機能] (Service/Function) → [ i モード] (i-mode) → [ i モード故障診断] (i-mode trouble diagnosis)

- No packet communication charge is required for the i-mode trouble diagnosis site.
  ※ Packet communication charge is required from abroad.
- Available test items vary depending on the model of the FOMA terminal and may be subject to change.
- When you check your mobile phone for normal operation on each test item, carefully read the precautions described in the website before starting the diagnosis.
- When you access the i-mode trouble diagnosis site and perform a mail sending test, your FOMA terminal-specific information (such as model name and mail address) is automatically sent to the server (server for the i-mode trouble diagnosis). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your FOMA terminal for any purposes other than for the i-mode trouble diagnosis.
- If your mobile phone is diagnosed as having some troubles, call the “Contact for Repairs” on the backcover of this manual for remedial action.

# Updating the Software <Software update>

## About Updating the Software

This function allows you to check if the software update is necessary by connecting to the network for the FOMA terminal and if necessary, download a part of the software using packet communication to update the software.

※ No packet communication charge is required for updating software.

If the software update is necessary, we inform of it on DoCoMo’s home page and in “お知らせ” (Information) accessible from i Menu.

You can use one of the three update types: “Auto-update”, “Now update”, “Reserve” to update the software.

| | |
|---|---|
| Auto-update | Download new software automatically and rewrite at the previously set time. |
| Now update | Update the software immediately at any time you want. |
| Reserve | Reserve a date/time you want to update the software. The software update starts automatically at the reserved date and time. |

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating the software. The software update may fail if you do so.
- The software update can be made with data, such as Phonebook entries, images recorded by the camera and downloaded data, remaining in the FOMA terminal. However, note that the safety of the data may not be assured depending on the conditions of your FOMA terminal (e.g. malfunction, damage and exposure to water). It is recommended to take a backup copy of important data (some data such as downloaded data may be protected from backup copy).

## Before Using the Function

- You can update the software even if the Host selection is set to other than [i-mode(UIM)].
- Before updating the software, be sure to fully charge the battery pack of the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot update the software in the following cases:
  - When the date and time of the FOMA terminal are not set
  - During a call
  - When "圏外" is displayed
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - When the Lock key is set (Auto-update and Reserve are available)
  - When the battery level is low
  - When the UIM is not inserted
  - When another function is being used
  - When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC
- It may take time to update (download and rewrite) the software in some cases.
- The Alarm and Schedule alarm do not operate while updating the software.
- You cannot place or receive a call, and use various communication functions and other functions while updating the software. (You can receive a voice call while downloading the software.)
- The FOMA terminal uses SSL communication with the DoCoMo server to update the software. Before starting update, set the SSL list to [Valid] (Default: [Valid]) (P.198).
- It is recommended to update the software under strong radio wave condition with 3-antenna marks displayed and not to move the FOMA terminal while updating the software.

  ※When the weakening of the radio wave occurs while downloading the software or the download is interrupted for any reason, perform the software update again in a location of good radio wave condition.
- If no new update is available, the message "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before" appears when you check the necessity of the update.
- After updating the software, icons that notify you about mail/messages stored at the i-mode center disappears. When the Recv option setting is [ON], the screen notifying you of new mail may not be displayed after completion of the update if there is new mail while updating the software.
- When you update the software, your FOMA terminal-specific information (such as model and manufacturer's serial number) is automatically sent to the server (server for updating the software under DoCoMo's supervision). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your mobile phone for any purposes other than to update the software.
- When the software update fails, the message "Rewrite failed" appears and no further operation is possible. In this case, please bring the FOMA terminal to the nearest DoCoMo repair handling service counter.
- You cannot use the software update overseas.



Continued

## Updating the Software Automatically (Auto-update)

Download new software automatically and rewrite old one with it at the previously set time.
When the status is changed to be ready to rewrite, "" appears. After you check the time of rewriting, you can change the time or select whether to rewrite right away.

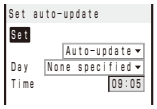
**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [SW Update] and press [■].**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press [■] (OK).**

- The Security code is masked by "✱✱✱✱".
- The Security code is set to "0000" at the time of purchase.

**3 Select [Set auto-update] and press [■].**




**4 Set whether to update the software automatically at [Set].**

[Auto-update] : Update the software automatically.
[Only notice] : The notification icon "" (Update notification) appears in the stand-by display when the software update is necessary.
[Disable] : Do not update the software automatically.

**5 Set a day of the week to perform the software update at [Day].**

Select from [Mon to Sun] and [None specified].

**6 Set a time to start the software update at [Time].**

Enter a time in 24-hour format.

**7 Press [i] (Complete).**

The Set auto-update is set.

When the Set auto-update is set to [Disable]

Select [Yes].

## After Receiving the Software Update Information




When the Set auto-update is set to [Auto-update], the notification icon "" (Update schedule) appears in the stand-by display.

To check the date and time of the software update

Press [■] (Link) in the stand-by display and select "". To change the date and time of the update, select [Change]. To start the update, select [Now rewrite].




When the Set auto-update is set to [Only notice], the notification icon "" (Update notification) appears in the stand-by display.

To activate the software update

Press ■ (Link) in the stand-by display, select "", and select [Yes].

● The notification icon of the SW Update appears only when DoCoMo notifies software update.

## Activating the Software Update

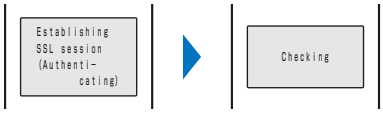
**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [SW Update] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

- The Security code is masked by "✱✱✱✱".
- The Security code is set to "0000" at the time of purchase.

**3 Select [Update] and press ■.**




The FOMA terminal starts SSL communication to check if the software update is necessary.

**4 If necessary, select the timing to start update and press ■.**




[Now update] : Start updating the software. The software update may not be completed successfully if the server is busy.

[Reserve] : Reserve a date/time to start the software update.

[Cancel] : Do not start updating the software.

When the message informing there is no need to update the software appears

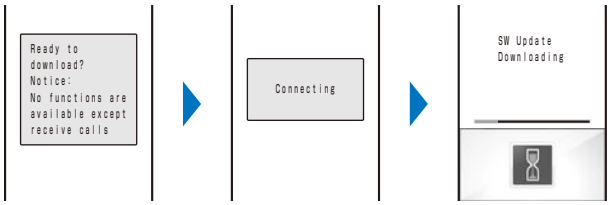
You do not need to update the software. Continue to use the FOMA terminal without updating.

● When the server is busy, the screen to the right appears. To reserve, select [Reserve] and set a date/time for the update.



## Updating the Software Immediately (Now update)

**1 From the screen for selecting the update type, select [Now update] and press [■].**




After a while, the software download starts.

- When downloading starts, step 2 is performed automatically (no need to operate).

To cancel the download

Press [✉] (Cancel) while downloading.

- If you stop the download before it is completed, the data downloaded up until this point is deleted.

**2 After the download is completed, press [■] (OK).**




The software rewriting starts and the incoming indicator lights. After rewriting is completed, the FOMA terminal is restarted automatically.

- While the software is being rewritten, all key operations are disabled. You even cannot stop the update operation.

● When the FOMA terminal is restarted, "🔄" (Update complete) appears in the stand-by display. If there is any information that you must confirm, "🔄" (Check for update) appears. The icon and message disappear after you check the notification information by selecting the icon.

## Reserving a Date/Time for the Software Update (Reserve)

If downloading takes too long or the server is congested, you can connect to the server and preset a date/time to start the software update.

Example: Reserving the software update on February 13 (Wed) 1:05 a.m.

**1 From the screen for selecting the update type, select [Reserve] and press [■].**




The FOMA terminal connects to the server and displays a list of reservation choices.

- When reserving the software update, the time set on the server is displayed.

To select another date/time

Press [i] (Others) and select the preferred date, time slot, and time. You can confirm vacant time slot available for reservation in the Preferred- time slot display as follows:

"○: Available", "△: Almost full", or "×: Full".

To cancel the reservation operation

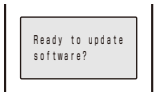
Press [✉] (Cancel).

**2 Select the date/time to be reserved → [Yes] and press ■.**




The FOMA terminal connects to the server and completes the reservation.

## When the Reserved Time Comes




The screen to the left appears. After about five seconds, the software update starts automatically and the incoming indicator flashes.

- Before the reserved time comes, turn the FOMA terminal to the stand-by display and place it in a location of good radio wave condition.

- The software update may not start if another function is being used when the reserved time comes.
- When the Alarm/Schedule alarm is set to start at the same time as the reserved time, the software update has priority and the alarm may not sound.
- If you execute the Reset all data&set or leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time after you complete the reservation, the date and time is reset, and the software update does not start even if the reserved time comes. Perform the reservation again.

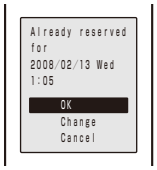
## Confirming the Reservation

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [SW Update] and press ■.**

The Security code screen appears.

**2 Enter the Security code and press ■ (OK).**

**3 Select [Update] and press ■.**




If the software update is already reserved, the reserved information appears.

To change the reservation

Select [Change]. The FOMA terminal connects to the server and you can select another date/time.

To cancel the reservation

Select [Cancel] → [Yes]. The FOMA terminal connects to the server and cancels the reservation.

# Protecting Your Mobile Phone from Harmful Data <Scan function>

At first, update the pattern definitions to get the latest definitions.

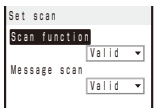
You can detect information related to the data and programs obtained into the FOMA terminal from an external source, such as data downloaded from a site or i-mode mail, and delete data or end the start-up of application that can cause a trouble.

- Use the pattern definitions for checking. Since the pattern definitions are upgraded every time a new problem is discovered, be sure to update the definitions (P.463).
- The scanning function provides explicit protection against intrusive data that causes mobile phone trouble while you are viewing a website or receiving mail. Note that if the pattern definitions corresponding to each trouble are not downloaded to the mobile phone, or if there are no pattern definitions corresponding to each trouble, this function cannot prevent the trouble occurrences.
- The contents of the pattern definitions vary depending on the model of your mobile phone. Note that the distribution of pattern definitions for models released more than three years ago may be discontinued at our company's discretion.

## Setting the Scanning Function

You can set whether to automatically check data and programs when they are executed.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Set scan] and press ■.**




[Scan function] : Set whether to enable the scanning function.

[Message scan] : Set whether to enable the scanning function for SMS when the Scan function is set to [Valid].

**2 Select [Valid] at [Scan function].**

[Valid] : Execute the scanning function. If data that can cause a trouble is detected, a warning is displayed in five levels.

[Invalid] : Do not execute the scanning function.

When you change the setting

Select [Yes].

**3 Select [Valid] at [Message scan].**

[Valid] : Execute the scanning function for the SMS. If a phone number or URL is included in the mail main body, the message appears.

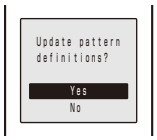
[Invalid] : Do not execute the scanning function for the SMS.

When you change the setting

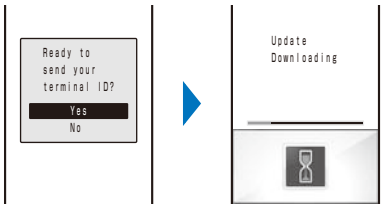
Select [Yes].

## Updating the Pattern Definitions

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Update] and press ■.**




**2 Select [Yes] → [Yes] and press ■.**




When the pattern definitions are the latest available

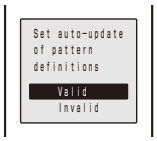
There is no need to update the pattern definitions. Use them as is.

- When you update the pattern definitions, your FOMA terminal-specific information (such as model and manufacturer's serial number) is automatically sent to the server (server for the scanning function under DoCoMo's supervision). DoCoMo will not use the information sent from your mobile phone for any purposes other than the scanning function.
- You cannot update the pattern definitions in the following cases:
  - When the date/time is not set
  - During a call
  - While the Lock all is set
  - While the Lock key is set
  - When another function is being used
  - When the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC
  - When the international roaming service is used
  - When "圏外" is displayed
  - While the Self mode is set
  - While the Omakase Lock is set
  - When the UIM is not inserted
- If you cancel the downloading operation before it is completed, the data downloaded until this point is deleted.

## Setting Whether Pattern Definitions Are Automatically Updated

You can set whether to update the pattern definitions automatically.

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Set auto-update] and press ■.**




[Valid] : Update the pattern definitions automatically.

[Invalid] : Do not update the pattern definitions automatically.

**2 Select [Valid] → [Yes] → [Yes] and press ■.**

The Set auto-update is set.



Continued

- If the Set auto-update is set to [Valid], "" (Update completed) appears in the stand-by display when the pattern definitions auto-update is completed. If the pattern definitions were not auto-updated successfully, "" (Update definitions) appears. Confirm the information by selecting the icon to clear the notification.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal without a battery pack or with a fully expended battery pack for a long period of time, the date and time is reset, and the Auto-update may not operate correctly.

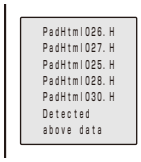
## About the Scanning Result Indication

If data that can cause a trouble is detected, the warning display appears.

■Scanning result indication

| Warning level 0 | Warning level 1 | Warning level 2 | Warning level 3 | Warning level 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |  |  |
| The operation is continued. | Confirms whether you want to stop the operation. | Stops the operation. | Confirms whether you want to stop the operation and delete the target data. | Stops the operation and deletes the target data. |

■Display of detected problem factors

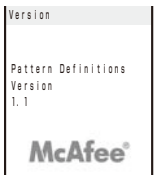



When you press [i] (Detail) in the warning display, the title of the problem factor appears.

- If six or more problem factors are detected, the titles of the sixth and later problem factors are omitted.

## Displaying the Pattern Definition Version

**1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Scan function] → [Version] and press [■].**



# Specifications

■FOMA terminal

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Product name | | | FOMA SO906i |
| Dimensions | | | 103.5×49×18 mm (H×W×D) (when folded) |
| Weight | | | About 130 g (with battery pack attached) |
| Continuous stand-by time | Network | 3G/GSM setting | |
| | FOMA/ 3G | 3G | Moving state: About 380 hours |
| | | Auto | Moving state: About 360 hours<br>Stationary state: About 520 hours |
| | GSM | Auto | Stationary state: About 290 hours |
| Continuous call time | Network | 3G/GSM setting | |
| | FOMA/ 3G | 3G | Voice call: About 220 minutes<br>Videophone call: About 120 minutes |
| | | Auto | |
| | GSM | Auto | Voice call: About 230 minutes |
| Charging time | | | AC adapter: About 140 minutes |
| | | | DC adapter: About 140 minutes |
| LCD | Type | | Display: TFT 16,770,000 colors |
| | Size | | Display: About 3.0 inches |
| | Number of pixels | | Display: 414,720 pixels (864 dots×480 dots) |
| Image pickup device | Type | | In-camera: CMOS |
| | | | Out-camera: CMOS |
| | Size | | In-camera: 1/10 inches |
| | | | Out-camera: 1/4 inches |
| | Valid pixels | | In-camera: About 330,000 pixels |
| | | | Out-camera: About 3,200,000 pixels |
| Camera | Film valid pixels | | In-camera: About 310,000 pixels |
| | | | Out-camera: About 3,150,000 pixels |
| | Zoom (Digital) | | In-camera: Zoom is unavailable. |
| | | | Out-camera: Maximum magnification about ×16.0 |
| Storage | Recordable number of still images | | About 1,500 (on the Data Box)※1 |
| | Recordable number of continuous still images | | 4 |
| | File format of still images | | JPEG |
| | Recordable time of movies | | On the Data Box: About 434 seconds※2<br>On the microSD memory card (64MB): About 60 minutes※3 |
| | File format of movies | | MP4 |
| Music playback | Continuous playback time | | i-motion: About 420 minutes<br>Chaku-Uta Full®: About 780 minutes※4<br>WMA: About 840 minutes※4<br>Music&Video Channel: About 1,140 minutes (sound)※4, about 330 minutes (movie) |
| Memory capacity | Chaku-Uta®/ Chaku-Uta Full® | | About 300.6MB |

※1 Image size: [QCIF(176×144 dots)] Image quality: [Standard] File size: 19K bytes

※2 It is the maximum recording time per one movie under the following conditions:
Image size: [sQCIF(128×96 dots)] Shoot mode: [Image+Sound]
Image quality: [Standard] File size restriction: Attach(L)



Continued

※3 It is the maximum recording time per one movie under the following conditions:
Image size: [sQCIF(128×96 dots)] Shoot mode: [Image+Sound]
Image quality: [Standard] File size: No limit

※4 Playing back music in the background is supported.

■Battery pack

| | |
|---|---|
| Product name | Battery Pack SO02 |
| Type of battery | Lithium Ion Battery |
| Nominal voltage | DC 3.7V |
| Nominal amount | 870mAh |

## Number of Saved and Protected Data Items

| Type | | Number of saved data items | Number of protected data items |
|---|---|---|---|
| Phonebook※1 | | Up to 1,000 | — |
| Schedule | | Up to 300 | — |
| Text memo | | Up to 10 | — |
| Mail (Total number of i-mode mail and SMS) | Received mail※2 | Up to 1,000 | Up to 500 |
| | Sent mail※2 | Up to 500 | Up to 250 |
| | Saved draft mail※2 | Up to 50 | — |
| | Area Mail※2 | Up to 30 | — |
| | Template※3 | Up to 50 | — |
| Message | Message R | Up to 20 | Up to 20 |
| | Message F | Up to 20 | Up to 20 |
| Bookmark | i-mode | Up to 200 | — |
| | Full Browser | Up to 200 | — |
| Screen memo※4 | | Up to 100 | Up to 50 |
| i-αppli※2※3 | | Up to 100 (including up to 5 i-αppli with mail software) | — |
| Image※2※5 | | Up to 1,500 | — |
| Music&Video Channel (Delivered program)※2 | | Up to 2 | — |
| Music&Video Channel (Re-saved program)※2 | | Up to 10 | — |
| Movie/i-motion※2※6 | | Up to 150 | — |
| Melody※2※6 | | Up to 200 | — |
| Chara-den※2※6 | | Up to 50 | — |
| PDF data※2※3 | | Up to 50 | — |
| Kisekae Tool※2※6 | | Up to 50 | — |
| ToruCa card | | Up to 100 | — |
| easy BlogUp service information file | | Up to 22 | — |

※1 You can save up to 50 entries in the UIM.

※2 The actual number of data items that can be saved may decrease depending on the data to be saved.

※3 Includes the preinstalled data.

※4 The actual number of data items that can be saved or protected may decrease depending on the data.

※5 Includes the preinstalled Deco-mail pictographs and the images saved in the [スーパーモンキーボール] folder at the time of purchase.

※6 Does not include the preinstalled data.

# About the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones, etc.

★ Mobile Phone GSM/GPRS 900/1800/1900&UMTS JP/EU/US

## SAR Certification Information

This model phone FOMA SO906i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.346 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For more information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO):
http://www.who.int/peh-emf/

ICNIRP: http://www.icnirp.de/

MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/

Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.:
http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/product/SAR/ (Japanese only)

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

** The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

## Radio Wave Exposure and Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Information

### United States & Canada

THIS PHONE MODEL HAS BEEN CERTIFIED IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE GOVERNMENT'S REQUIREMENTS FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIO WAVES.

The SO906i mobile phones have been designed to comply with applicable safety requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your wireless phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed to not exceed the limits* of exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by governmental authorities. These limits establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by international scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a safety margin designed to assure the safety of all individuals, regardless of age and health.



Continued

The radio wave exposure guidelines employ a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). Tests for SAR are conducted using standardized methods with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all used frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phone models, they are all designed to meet the relevant guidelines for exposure to radio waves. For more information on SAR, please refer to the safe and efficient use chapter in the User Guide.

The highest SAR value as reported to the authorities for this phone model when tested for use by the ear is 0.44 W/kg*, and when worn on the body is 0.50 W/kg* for speech and 0.49 W/kg* for data calls. Body worn measurements are made while the phone is in use and worn on the body with a Sony Ericsson accessory supplied with or designated for use with this phone. It is therefore recommended that only Ericsson and Sony Ericsson original accessories be used in conjunction with Sony Ericsson phones.

**Before a phone model is available for sale to the public in the US, it must be tested and certified by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) that it does not exceed the limit established by the government-adopted requirement for safe exposure*. The tests are performed in positions and locations (i.e., by the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this phone model with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones, all mobile phones granted an FCC equipment authorization meet the government requirement for safe exposure. SAR information on this phone model is on file at the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on FCC ID PY7A3724011. Additional information on SAR can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

* *In the United States and Canada, the SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 1.6 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over one gram of tissue. The standard incorporates a margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.*

** *This paragraph is only applicable to authorities and customers in the United States.*

## Europe

This mobile phone model SO906i has been designed to comply with applicable safety requirements for exposure to radio waves. These requirements are based on scientific guidelines that include safety margins designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The radio wave exposure guidelines employ a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. Tests for SAR are conducted using standardized methods with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all used frequency bands.

While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phone models, they are all designed to meet the relevant guidelines for exposure to radio waves.

For more information on SAR, please refer to the safety chapter in the User's Guide.

SAR data information for residents in countries that have adopted the SAR limit recommended by the International Commission of Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is 2 W/kg averaged over ten (10) gram of tissue (for example European Union, Japan, Brazil and New Zealand):

The highest SAR value for this model phone tested by Sony Ericsson for use at the ear is 0.27 W/kg (10g).

## Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure and SAR

Your mobile phone is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver.
When it is turned on, it emits low levels of radio frequency energy (also known as radio waves or radio frequency fields).

Governments around the world have adopted comprehensive international safety guidelines, developed by scientific organizations, e.g. ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) and IEEE (The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers Inc.), through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. These guidelines establish permitted levels of radio wave exposure for the general population. The levels include a safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health, and to account for any variations in measurements.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) is the unit of measurement for the amount of radio frequency energy absorbed by the body when using a mobile phone. The SAR value is determined at the highest certified power level in laboratory conditions, but the actual SAR level of the mobile phone while operating can be well below this value. This is because the mobile phone is designed to use the minimum power required to reach the network.

Variations in SAR below the radio frequency exposure guidelines do not mean that there are variations in safety. While there may be differences in SAR levels among mobile phones, all Sony Ericsson mobile phone models are designed to meet radio frequency exposure guidelines.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed in positions and locations (that is, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets FCC RF exposure guidelines when the handset is positioned a minimum of 15 mm from the body without any metal parts in the vicinity of the phone or when used with the original Sony Ericsson body worn accessory intended for this phone. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines.

SAR information for this mobile phone model is included with the material that comes with this mobile phone. This information can also be found, together with more information on radio frequency exposure and SAR, on:
www.sonyericsson.com

## Guidelines for Safe and Efficient Use

Please read this information before using your mobile phone. 

These instructions are intended for your safety. Please follow these guidelines. If the product has been subject to any of the conditions listed below or you have any doubt as to its proper function make sure you have the product checked by a certified service partner before charging or using it. Failure to do so might entail a risk of product malfunction or even a potential hazard to your health.

Recommendations for safe use of product (mobile phone, battery, charger and other accessories)

- ☐ Always treat your product with care and keep it in a clean and dust-free place.
- ☐ **Warning!** May explode if disposed of in fire.
- ☐ Do not expose your product to liquid or moisture or humidity.
- ☐ Do not expose your product to extremely high or low temperatures. Do not expose the battery to temperatures above +35°C (+95°F).
- ☐ Do not expose your product to open flames or lit tobacco products. 
- ☐ Do not drop, throw or try to bend your product.
- ☐ Do not paint your product.
- ☐ Do not attempt to disassemble or modify your product. 
- ☐ Do not close your product with an object inserted between keypad and display if you have a clamshell phone; this may damage your product.
- ☐ Do not use your product near medical equipment without requesting permission from your treating physician or authorized medical staff.
- ☐ Do not use your product when in, or around aircraft, or areas showing the sign “turn off two-way radio”.
- ☐ Do not use your product in an area where a potentially explosive atmosphere exists.
- ☐ Do not place your product or install wireless equipment in the area above an air bag in your car.
- ☐ **Caution:** Cracked or broken displays may create sharp edges or splinters that could be harmful upon contact.

CHILDREN 

KEEP OUT OF CHILDRENS REACH. DO NOT ALLOW CHILDREN TO PLAY WITH YOUR MOBILE PHONE OR ITS ACCESSORIES. THEY COULD HURT THEMSELVES OR OTHERS, OR COULD ACCIDENTALLY DAMAGE THE MOBILE PHONE OR ACCESSORY. YOUR MOBILE PHONE OR ITS ACCESSORY MAY CONTAIN SMALL PARTS THAT COULD BECOME DETACHED AND CREATE A CHOKING HAZARD.

### Power supply (Charger)

Connect the AC power adapter only to designated power sources as marked on the product. Make sure the cord is positioned so that it will not be subjected to damage or stress. To reduce risk of electric shock, unplug the unit from any power source before attempting to clean it. The AC power adapter must not be used outdoors or in damp areas. Never alter the cord or plug.

### Battery

We recommend that you fully charge the battery before you use your mobile phone for the first time. A new battery or one that has not been used for a long time could have reduced capacity the first few times it is used. The battery should only be charged in temperatures between +5°C (+41°F) and +35°C (+95°F).

Use only original batteries intended for use with your mobile phone. Using other batteries and chargers could be dangerous.

Talk and standby times depend on several different conditions such as signal strength, operating temperature, application usage patterns, features selected and voice or data transmissions when the mobile phone is being used.

Turn off your mobile phone before removing the battery. Do not put the battery into your mouth. Battery electrolytes may be toxic if swallowed. Do not let the metal contacts on the battery touch another metal object. Doing this could short-circuit and damage the battery. Use the battery for the intended purpose only.

### Personal medical devices

Mobile phones may affect the operation of pacemakers and other implanted equipment. Please avoid placing the mobile phone over the pacemaker, e.g. in your breast pocket. When using the mobile phone, use it at the ear on the opposite side of the body to the pacemaker. If a minimum distance of 22 cm (8.7 inches) is kept between the mobile phone and the pacemaker, the risk of interference is limited. If you have any reason to suspect that interference is taking place, immediately turn off your mobile phone. Contact your medical doctor for more information.

For other medical devices, please consult your physician and the manufacturer of the device.

### Driving

Please check if local laws and regulations restrict the use of mobile phones while driving or require drivers to use handsfree solutions.

For the use of mobile phones in the vehicle, please follow instructions from vehicle manufacturers.

Always pay full attention to driving and pull off the road and park before making or answering a call if driving conditions so require.



Continued

### Emergency calls

Mobile phones operate using radio signals, which cannot guarantee connection in all conditions. You should therefore never rely solely upon any mobile phone for essential communications (e.g. medical emergencies).

Emergency calls may not be possible in all areas, on all cellular networks, or when certain network services and/or mobile phone features are in use. Check with your local service provider.

### Efficient use

Hold your mobile phone as you would any other phone. Do not cover the hinge area when the phone is in use, as this affects call quality and may cause the phone to operate at a higher power level than needed, thus shortening talk and standby times.

### Disposal of old electrical and electronic equipment 

This symbol indicates that all electrical and electronic equipment included shall not be treated as household waste. Instead it shall be left at the appropriate collection point for recycling of electrical and electronic equipment. By ensuring this product is disposed of correctly, you will help prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health, which could otherwise be caused by inappropriate waste handling of this product. The recycling of materials will help to conserve natural resources. For more detailed information about recycling this product, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the shop where you purchased the product.

### Disposing of the battery 

Please check local regulations for disposal of batteries or call your local Sony Ericsson Call Center for information.

The battery should never be placed in municipal waste. Use a battery disposal facility if available.

### Memory Card

If your product comes complete with a removable memory card, it is generally compatible with the handset purchased but may not be compatible with other devices or the capabilities of their memory cards. Check other devices for compatibility before purchase or use. If your product is equipped with a memory card reader, check memory card compatibility before purchase or use.

Memory cards are generally formatted prior to shipping. To reformat the memory card, use a compatible device. Do not use the standard operating system format when formatting the memory card on a PC. For details, refer to the operating instructions of the device or contact customer support.

WARNING:

If your device requires an adapter for insertion into the handset or another device, do not insert the card directly without the required adapter.

Precautions on Memory Card Use

- ☐ Do not expose the memory card to moisture.
- ☐ Do not touch terminal connections with your hand or any metal object.
- ☐ Do not strike, bend, or drop the memory card.
- ☐ Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the memory card.
- ☐ Do not use or store the memory card in humid or corrosive locations or in excessive heat such as a closed car in summer, in direct sunlight or near a heater, etc.
- ☐ Do not press or bend the end of the memory card adapter with excessive force.
- ☐ Do not let dirt, dust, or foreign objects get into the insert port of any memory card adapter.
- ☐ Check you have inserted the memory card correctly.
- ☐ Insert the memory card as far as it will go into any memory card adapter needed. The memory card may not operate properly unless fully inserted.
- ☐ We recommend that you make a backup copy of important data. We are not responsible for any loss or damage to content you store on the memory card.
- ☐ Recorded data may be damaged or lost when you remove the memory card or memory card adapter, turn off the power while formatting, reading or writing data, or use the memory card in locations subject to static electricity or high electrical field emissions.

Protection of personal information

To safeguard your privacy and prevent information being accessible to a third party, you should erase all personal data before selling or disposing of the product. To delete personal data, perform a master reset, remove the memory card or format the media memory. DELETION OF MATERIAL FROM THE PHONE AND MEDIA MEMORIES DOES NOT ENSURE THAT SAID INFORMATION CANNOT BE RECOVERED BY A SUBSEQUENT USER. DoCoMo/SONY ERICSSON DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST A SUBSEQUENT USER OF THE DEVICE ACCESSING YOUR INFORMATION AND DOES NOT ASSUME ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR SUBSEQUENT DISCLOSURE OF SAID INFORMATION EVEN IF A MASTER RESET AND A MEDIA MEMORY FORMAT HAS BEEN PERFORMED. If you are concerned about such potential disclosure retain your device or secure its permanent destruction.

Accessories

DoCoMo recommends use of DoCoMo's original accessories for safe and efficient use of its products. Use of third-party accessories may decrease performance or pose a risk to your health or safety.

LOUDNESS WARNING:

Please adjust the audio volume cautiously when using third-party audio accessories to avoid volume levels that may be harmful to your hearing. DoCoMo does not test use of third-party audio accessories with this mobile phone. DoCoMo recommends using only DoCoMo's original audio accessories.

## FCC Statement for the US:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions :

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any change or modification not expressly approved by Sony Ericsson may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

-- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

-- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

-- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

-- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## Industry Canada Statement:

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## Declaration of Conformity for SO906i

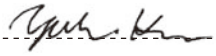
We, Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications AB of Nya Vattentornet SE-221 88 Lund, Sweden declare under our sole responsibility that our product

Sony Ericsson type AAD-3724011-BV

and in combination with FOMA global AC charger 01(MODEL:MAS-BH0008-A 002), to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the appropriate standards EN 301 511:V9.0.2, EN 301 908-1:V2.2.1, EN 301 908-2:V2.2.1, EN 301 489-24:V1.3.1, EN 301 489-7:V1.3.1, EN 301 489-3:V1.4.1, EN 302 291-2:V1.1.1, and EN 60950-1:2006, following the provisions of, Radio Equipment and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC

Lund, March 2008

CE0682

Signature 

Yukio Kubota, Head of Product Business Unit JAPAN

われわれはR&TTE指令の要求事項を満たしています（1999/5/EC）
We fulfill the requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC)

## Export Controls and Regulations

This product and its accessories may be covered and controlled by Japan's export control regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and related laws and regulations). If you wish to export this product and/or its accessories, you must complete the necessary procedures at your own responsibility and cost. Detailed information on the procedure, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

# Index/Quick Manual

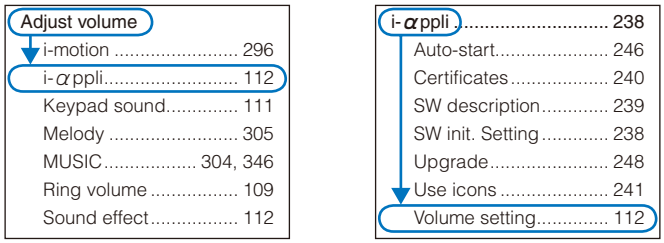
Index ..... 478
Quick Manual ..... 490

# Index

## How to Look up in the Index

The index can be used as an “alphabetical table of contents”. Under each headword, terms relevant to it are listed. Not only terms representing function names actually displayed on the FOMA terminal, but also those that are a brief summary about the functions described in this manual.

Example: Adjusting the volume of i-αppli software





### A

AC adapter ..... 41
Accept/Reject call..... 143
Acquire image..... 194
Additional service ..... 402
Adjust light..... 121
Adjust volume
GPS..... 113
i-motion ..... 296
i-αppli..... 112
Keypad sound..... 111
Melody ..... 305
MUSIC..... 304, 346
Music&Video Channel... 340
Ring volume ..... 109
Sound effect..... 112
Volume ..... 112
After sales services ..... 454
Alarm
Alarm (clock)..... 360
Cost limit notice..... 371
Schedule alarm..... 365
Alarm (clock)..... 360
All font size setting..... 127
Animation..... 120
Antenna ..... 27
Any key ans ..... 67
Application..... 373
Area Mail ..... 233
Receive ..... 233
Area Mail setting..... 233, 234
Beep setting..... 234
Beep time..... 234
Receive entry ..... 234
Receive setting ..... 233
Arrival Call Act..... 396
Auto answer setting ..... 375
Auto key lock/rel ..... 141
Auto reset ..... 370
Auto setting..... 121
AV Phone To function ..... 196
Available services..... 438

### B

Backlight..... 121
Backlight always on ..... 121
Bar code reader..... 183
Add bookmark ..... 184
Add to phonebook ..... 184
Saved data..... 184
Battery level..... 42
Battery pack..... 39
Bookmark ..... 191, 285
Add bookmark ..... 191
Attach to mail ..... 212
Bookmark..... 192
Delete..... 193
Display ..... 192
Edit..... 286
Edit folder..... 192
iC transmission..... 332
Move ..... 192
Send Ir data ..... 329

### C

Cache ..... 188
Calculator ..... 372
Calendar..... 118, 366
Calendar/Clock..... 118
Call condition ..... 60
Call display ..... 121
Call Forwarding Service ... 393

Call method ..... 60
Call Rejection ..... 65
Call Waiting Service..... 393
Call with ID/Call without ID ..... 60
Caller ID Display Request Service ..... 395
Camera..... 150
Adjust EV..... 162
Adjust zoom ..... 161
Attach to mail ..... 156, 170
Auto Focus..... 173
Auto orientation..... 179
Auto save ..... 178
Auto timer..... 173
Backlight always on ..... 121
Bar code reader..... 183
BestPic™..... 167
Common replay mode... 175
Continuous mode..... 168
Deco-Snap ..... 164
Digital Zooming..... 179
Direct key ..... 158
easy BlogUp ..... 358
Estimated number of recordable images... 151
Estimated recording time of movie ..... 152, 153
Face detection ..... 162
File size ..... 181
Flash..... 174
Graphical menu ..... 157
Grid Line ..... 174
High sensitivity..... 166
Icons ..... 154
Image quality ..... 178
Image stabilize..... 180
Mini-Photo creator..... 178
Movie shoot..... 170
Multi focus..... 172
Panorama..... 165
Photo light ..... 174
Photometry..... 176
Picture effect ..... 176
Picture Motion Browser... 440
Reset all ..... 177
Reset file No..... 181
Select save to..... 177
Select scene ..... 160
Select size..... 159
Set attach loc. info ..... 171
Shoot by photo..... 155
Shoot mode..... 163, 182
Shoot with frame ..... 169
Shutter sound..... 180
Smile shutter ..... 163
Switch camera ..... 159
Viewer ..... 353
White balance ..... 175
Camera in key locking ..... 117
Certificates ..... 187, 198, 199, 240, 284
Chaku-moji ..... 58
Create message..... 58
Place a call..... 59
Set Message display..... 58
Chaku-Uta Full®..... 344
Change code ..... 132
Characters Assigned to Keys ..... 430
Chara-den..... 302
Action input mode..... 75
Action list..... 75, 302
Call Chara-den..... 75, 303
Change action..... 75, 303
Delete..... 321
Detail..... 322
DTMF send mode ..... 75
Set Chara-den..... 303
Set sub image..... 303
Sort..... 321
Charge..... 40
Backlight always on ..... 121
Charge sound ..... 111
Charging time ..... 40
Check new message ..... 216, 231
Animation ..... 120
i-mode inquiry set ..... 227
Check new SMS ..... 236
Animation ..... 120
Check service area..... 417
Chg. to videophone..... 54
Chg. to voice call ..... 54
Chg.MENU ..... 35
Color theme setting ..... 124
Common phrases ..... 385
Edit..... 386
List of common phrases... 434
Communication mode..... 314
Compose message..... 207
Cost limit notice ..... 370
Country code ..... 60
Cursor..... 28

## D

Data Box..... 317
Chara-den..... 302
i-motion ..... 295
Kisekae Tool..... 305
Melody ..... 304
MUSIC..... 303
Music&Video Channel... 342
My document ..... 333
My picture ..... 290
Property..... 322
Data communication..... 404
Data security..... 142
Data Security Service ..... 105, 147
Connect to Center..... 105
Exchanging history ..... 105
Save mail..... 221
Save phonebook..... 105
Save photo..... 294
Service setting ..... 105
Date/time ..... 44
DC adapter ..... 41
Deco mail pict. ..... 386
Deco-mail ..... 208



Continued

Compose and send message ... 208
Deco. slcted txt ... 205
Decorate mail ... 211
Quick deco. Mail ... 210
Templates ... 211
Delete max cost icon ... 371
Denied no ID ... 144
Desktop holder ... 41
Dial frequency record ... 55
Dictionary
Delete ... 389
Dictionary folder ... 389
Download ... 195
Edit name ... 389
Information ... 389
Reorder ... 390
Save ... 388
Differences in UIM functions ... 38
Disp. call/rcv. No. ... 121
Display ... 30
Backlight ... 121
Guide display ... 33, 117
Icon ... 30, 154
Display sites ... 187
DoCoMo keitai datalink ... 408
Download
Chaku-Uta Full® ... 344
Chara-den ... 195
Dictionary ... 195
easy BlogUp service inforamtion file ... 195
Graphics ... 194
i-motion ... 201
i-αppli ... 238
Kisekae Tool ... 195
Melody ... 195
Music&Video Channel ... 338
PDF data ... 195
Template ... 195
ToruCa ... 195
Dual Network Service ... 395


## E


Earphone/Microphone ... 374
Earphone/Microphone with Switch ... 374
easy BlogUp ... 358
BlogUp ... 359
Browse ... 360
Save ... 358
Edit movie ... 298
Clip movie ... 299
Clip picture ... 299
Select size ... 300
Edit photo ... 292
Frame ... 292
Image effect ... 294
Image stamp ... 292
Rotate ... 294
Select size ... 294
Text stamp ... 293
Zoom&trim ... 293
Edit slide setting ... 354
Emoticons ... 433
English Guidance Service ... 395
Error messages ... 446
Export Controls and Regulations ... 475


## F


FeliCa ... 254
IC card lock ... 262
Osaifu-Keitai ... 254
Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli ... 255
FirstPass ... 199
Flash ... 189
Sound effect ... 112
FOMA card ... 36
FOMA card phonebook ... 94
FOMA terminal phonebook ... 94
Font size ... 127
Full Browser ... 280
Access setting ... 288
Bookmark ... 286
Check settings ... 288
Cookie setting ... 286
Display img ... 287
Display magnification ... 287
Display mode setting ... 287
Drag ... 284
Enter URL ... 280
Frame Page ... 283
Full scrn/normal ... 284
Function menu while viewing ... 281
Go to location ... 280
Home URL ... 286
Key Operations while viewing ... 280
PagePilot ... 284
PagePilot setting ... 287
Pointer speed setting ... 287
Referer setting ... 288
Reset settings ... 288
Script setting ... 287
Search ... 285
SSL/TLS page ... 284
Text copy ... 284
To Full Browser ... 189
Upload ... 285
URL history ... 283
Window ... 283
Window Open Guard ... 288
Full Browser setting ... 286, 287, 288
Function for restricting UIM operation ... 37
Function menu ... 35


## G


Go to location ... 191
Font size ... 127
GPS ... 264
Add location information ... 277

GPS button setting ..... 278
Host setting ..... 274
i appli ..... 265
Location history ..... 276
Location notice ..... 274
Location provision ..... 270
Location request ..... 271
Position location ..... 265
Positioning mode ..... 278
Rcv loc. info ..... 277
Reg. service client ..... 275
Service settings ..... 274
Sound/Color setting ..... 113
Use loc. info ..... 277
GPS settings
..... 113, 271, 274, 275, 278
Guide display ..... 33, 117

## H

Handling precautions ..... 19
Hands-free ..... 53, 64
Headset microphone ..... 376
Headset setting ..... 114, 375
Headset sw. to call ..... 375
Headset usage setting ..... 114
Hold
Holding ..... 68
Multiple connections ..... 393
On hold ..... 68
Holding ..... 68

## I

i Menu ..... 187
i αppli setting ... 112, 239, 246
i αppli(microSD) ..... 250
IC act. notice ..... 261
IC card ..... 254
Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli ..... 255
IC card content ..... 255
IC card lock ..... 262
iC communication ..... 331
Reception ..... 332
Transmission ..... 332
iC transfer service ..... 252
i-Channel ..... 202
Channel list ..... 202
Display ..... 202
Reset i-Channel ..... 203
Ticker ..... 203
Icon ..... 30, 154
Icon setting ..... 123
Image quality ..... 118
i-mode ..... 186
Acquire image ..... 194
Add to phonebook ..... 217
Auto detect ..... 198
Auto-display ..... 230
Backlight always on ..... 121
Bookmark ..... 191
Cache ..... 188
Change i-mode password ... 190
Compose message ..... 189
Connection timeout ..... 197
Display img ..... 198
Display sites ..... 187
Download ..... 195
Enter URL ..... 191
Font size ..... 127
Go to location ..... 191
Host selection ..... 197
i-mode arrival act ..... 90
i-mode menu ..... 186
Last accessed URL ..... 187
My Menu ..... 190
Reload ..... 188
Save backgnd img ..... 194
Screen memo ..... 193
Select host ..... 200
Sound effect ..... 112
SSL list ..... 198
SSL page ..... 187
Terminate i-mode ..... 190
To Full Browser ..... 189
URL ..... 189
URL history ..... 191
Use phone info ..... 198
Use sites ..... 188
User certificate ..... 199
Word translate ..... 189
i-mode mail ..... 206
Add receiver ..... 208
Add to phonebook ..... 217
Animation ..... 120
Attached file pref. ..... 229
Auto receive ..... 214
Check new message ... 216
Clear Recv ranking ..... 229
Clear Send ranking ..... 229
Compose and send ..... 207
Confirm title ..... 218
Deco-mail ..... 208
Delete ..... 213
Display ..... 219
Dur multi task disp ..... 229
Edit folder ..... 222
File attachment ..... 212, 218
Font size ..... 127
Forward ..... 216
iC transmission ..... 332
i-mode inquiry set ..... 227
i-mode mail form ..... 224
Incoming set ..... 108
Mail list ..... 208, 228
Mail list setting ..... 225
Mail security ..... 142
Melody auto play ..... 228
Memory status ..... 224
Move ..... 222
Protect ON/OFF ..... 223
Receive option ..... 215
Recv option setting ..... 227
Reply ..... 216
Save ..... 213
Save address ..... 217
Secret code ..... 96
Send Ir data ..... 329
Signature ..... 227
Sort ..... 225
Sort inbox ..... 226

Sort outbox..... 226
Store in Center ..... 221
Templates..... 211
i-mode menu..... 186
i-mode password ..... 131
Change ..... 190
i-mode setting..... 112, 197
i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site ..... 456
i-motion..... 200, 295
Attach to mail ..... 212
Backlight always on ..... 121
Change display..... 322
Change scr. Set..... 296
Chapter list..... 297
Continuous play ..... 296
Data security..... 142
Delete..... 321
Detail..... 322
Display quality..... 296
Display setting ..... 296
Download..... 201
Edit folder..... 319
Edit movie ..... 298
Folder info ..... 322
iC transmission..... 332
i-motion auto replay ..... 201
Move ..... 320
Play ..... 295
Playlists ..... 297
Save ..... 312
Send Ir data ..... 329
Sort..... 321
i-motion auto replay..... 201
In-call arrival act ..... 396
Incoming set ..... 108
Individual font size ..... 127
Information on using the manual and how to look up in the manual... 1
Infrared communication .... 327
Infrared remote control... 331
Receive ..... 329
Send..... 329
Send IrSS™..... 330
Initial setting..... 43
Input method ..... 384, 385, 386, 388, 389
Insufficient memory ..... 326
Intellectual Property Right ..... 22
International call ..... 61
International roaming..... 410
Int'l dial assist ..... 62
Int'l prefix ..... 60
Int'l roaming ..... 415, 416, 417, 418
i-αppli ..... 238
Auto-start..... 246
Certificates..... 240
Change display..... 249
Cng. ring tone/img. ..... 242
Delete..... 249
Download..... 238
Edit folder..... 248
i αppli history ..... 250
i αppli To ..... 241
Individual set..... 241
Move ..... 248
NW setting..... 241
Phonebook/Records .... 242
Preinstalled software.... 242
Run..... 239
Stand-by display..... 247
Stand-by NW setting .... 241
SW description..... 239
SW init. Setting..... 238
Upgrade..... 248
Use icons ..... 241
Use location info ..... 242
Volume setting..... 112
i-αppli stand-by..... 247
i-αppli To function ..... 196
i-αppli with mail ..... 238
i-mode mail form..... 224

## J

JAN code..... 183
Jog setting..... 376

## K

Key dial lock..... 139
Keypad light..... 121
Keypad sound..... 111
Kisekae menu..... 125
Kisekae setting ..... 123
Kisekae Tool ..... 124, 305
Change display..... 322
Delete..... 321
Detail..... 322
Edit folder..... 319
Folder info ..... 322
Move ..... 320
Sort..... 321
Kuten codes..... 388

## L

Last accessed URL ..... 187
Last call cost..... 369
Last call duration ..... 369
Lifetime Cal..... 373
Lifetime Calendar ..... 355
Display ..... 356
Display setting ..... 358
LTC setting ..... 357
Memory auto display.... 358
Security data display ... 358
List of default settings ..... 378, 420
List of menus ..... 420
List of reset items ..... 378, 420
Lock all ..... 139
Lock key..... 144
Keyguard release tone... 111

## M

Mail menu..... 206
Mail security..... 142
Mail setting ..... 225

Mail To function ..... 196
Manner mode ..... 115
Original manner ..... 117
Silent ..... 115
Melody ..... 304
Attach to mail ..... 212
Delete ..... 321
Detail ..... 322
Edit folder ..... 319
Folder info ..... 322
iC transmission ..... 332
Move ..... 320
Play ..... 304
Play portion ..... 305
Save ..... 312
Send Ir data ..... 329
Sort ..... 321
Melody Call ..... 115
Menu ..... 33
Menu setting ..... 123
Message
Auto-display ..... 230
Check new message ... 231
Delete ..... 232
Display ..... 231
Dur multi task disp ..... 229
i-mode inquiry set ..... 227
Incoming set ..... 108
Melody auto play ..... 228
Protect ON/OFF ..... 232
Receive ..... 230
Save attached ..... 218
Message F ..... 231
Message R ..... 231
microSD memory card ..... 306
Delete ..... 321
Display ..... 308
Folder setup ..... 309
Format ..... 313
Insert/Remove ..... 307
microSD info ..... 314
Reset file No. ..... 181
Save ..... 312
Update mng. info ..... 314
microSD mode ..... 315
Missed call ..... 126
Movie player software ..... 440
MTP mode ..... 315
Multi Number Service ..... 397
Multiaccess ..... 352
Combinations ..... 435
Multitask ..... 353
Combinations ..... 437
MUSIC ..... 303, 342
Delete ..... 321
Detail ..... 322
Edit folder ..... 319
Folder info ..... 322
Move ..... 320
Play ..... 303
MUSIC Player ..... 342
Change jackets ..... 347
Music settings ..... 349
Play ..... 345
Playable music data ..... 342
Playback restriction ..... 304
Playlist ..... 348
Reset settings ..... 350
Transfer ..... 343
Music slide show ..... 291
Music&Video Channel ..... 338
Change display ..... 322
Chapter list ..... 341
Delete ..... 321, 341
Detail ..... 322
Downloading a program ... 339
Edit folder ..... 319
Folder info ..... 322
Move program ..... 341
Play ..... 340, 342
Set program ..... 339
Sort ..... 321
My data ..... 45
My document ..... 333
Attach to mail ..... 212
Bookmark ..... 336
Capture screen ..... 336
Delete ..... 321
Detail ..... 322
Detail info disp ..... 334
Display ..... 333
Edit folder ..... 319
Folder info ..... 322
iC transmission ..... 332
i-mode bookmark ..... 336
Mark ..... 335
Move ..... 320
Save ..... 312, 334
Search ..... 335
Send Ir data ..... 329
Sort ..... 321
My Menu ..... 190
My picture ..... 290
Attach to mail ..... 212
Change display ..... 322
Data security ..... 142
Delete ..... 321
Detail ..... 322
Display quality ..... 290
Edit folder ..... 319
Edit photo ..... 292
Folder info ..... 322
iC transmission ..... 332
Move ..... 320
Save ..... 312
Send Ir data ..... 329
Send IrSS™ ..... 330
Sort ..... 321
Store in Center ..... 295
My Selection ..... 368

## N

Name ..... 121
Network search mode ..... 415
Network security code ..... 130
Network service ..... 391
Notification display ..... 32
Notify caller ID ..... 45
Nuisance Call Blocking Service ..... 394

Number of protected data items ... 466
Number of saved data items ... 466
NW Services ... 392

## O

OBEX™ communication ... 404
OFFICEED ... 402
Omakase Lock ... 136
On hold ... 68
Operator name display ... 416
Optional and related devices ... 439
Osaifu-Keitai ... 254
IC card lock ... 262
Use ... 255
Osaifu-Keitai-compatible i-αppli ... 255
Start ... 255
Oversea service ... 418
Overseas Use
Int'l roaming ... 415, 416, 417, 418
Place a call ... 414
Receive a call ... 414
Own number ... 45
Attach to mail ... 212
iC transmission ... 332
Quote my data ... 387
Secret display ... 141
Send Ir data ... 329

## P

Part names and functions ... 26
Pause (P) ... 53
PB setting ... 102
PDF data ... 333
Personal data lock ... 137
Phone To function ... 196
Phonebook ... 94
2-touch dial ... 104
Attach to mail ... 212
Copy to Main ... 317
Copy to UIM ... 316
Delete ... 103
Display ... 101
Edit ... 103
Font size ... 127
Group setting ... 100
iC transmission ... 332
Memory status ... 104
Originate a PushTalk call ... 101
Phonebook image ... 121
Place a call ... 101
Quote ... 387
Save ... 95, 98
Save/attach image ... 102
Search ... 102
Secret display ... 141
Send Ir Data ... 329
Send mail ... 101
Set image display ... 102
Which PB to use ... 102
Phonebook image ... 121
Pictographs ... 386
List of pictographs ... 432
Picture Motion Browser ... 440
PIN1 Code and PIN2 Code ... 131
Cancel PIN lock ... 133
Change PIN1 code ... 133
Change PIN2 code ... 133
PIN1 code setting ... 132
Place a call ... 51
Play music ... 303, 345
Playlist ... 297, 348
PLMN setting ... 416
Plus JOG ... 28
Power ... 43
Power saver ... 122
Pref. i αppli sound ... 113
Prefix ... 60
Prefix setting ... 61
Priority ... 111, 126, 362
Public mode (Drive mode) ... 69
Public mode (Power off) ... 70
PushTalk ... 80
Add member ... 83
Any key ans ... 67
Auto answer setting ... 89
Hands-free ... 81, 90
i-mode arrival act ... 90
Incoming set ... 108
Missed call ... 71
Originate ... 82
Originate from the phonebook ... 87, 101
P-Talk arrival act ... 90
Receive ... 84
Set ring time ... 89
Setting when folded ... 67
Slide open setting ... 67
PushTalk phonebook ... 85
Delete ... 88
Group setting ... 86
NW connection ... 89
Originate ... 87
Save ... 85
PushTalk setting ... 89
PushTalkPlus ... 89

## Q

QR code ... 179
Quality alarm ... 114
Quick Manual ... 490
Quick record message ... 74

## R

Receive a call ... 65
Receive option ... 225, 227
Received mail ... 219
Received record ... 55
Add to phonebook ... 99
Delete ... 57
Detail info ... 57

Font size ..... 127
Recnct ALM ..... 64
Record display ..... 141
Record message ..... 72
Delete ..... 75
Play ..... 74
Quick record message ... 74
Redial record ..... 55
Add to phonebook ..... 99
Delete ..... 57
Detail info ..... 57
Font size ..... 127
Reduce noise ..... 64
Reject unknown ..... 146
Remote Control ..... 397
Reset all data&set ..... 377
List of reset items ... 378, 420
Reset data ..... 389
Reset display/sound ..... 125
Reset menu log ..... 126
Reset menu screen ..... 124
Reset settings ..... 376
List of reset items ... 378, 420
Reset total ..... 370
Ring time ..... 110

## S

Safety precautions ..... 12
SAR ..... 467
Saved mail ..... 219
Scan code ..... 183
Scan function ..... 462
Set auto-update ..... 463
Set scan ..... 462
Update ..... 463
Version ..... 464
Schedule
Attach to mail ..... 212
Delete ..... 366
Display ..... 366
iC transmission ..... 332
Memory status ..... 368
Save ..... 312, 363
Schedule alarm ..... 365
Secret display ..... 141
Select date ..... 366
Send Ir data ..... 329
Set holidays ..... 367
Schedule setting ..... 365, 367
Screen memo
Delete ..... 194
Display ..... 193
Protect ON/OFF ..... 194
Save ..... 193
URL ..... 193
Secret
Own number ..... 46
Phonebook ..... 96
Schedule ..... 363
Secret code ..... 96
Secret display ..... 141
Security code ..... 130
Change ..... 132
Security scanning function (Scan function) ..... 462
Select host ..... 200
Select language ..... 128
Self mode ..... 137
Send IrSS™ ..... 330
Sent mail ..... 219
Service numbers ..... 396
Set basic tone ..... 111
Set call record ..... 141
Set rec msg ..... 73
Set ring start time ..... 145
Setting when folded ..... 67
Slide open setting ..... 67
Slide setting ..... 67, 91, 141, 354
SMS ..... 206
Animation ..... 120
Compose and send ..... 234
Copy to Main ..... 317
Copy to UIM ..... 316
Receive ..... 235
Save ..... 235
SMS setting ..... 236
Soft key ..... 117
Software update ..... 456
Now update ..... 460
Reserve ..... 460
Set auto-update ..... 458
Update ..... 459
Sound effect ..... 112
Specifications ..... 465
SSL list ..... 198
SSL site ..... 187
Standard menu ..... 420
Stand-by books ..... 118
Stand-by display ..... 117
Stand-by pictures ..... 119
Start menu setting ..... 123
Stereo&3D ..... 111
Storage info ..... 326
Sub-address ..... 63
Supplied and optional accessories ..... 24
Symbols ..... 386
List of special symbols ... 431

## T

Template ..... 211
Delete ..... 211
Text input ..... 382
Bar code reader ..... 387
Character mode ..... 382
Characters assigned to keys ..... 430
Common phrases ... 385, 434
Copy ..... 388
Cut ..... 387
Delete ..... 382
Dictionaries ..... 389
Edit common phrases ... 386
Edit prediction ..... 388
Edit user dict ..... 388
Full/Half size ..... 382
Insert ..... 382
Kuten codes ..... 388
Operation in item ..... 385

Paste ..... 387
Pictograph/symbol mode... 382
Pictographs..... 386, 432
Prediction..... 383
Quote my data ..... 387
Quote phonebook ..... 387
Reset data..... 389
Select conversion..... 384
Symbols ..... 386, 431
Undo ..... 383
User conversion..... 384
Text Memo..... 372
Copy Text Memo ..... 373
Delete..... 373
Display ..... 373
iC transmission..... 332
Save ..... 312, 372
Send Ir data ..... 329
Ticker..... 203
Timer (T)..... 54
ToruCa..... 256
Attach to mail ..... 212
Auto recognition..... 261
Delete..... 258
Display ..... 257
Duplication check ..... 261
Edit folder..... 258
IC act. notice..... 261
IC card lock..... 262
iC transmission..... 332
Move ..... 258
Obtain ..... 256
Save ..... 312
Search..... 259
Send Ir data ..... 329
Sort..... 259
Sort folder..... 260
ToruCa receive..... 259
ToruCa setting ..... 259
Total calls cost ..... 369
Total calls duration..... 369
Touch-tones..... 53
Troubleshooting ..... 444

## U

UIM..... 36
Copy to Main..... 317
Copy to UIM..... 316
Insert/Remove..... 36
PIN1/PIN2 code ..... 133
UIM phonebook ..... 94
Save ..... 98
UIM setting ..... 132
URL
Display ..... 189
History..... 191, 273
Last accessed URL..... 187
USB mode setting..... 314
User certificate ..... 199

## V

V.ph switch notice ..... 78
Vibrator..... 110
Videophone ..... 50
Animation ..... 120
Auto redial(voice)..... 77
Backlight always on ..... 121
Call Rejection..... 65
Chara-den..... 75
Chg. to voice call ..... 54
Display setting ..... 76
Hands-free ..... 53, 77
Holding..... 68
Incoming set ..... 108
Missed call..... 71
On hold ..... 68
Quick record message... 74
Select sub image ..... 51
Set call display..... 121
Set outgoing image..... 76
Setting when folded ..... 67
Slide open setting ..... 67
V.ph while packet ..... 78
Visual preference ..... 77
Videophone setting..... 76
Voice call
Animation ..... 120
Any key ans..... 67
Call Rejection..... 65
Chg. to videophone ..... 54
Hands-free ..... 53
Holding..... 68
Incoming set ..... 108
Missed call..... 71
On hold ..... 68
Quick record message... 74
Set call display..... 121
Setting when folded ..... 67
Slide open setting ..... 67
Whisper mode..... 68
Voice Mail Service ..... 392
Bar Incoming call..... 417
Roaming Guidance..... 417
Voice memo..... 74, 369
Volume..... 112
Volume setting..... 112

## W

Warranty and after sales services..... 454
Web To function ..... 196
Whisper mode ..... 68
WORLD CALL ..... 61
WORLD WING..... 38

## Symbols and Numbers

+ ..... 54
186/184..... 60
2in1..... 398
2in1 setting ..... 399
2-touch dial..... 104
3G/GSM setting..... 415

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

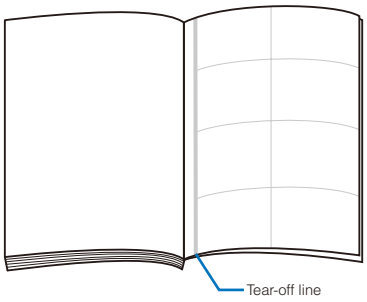
# Quick Manual

## Using the Quick Manual

To bring the Quick Manual provided with this manual, separate it at the tear-off line and fold as shown below.
You can conveniently bring the Quick Manual “Overseas Use” with you when you are overseas and using the international roaming service (WORLD WING).

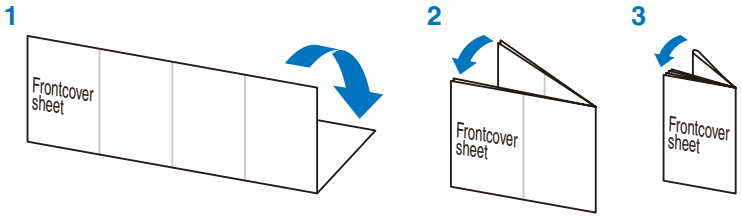
### ■Cutting the pages

Separate the pages of the Quick Manual at the tear-off line.




### ■Folding the cut pages

Fold the Quick Manual at the folding line so that the frontcover of the document comes on top.



# FOMA SO906i

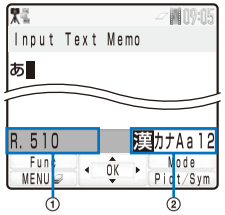
## Quick Manual

■ General Contact
<DoCoMo Information Center>
From DoCoMo mobile phones (in Japanese only)
(No prefix) **151** (toll free)
※ Not available from ordinary phones.
From ordinary phones
**0120-800-000** (toll free) (in Japanese)
**0120-005-250** (toll free) (in English)
※ Also available from mobile phones and PHSs.

■ Contact for Repair (in Japanese only)
From DoCoMo mobile phones
(No prefix) **113** (toll free)
※ Not available from ordinary phones.
From ordinary phones
**0120-800-000** (toll free)
※ Also available from mobile phones and PHSs.

● Check the number you call and dial it correctly.

## Entering Text (P.382)




※ The screen is an image.

①Number of bytes that can be entered
- A half-width character is counted as one byte and a full-width character as two bytes.

②Character mode or pictograph/symbol mode



■ Changing the character mode
(Mode)
- Character mode for half-width: Every time you press (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] → [カナ] → [Aa] → [12].
- Character mode for full-width: Every time you press (Mode), the character mode changes in the order of [漢] → [カ] → [A] → [1].

■ Changing the pictograph/symbol mode
(Pict/Sym)
- Every time you press (Pict/Sym), the character mode changes in the order of [Ranking] → [Pict.] → [Pict-D] → [Symbol]. [Pict-D] can be selected only in the Edit mail and Edit signature displays.

■ Changing the character mode between full-width and half-width
(Func) → [Full/Halfsize]



■ Entering a character assigned to the same key twice or more in succession
After entering the first character, either press ▶ or wait for a while, and the cursor moves automatically.

■ Deleting a character
CLR
- The character at the cursor is deleted by pressing CLR for less than a second. The last character is deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.
- All characters at and after the cursor position are deleted by pressing CLR for over a second. All characters are deleted when the cursor is at the end of the text.

■ Inserting a character
Move the cursor to the position to insert a character.

■ Changing the block of characters
Move the cursor with ◀ ▶.

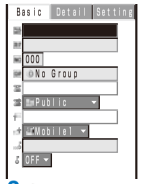
■ Undoing text
(Func) → [Undo]



## Saving an Entry in the FOMA Terminal Phonebook (P.95)

1 Press ▼ (📖) in the stand-by display → (Create).

2 [Main memory] → ■.




To save data in the UIM phonebook
Select [UIM].

3 Save other items at the Basic display.

4 Press ▶ and save each item at the Detail display.

5 Press ▶ and save each item at the Setting display.

6 Press (Complete).



■ Items you can save

NAME: Name (Required)
Enter a name within 16 full-width/32 half-width characters.

カナ: Reading
Enter the reading within 32 half-width characters.

NO: Memory no.
Enter from 000 to 999.

GP: Group
Select from 20 different groups.

: Phone number
Up to three numbers per entry are available. Enter each number within 26 digits.

: Phone number type
Select from nine different icons.

: E-mail address
Up to three mail addresses per entry are available. Enter each address within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.

: E-mail address type
Select from five different icons.



: Secret code
Enter the Secret code which is saved in the recipient's mail address (phone number@docomo.ne.jp) in four digits.

: Secret
Select whether to display the Phonebook data.

: Des call display
Select or shoot a call image to be displayed when placing/receiving a voice/videophone call, right after receiving mail, and when displaying the individual Phonebook entry.

: Location information
Add the location information.

: Postal code
Enter a code within seven half-width digits.

: Address
Enter an address within 64 full-width/128 half-width characters.

: Birthday
Enter a date within the range from 1900/01/01 to 2050/12/31.



: Chara-den
Select a Chara-den character to be sent during a videophone call.

: Des phone tone
Select a ring tone that sounds for an incoming voice/videophone call.

: Des mail tone
Select a ring tone that sounds immediately after receiving mail.

: Select phone Illum.
Select an indicator color that flashes for an incoming voice/videophone call.

: Select mail Illum.
Select an indicator color that flashes immediately after receiving mail.

## Editing an Entry (P.103)

1 From the Phonebook, select an entry → (Edit).

2 Edit each item → (Complete).



Tear-off line

## Camera (P.155, 170)

■ Recording still images

1 Slide the lens cover to open it in the stand-by display.
The Camera mode is activated.

2 Point the camera at the object → [●] (halfway).
The white focus frame/frames are used to adjust the focus, the confirmation is heard and the focus frame/frames turn green.

3 Press [●].
A still image is recorded with the shutter sound and the screen for confirming whether to save the image appears.

4 Press [■] (Save).
The still image is saved.



■ Recording a movie

1 Press [✉] (Func) → [ ▣ ] (Shoot mode) → [ 🎬 ] (Movie shoot) → [■].
The display switches to the Movie shoot display.

2 Point the camera at the object → [●].
The recording star tone is heard and the movie is recorded.

3 Press [●] to end recording.
The recording end tone is heard, the recording is stopped, and the screen for confirming whether to save the movie appears.

4 Press [■] (Save).
The movie is saved.



## Music (P.345)

Example: Playing back music data by selecting an artist

1 From the Menu, select [Music] → [MUSIC Player] → [■].

2 Select [Artists] → [■].

3 Select an artist → an album → [■].

4 Select music data → [■] (Play).

## Videophone (P.51, 65)

■ Placing a videophone call

1 Enter a phone number in the stand-by display → [📹] (V.phone).



2 Press [📞] to hang up.

■ Receiving a videophone call

1 When you receive a call, press [📞] or [📹] (V.phone).

2 Press [📞] to hang up.

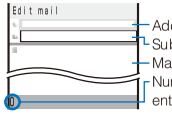
■ Operations during a videophone call

| Key operation | Operation |
|---|---|
| [■] (MySide/Sub) | Switch between camera image/substitute image |
| [📹] (In/Out) | Switch between In-/Out-camera |
| [📞] (🔇) | Hands-free ON/OFF |
| [▶]/[◀] | Out-camera zoom-in/-out |



## Composing and Sending i-mode Mail (P.207)

1 Press [✉] (Mail) in the stand-by display → [Compose message].




2 Enter an address at [To].
Enter it within 50 half-width alphanumeric characters and symbols.
To add an address
From the Function menu, select [Add receiver] → address type (To/Cc/Bcc).
To delete an address
Move the cursor to an address and from the Function menu, select [Delete receiver] → [Yes].



3 Enter a subject at [Sub].
Enter it within 100 full-/200 half-width characters.

4 Enter the main body at [▤].
Enter it within 5,000 full-/10,000 half-width characters.

5 Press [✉] (Send).

## File Attachment (P.212)

1 Press [✉] (Func) in the Edit mail display → [Add attach file] → [■].
Select from [Image], [i-motion], [Melody], [ToruCa], [PDF], [Phonebook], [My data], [Schedule], [Bookmark], [Others], and [Activate camera].



2 Select a file type → a folder → a file → [■].
"🖼", "🎬", "🎵" (green), "🎵" (orange), "📄", "📄", "📄", or "📄" appears.

3 Compose mail → [✉] (Send).

## Checking New i-mode Mail (P.216)

1 Press [✉] (Mail) in the stand-by display (for over a second).
An inquiry result is displayed.

## Auto Receiving i-mode Mail (P.214)

1 When receiving mail
"✉" flashes.



2 When receiving is completed
The number of received mail is displayed. The display before receiving reappears after about 15 seconds.

## Manner Mode (P.69, 70, 116)

■ Setting/canceling the Public mode (Drive mode)
Press [#] (🚗) in the stand-by display (for over a second).

■ Public mode (Power off)
Set [✱][2][5][2][5][1]+[📞]
Cancel [✱][2][5][2][5][0]+[📞]
Confirm contents [✱][2][5][2][5][9]+[📞]

■ Setting/canceling the Manner mode
Press [マナー] in the stand-by display (for over a second).



Tear-off line

## List of Menus (P.33, 420)

### ■ Selecting the menu

**1** MENU (MENU)

### ■ Changing the menu

Every time you press ✉ (Chg. MENU), the display changes in the order of Kisekae menu → Standard menu → My Selection.

### ■ List of Standard menus

- My Selection
- Imaging
  - Camera
  - Movie
  - easy BlogUp
  - Music slide show
  - Stand-by pictures



- i mode
  - i Menu
  - Bookmark
  - Screen Memo
  - Last accessed URL
  - Go to location
  - i-Channel
  - Message
  - Check new message
  - i-mode setting
  - Full Browser
- Mail
  - Inbox
  - Outbox
  - Draft
  - Compose message
  - WEB mail
  - Compose SMS
  - Templates
  - Check new message
  - Check new SMS



- Receive option
- Mail setting
- i appli
  - i αppli list
  - i αppli setting
  - i αppli history
  - i αppli(microSD)
- Phone
  - Phonebook
  - Call record
  - PushTalk phonebook
  - Record message
- Data Box
  - My picture
  - MUSIC
  - Music&Video Channel
  - i-motion
  - Melody
  - My document
  - Kisekae Tool
  - Chara-den



- Music
  - MUSIC Player
  - Music&Video Channel
- Osaifu-Keitai
  - IC card content
  - DCMX
  - ToruCa
  - Settings
  - Search by i-mode
- Own number
- LifeKit
  - Bar code reader
  - Receive Ir data
  - microSD
  - Camera
  - Movie
  - Lifetime Calendar
  - Alarm
  - Schedule
  - Text Memo
  - Calculator



- Data Security Service
- GPS
- Settings
  - Display
    - Stand-by display
    - Backlight
    - Power saver
    - Menu setting
    - Kisekae setting
    - Animation
    - Font size
  - Call
    - Incoming set
    - Missed call
    - Videophone setting
    - Call display
    - Call assist
    - Call setting
    - Call quality
    - Headset setting
    - Self mode
    - Melody Call



- Application
  - Lifetime Cal.
  - Mail
  - i-mode
  - i αppli
  - Phonebook
  - Call record
  - PushTalk
  - Record msg
  - ToruCa
  - IC act. notice
  - Schedule
  - Input method
- Lock/ Security
  - Lock all
  - IC card lock
  - Pers. data lock
  - Secret display
  - Key dial lock
  - Acpt/Rjct call
  - Reject unknown
  - Denied no ID



- Management
  - NW Services
  - Date/time
  - Select language
  - Manner mode
  - Set basic tone
  - Jog setting
  - Slide setting
  - Change code
  - UIM setting
  - Scan function
  - SW Update
  - Check serv. area
  - Battery level
  - Storage info
  - USB mode setting
  - Reset
  - Initial setting



## The Voice Mail Service (P.392)

### ■ Starting the service※

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Activate] → [Activate] → [Yes] → ■.

### ■ Stopping the service※

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → ■.

### ■ Playing back a new message※

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Voice Mail] → [Play messages] → [Yes] → ■.

※ When 2in1 is set to the Dual mode, the screen for selecting either Number A or Number B appears.



Tear-off line

## The Call Waiting Service (P.393)

### ■ Starting the service

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Waiting] → [Activate] → [Yes] → ■.

### ■ Stopping the service

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call Waiting] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → ■.

## The Call Forwarding Service (P.393)

### ■ Starting the service※

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call forwarding] → [Activate] → [Activate] → [Yes] → ■.

### ■ Stopping the service※

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call forwarding] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → ■.



### ■ Changing the forwarding number

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Call forwarding] → [Change FWD number] → Enter the phone number → [Set] → ■.

※ When 2in1 is set to the Dual mode, the screen for selecting either Number A or Number B appears.

## The Caller ID Display Request Service (P.395)

### ■ Starting the service

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Caller ID Request] → [Activate] → [Yes] → ■.

### ■ Stopping the service

From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Caller ID Request] → [Deactivate] → [Yes] → ■.

## List of Key Operation (P.26, 27, 28)

▲ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Data Box.
▼ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Phonebook.
◀ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Received record.



▶ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Redial record.
✉ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Mail menu. Press for over a second in the stand-by display to perform the Check new message.
i : Press in the stand-by display to display the i-mode menu. Press for over a second in the stand-by display to display the i-αppli folder list display.
MENU : Press to display the menu.
ch : Press in the stand-by display to display the Channel list display. Press for over a second in the stand-by display to activate the MUSIC Player.
✱ : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to lock/cancel the IC card function.
# : Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Public mode (Drive mode).
▲マナー : Press in the stand-by display to display the Manner mode display. Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Manner mode.
メモ▼ : Press in the stand-by display to display the Record msg display. Press for over a second in the stand-by display to set/cancel the Record message.
▶ : Press for over a second to display/play back a still image/movie.
📷 : Press to record an image by the camera.



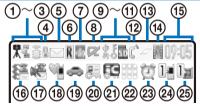
## Services Available on the FOMA Terminal (P.438)

| Service | Phone number |
|---|---|
| Number guide service (paid: service charge + call charge)※ | (no area code) 104 |
| Telegram service (paid: telegram fee) | (no area code) 115 |
| Time (paid) | (no area code) 117 |
| Weather (paid) | Area code + 177 |
| Emergency call to Police | (no area code) 110 |
| Emergency call to Fire/Ambulance | (no area code) 119 |
| Emergency call to Maritime rescue | (no area code) 118 |
| Disaster Message Board Service (paid) | (no area code) 171 |
| Collect Call (paid: service charge + call charge) | (no area code) 106 |

※ Phone numbers of customers who declined to disclose their number information cannot be guided.



## Using the Display (P.30)




① Radio wave condition
② : During i-mode
: During Full Browser
③ : Outside of the service area
self : Self mode is set
: While using the infrared/IC communication function
: While the infrared remote control is being used
④ : While performing an SSL-related function such as displaying an SSL site
⑤ : Unread i-mode mail/Unread SMS/Unread i-mode mail and unread SMS
: Mail at the i-mode center
: Unread Area Mail
⑥ R/F : Unread Message R/F



⑦ : While providing location information by GPS/During GPS positioning
3G (Blue)/3G (Red) : While connecting to the 3G network (Packet communication: able)/(Packet communication: disable)
: While connecting to the GSM network/While connecting to the GPRS network
⑧ : While running i-αppli (i-αppli stand-by display)/i-αppli DX
⑨ : USB mode setting is Communication mode
: USB mode setting is microSD mode
: USB mode setting is MTP mode connecting
⑩ : Secret display is [ON]
⑪ : The microSD memory card is inserted (Flashes during preparation for access after insertion of the microSD memory card)
⑫ : During a voice call/During a videophone call/During PushTalk communication
⑬ : 1/2/3 or more tasks are executed
( changes to while playback is in progress on the MUSIC Player)
⑭ : Battery level



⑮ 07:05 : Current time (Displayed in 24-hour format in other than the stand-by display)
⑯ : The vibrator is set for incoming calls
: The vibrator is set for incoming mail
: The vibrator is set for incoming calls and mail
⑰ : Incoming call ring volume OFF
: Incoming mail ring volume OFF
: Incoming call and mail ring volume OFF
⑱ : Manner mode is set ( is pink)
⑲ : Public mode (Drive mode) is set
⑳ : Personal data lock is set
: Key dial lock is set
: Personal data lock and Key dial lock are set
㉑ : IC card lock is set
㉒ : During Music&Video Channel reservation
㉓ : Alarm is set
: Schedule alarm is set
: Alarm and Schedule alarm are set
㉔ : Record message is set (there are non-played back record messages) ( is white, is light blue)



㉕ : Videophone message is set (there are non-played back videophone messages) ( is green, is light blue)
: Lock key is set

## Contact for Emergency Such As Lost Terminal

### ■ Omakase Lock

※ Omakase Lock is a paid service. However, when you subscribe to this service together with your request to suspend the FOMA terminal or while the FOMA terminal is suspended, the service charge is not required.

Setting/canceling the Omakase Lock
**0120-524-360** (24-hour service)

### ■ Other contact numbers

Contact number:
Contact number:
Contact number:

● Check the number you call and dial it correctly.



Tear-off line

# FOMA SO906i

## Quick Manual for "Overseas Use"

■ For Loss, Theft, and Charge Settlement for Overseas <DoCoMo Information Center> (24-hour service)

From DoCoMo mobile phones

International access number of your country of stay (Table1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** **(toll-free)**

* **The call charges to Japan apply when you place a call from ordinary phones.**

※Dial +81-3-5366-3114 to get connected when you place a call from SO906i. (Press and hold the "0" key for at least one second to enter "+".)

From ordinary phones

Universal number

International prefix number for the universal number (Table2) **-800-0120-0151***

* **The call charges to your country of stay may apply.**

● For the international access number of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2), see P.13 or P.14 respectively.

■ About Troubles and Repairs for Services Overseas <Network Technical Support and Operation Center> (24-hour service)

From DoCoMo mobile phones

International access number of your country of stay (Table1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** **(toll-free)**

* **The call charges to Japan apply when you place a call from ordinary phones.**

※Dial +81-3-6718-1414 to get connected when you place a call from SO906i. (Press and hold the "0" key for at least one second to enter "+".)

From ordinary phones

Universal number

International prefix number for the universal number (Table2) **-800-5931-8600***

* **The call charges to your country of stay may apply.**

● For the international access number of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2), see P.13 or P.14 respectively.



## Before Using the FOMA Terminal Overseas

■ Setting the i-mode

【In Japan】

1 Press i in the stand-by display → [i Menu] → [料金&お申込・設定] → [オプション設定] → [海外利用設定] → [ｉモード利用設定] → [利用する] → Enter an i-mode password → [決定] → ■.

【Overseas】

1 Press i in the stand-by display → [i Menu] → [海外利用設定] → [ｉモード利用設定] → [利用する] → Enter an i-mode password → [決定] → ■.

■ Setting the Remote Control

【In Japan】

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Remote Control] → [Activate] → [Yes] → ■.



【Overseas】

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Remote access(Int.)] → [Yes]→ ■.

■ Setting the clock

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [Date/time] → [Auto time adjust] → [ON] → ■.

## Available Network

| | |
|---|---|
| 3G roaming | Available |
| GSM network | Available |
| GPRS network | Available |



## Services Available Overseas (P.410)

| Communication service | 3G | GSM | GPRS |
|---|---|---|---|
| Voice call<br>You can use the same mobile phone number as used in Japan even from an overseas location to place international calls to Japan and other countries as well as ordinary calls in your country of stay. | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Videophone call<br>You can place international videophone calls to specific 3G carrier users overseas and to FOMA users. | ○ | × | × |
| i-mode<br>You can use i-mode even from an overseas location. | ○ | × | ○ |
| i-mode mail<br>You can use the same mail address as used in Japan even overseas and send/receive i-mode mail. | ○ | × | ○ |
| SMS<br>You can use the same mobile phone number as used in Japan even from an overseas location to send/receive SMS messages. | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| i-Channel | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Data communication (Packet communication) | ○ | × | ○ |



## Network Search Mode (P.415)

Example: Changing a carrier to be connected for manual connection

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Network search mode] → ■.

[Auto]:
Automatically connect to another carrier.

[Manual]:
Manually select a carrier.

[Network re-search]:
Search the carrier to be connected again.

[PLMN setting]:
Set a carrier with the higher-priority for connection.

2 Select [Manual] → a carrier → ■.

## PLMN Setting (P.416)

Example: Saving a carrier from the carrier list

1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Network search mode] → [PLMN setting] → ■.



2 Select [Unregistered] and press ✉ (Func).

3 Select [Select from List] → a carrier → ■.

4 Select a network communication method → [Yes] → ■.

## Setting After Returning to Japan (P.413)

The default setting is to search a network after the FOMA terminal powered on in Japan and connect to the FOMA network (NTT DoCoMo, Inc) automatically.

■ Changing the network to the FOMA network (NTT DoCoMo, Inc) manually

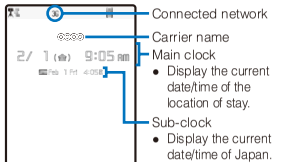
1 From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Network search mode] → ■.

2 Select [Manual] → [NTT DoCoMo, Inc] → ■.



## Display to Be Shown Overseas (P.413)

While you use the FOMA terminal overseas, the name of the connected carrier appears in the stand-by display.




• The following icons show the current network connection.

| Icon | Network you can use |
|---|---|
| 3G (Blue) | 3G network (supported packet communication) |
| 3G (Red) | 3G network (not supported packet communication) |
| | GSM network |
| | GPRS network |



Tear-off line

## Placing a Call from Your Overseas Location (P.414)

■ Placing a call to another country (including Japan) from your overseas location

**1** Press "+" (press [0] for over a second) in the stand-by display and enter a country code, area code, and a recipient's phone number, in that order.

- If an area code begins with "0", omit the "0" when dialing (excepting when calling ordinary phones, etc. in Italy).
- To place an international call to Japan, enter the country code "81".

To place a call to a country saved using the Country code
Enter a phone number in the stand-by display, press [✉] (Option), select [Call method] → [Voice call]/[Videophone] → [Country code] → a country code, and press [●] (Call).

To place a call to a recipient saved in the Phonebook
Select a recipient form the Phonebook and press [📞]. To place a videophone call, select a recipient, press [■], and press [📹] (V.phone). The first digit of the phone number "0" is converted into a country code automatically added by the Int'l dial assist before the call is dialed.



To place a call from the Redial/Received record
Select a recipient from the Redial/Received record and press [📞] or [📹] (V.phone).

**2** Press [📞].

To place a videophone call
Press [📹] (V.phone).

■ Placing a local call in your overseas location

**1** Enter a phone number in the stand-by display.

- Make sure to include the area code, even for a local call.
- If you place a call to a "WORLD WING" overseas user, enter the country code "81" and make the call an international call to Japan even if the recipient is currently in the same country in which you stay.

**2** Press [📞].

To place a videophone call
Press [📹] (V.phone).

## Receiving a Call (P.414)

**1** When receiving a call, press [📞].



When you receive a videophone call
Press [📞] or [📹] (V.phone). To answer a call with a substitute image, press [■] (Sub).

■ When the caller places a call from Japan

Ask the caller to dial your phone number.

■ When the caller places a call from countries other than Japan

Ask the caller to dial the international access number −81− your phone number without the first "0".

## Network Services

To use the network services overseas, set the Remote Control beforehand.

■ Roaming Guidance (P.417)

- You need to set it in Japan.

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Roaming Guidance] → [■].

■ Bar Incoming call (P.417)

- You may not be able to set it depending on the overseas carrier you use.



**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Bar Incoming call] → [■].

■ Voice Mail(Int.) (P.418)

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Voice Mail(Int.)] → [■].

■ Call FWD(Int.) (P.418)

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Call FWD(Int.)] → [■].

■ Roaming guide(Int.) (P.418)

**1** From the Menu, select [Settings] → [Management] → [NW Services] → [Int'l roaming] → [Roaming guide(Int.)] → [Yes] → [■].



## Country Codes for Major Countries

When you use an international call or set to the Int'l dial assist, use the following country codes (as of December 2007).

| Area | Country code | Area | Country code |
|---|---|---|---|
| Australia | 61 | Japan | 81 |
| Austria | 43 | Korea | 82 |
| Belgium | 32 | Macau | 853 |
| Brazil | 55 | Malaysia | 60 |
| Canada | 1 | Maldives | 960 |
| China | 86 | Netherlands | 31 |
| Czech Republic | 420 | New Caledonia | 687 |
| Egypt | 20 | New Zealand | 64 |
| Fiji | 679 | Norway | 47 |
| Finland | 358 | Peru | 51 |
| France | 33 | Philippines | 63 |
| Germany | 49 | Russia | 7 |
| Greece | 30 | Singapore | 65 |
| Hong Kong | 852 | Spain | 34 |
| Hungary | 36 | Sweden | 46 |
| India | 91 | Switzerland | 41 |
| Indonesia | 62 | Tahiti (French Polynesia) | 689 |
| Italy | 39 | | |



| Area | Country code | Area | Country code |
|---|---|---|---|
| Taiwan | 886 | United Kingdom | 44 |
| Thailand | 66 | USA | 1 |
| Turkey | 90 | Vietnam | 84 |

- For other country codes and details, see the DoCoMo's "International service website".

## International Access Number for Major Countries (Table1)

The international access number for major countries is as follows (as of August 2007).

| Area | Number | Area | Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Australia | 0011 | Hong Kong | 001 |
| Belgium | 00 | Hungary | 00 |
| Brazil | 0041/0014 | India | 00 |
| Canada | 011 | Indonesia | 001 |
| China | 00 | Ireland | 00 |
| Czech Republic | 00 | Italy | 00 |
| Denmark | 00 | Korea | 001 |
| Finland | 00 | Luxembourg | 00 |
| France | 00 | Macau | 00 |
| Germany | 00 | Malaysia | 00 |
| Greece | 00 | Monaco | 00 |



| Area | Number | Area | Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Netherlands | 00 | Sweden | 00 |
| New Zealand | 00 | Switzerland | 00 |
| Norway | 00 | Taiwan | 002 |
| Philippines | 00 | Thailand | 001 |
| Poland | 00 | Turkey | 00 |
| Portugal | 00 | United Arab Emirates | 00 |
| Russia | 810 | United Kingdom | 00 |
| Singapore | 001 | USA | 011 |
| Spain | 00 | Vietnam | 00 |

## International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table2)

The international prefix number for the universal number of each country is as follows (as of August 2007).

| Area | Number | Area | Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Argentina | 00 | Canada | 011 |
| Australia | 0011 | China | 00 |
| Austria | 00 | Colombia | 009 |
| Belgium | 00 | Denmark | 00 |
| Brazil | 0021 | Finland | 990 |
| Bulgaria | 00 | France | 00 |



| Area | Number | Area | Number |
|---|---|---|---|
| Germany | 00 | Peru | 00 |
| Hong Kong | 001 | Philippines | 00 |
| Hungary | 00 | Portugal | 00 |
| Ireland | 00 | Singapore | 001 |
| Israel | 014 | South Africa | 09 |
| Italy | 00 | Spain | 00 |
| Korea | 001 | Sweden | 00 |
| Luxembourg | 00 | Switzerland | 00 |
| Malaysia | 00 | Taiwan | 00 |
| Netherlands | 00 | Thailand | 001 |
| New Zealand | 00 | United Kingdom | 00 |
| Norway | 00 | USA | 011 |

## About Inquiries

For inquiries about loss, theft, the charge settlement, and repairs, see "For Loss, Theft, and Charge Settlement for Overseas" on the frontcover or "About Troubles and Repairs for Services Overseas" on P.1 of this manual.

- When you place a call to a contact number for inquiries, call the "International access number of your country of stay (Table1)" or "International prefix number for the universal number (Table2)" assigned to the location where you stay, and then enter the contact phone numbers.



Tear-off line

"ドコモeサイト" allows you to go through procedures for various registration changes, including changes of the address and charge plan, and request for relevant documents.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Using i-mode | i Menu➡料金＆お申込・設定➡各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) | Free packet communication charge |
| From a PC | My DoCoMo (http://www.mydocomo.com/) ➡ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) | |

※ For access using i-mode, the "network security code" is required.
※ For access using i-mode, no packet communication charge is required, except for from abroad.
※ For access from a PC, the "DoCoMo ID/Password" are required.
※ If you have not yet obtained the "network security code" or "DoCoMo ID/Password", or you forget them, call the "General Contact" on the backcover of this manual.
※ Access to the services may not be available depending on the subscription detail.
※ DoCoMo e-site may be inaccessible because of the system maintenance.

## Don't forget your FOMA terminal or your manners!

When you use the FOMA terminal, be careful not to disturb others around you.

### Power off the FOMA terminal in the following cases

● When you are in a place where the use is prohibited
In airplanes and hospitals, power off the FOMA terminal.
※ Power off the FOMA terminal not only inside hospital wards but also in the lobby or waiting rooms since electronic medical equipment may be used nearby.

● When there is a possibility that the implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator is used nearby such as on rush-hour trains
The FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.

### Set the Public mode in the following cases

● When you are driving
Holding the mobile phone with a hand while driving applies the penal regulations.
※ When you are compelled to receive a call, tell "Call you back" to the caller using the Hands-free function and park the vehicle in a safe place to place a call.

● When you are in a public place such as in a theater, movie theater or museum
Power off the FOMA terminal in a quiet public place since it may disturb others around you.

### Be careful of where you use the FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and ring tone

● Be careful of the volume of your voice when you use the FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as in a restaurant or hotel lobby.
● Use the FOMA terminal in a place where you do not disturb passengers on the streets.

### Be sensitive regarding privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### Features to support public manners

The FOMA terminal is equipped with helpful features, such as muting sounds, not answering incoming calls, etc.

● Public mode (Drive Mode/Power off) (P.66, 67)
● Manner mode (P.103)/Original manner mode (P.104)
● Vibrator (P.99)
● Record message (P.69)

This manual was printed and produced in such a way to allow easy recycling. Please dispose it for recycling when it is no longer needed.

## General Contact

■From DoCoMo mobile phones (in Japanese only)

(No prefix) **151** (toll-free)

※Not available from ordinary phones.

■From ordinary phones

**0120-800-000** (toll-free) (in Japanese)

**0120-005-250** (toll-free) (in English)

※Also available from mobile phones and PHSs.

## Contact for Repair (in Japanese only)

■From DoCoMo mobile phones

(No prefix) **113** (toll-free)

※Not available from ordinary phones.

■ From ordinary phones

**0120-800-000** (toll-free)

※Also available from mobile phones and PHSs.

- Check the number you call and dial it correctly.
- For information on applications and procedures, repairs, and after sales services, either call the inquiries above or contact your local DoCoMo shop, etc via the DoCoMo's website or i-mode site.
  DoCoMo's website http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ i-mode site i Menu ➡お知らせ➡ドコモショップ

## For Loss, Theft, and Charge Settlement for Overseas <DoCoMo Information Center> (24-hour service)

From DoCoMo mobile phones

International access number of your country of stay (Table1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (toll-free)

**＊The call charges to Japan apply when you place a call from ordinary phones.**

※Dial +81-3-5366-3114 to get connected when you place a call from SO906i. (Press and hold the "0" key for at least one second to enter "+".)

From ordinary phones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table2) **-800-0120-0151***

**＊The call charges to your country of stay may apply.**

※For the international access number of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2), see P.404, 405 of this manual.

## About Troubles and Repairs for Services Overseas <Network Technical Support and Operation Center> (24-hour service)

From DoCoMo mobile phones

International access number of your country of stay (Table1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (toll-free)

**＊The call charges to Japan apply when you place a call from ordinary phones.**

※Dial +81-3-6718-1414 to get connected when you place a call from SO906i. (Press and hold the "0" key for at least one second to enter "+".)

From ordinary phones

<Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table2) **-800-5931-8600***

**＊The call charges to your country of stay may apply.**

※For the international access number of major countries (Table1) and international prefix number for the universal number (Table2), see P.404, 405 of this manual.

- **If you should lose your mobile phone or have it stolen abroad, please report it to DoCoMo and take steps to cancel the use of it as soon as possible.**
- **When the FOMA terminal you purchased is damaged, bring it to the DoCoMo repair handling service counter after returning to Japan.**



Don't forget your mobile phone … or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

## Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo, Inc. |
| NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc. |
| NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc. | NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc. |

Manufacturer: Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.

Li-ion

Return all spent battery packs to NTT DoCoMo or a dealer, or a recycling shop to protect the environment.

This manual is printed on recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK

This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

'08.5 (Ver.1)
3-296-221-**11**(1)